www.libtool.com.cn

www.libtool.com.cn

Gift of D. C. Gilman

35771

LIBRARY OF THE

University of California.

CIRCULATING BRANCH.

Return in two weeks; or a week before the end of the term.

A

COMMON-SCHOOL HISTORY

www.libtool.com.cn

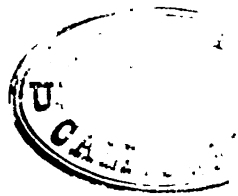
OF

THE UNITED STATES;

FROM THE EARLIEST PERIOD TO THE PRESENT TIME.

BY

BENSON J. LOSSING.



ILLUSTRATED BY MAPS, AND OVER 200 OTHER ENGRAVINGS.

NEW YORK:
PUBLISHED BY MASON BROTHERS.
BOSTON: MASON & HAMLIN. PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.
CINCINNATI: SARGENT, WILSON & HINKLE.
1865.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1864, by
MASON BROTHERS,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court for the Southern District of New York.

www.libtool.com.cn

LOSSING'S HISTORIES OF THE UNITED STATES.

COMPLETE SERIES FOR ALL CLASSES.

35777

LOSSING'S PICTORIAL PRIMARY HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES; 238 pages 12mo.

LOSSING'S COMMON-SCHOOL HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES; Illustrated by Maps, and over 200 other Engravings. 378 pages 12mo.

LOSSING'S PICTORIAL SCHOOL HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES; 374 pages large 12mo.

LOSSING'S ILLUSTRATED FAMILY HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES; with a Frontispiece Illuminated in Colors. *For District, School, and Family Libraries.* 672 pages imperial octavo.

JOHN F. TROW,
PRINTER AND STEREOTYPER,
50 Greene Street.

INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

www.libtool.com.cn

THIS book has been prepared in obedience to the earnest calls of educators to supply an acknowledged want in the Common Schools of the country, namely, a HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES, containing the record of every important event, arranged in a manner, and expressed in phraseology that might convey to the mind of the pupil a clear and comprehensive knowledge of the subject, in as few words as possible.

The Author's *Primary History of the United States*, for beginners, and *Pictorial History of the United States for Schools and Families*, for the use of more advanced students, have met with a most gratifying reception from parents, teachers, and pupils, for many years. An intermediate History was wanted to make the series complete. To meet that want, this volume is offered.

The general arrangement and peculiar features of the other books are preserved in this. Numerous pictorial illustrations of the subject; maps showing the geographical positions of the most important events; numerous explanatory and illustrative foot-notes, and a convenient and useful Concordance interwoven with them, are notable features which commend themselves specially to teachers as important helpers in the task of instruction.

Events during the last few years have impressed all thoughtful Americans with the importance of the possession, by every citizen, of a general knowledge of the letter and spirit of our *National Constitution*—the organic and supreme law of the land. That such knowledge may be taught in our Common Schools, and thereby be vividly and indelibly impressed upon the minds of the people, that *Constitution*, with numerous explanatory foot-notes, is made a part of this history.

The Supplement contains the Declaration of Independence, with copious historical notes; a biographical table of the Signers of the Declaration; brief sketches of the lives of the Presidents of the Republic, and a Chronological Table of events mentioned in this volume.

General reviewing questions, in addition to those at the foot of each page, are introduced at the close of the History. These will be found useful as tests of the thoroughness of the pupil's acquirements, and as helps for him in obtaining a comprehensive grasp of the subject.

The historical narrative includes an outline sketch, with copious notes, of the most prominent events of the Great Civil War in our country. It is brought down to as late a period as possible before printing the book.

With these remarks, the work is submitted to the public with a desire and hope that it may be made an implement of usefulness in the work of popular education.

CONTENTS.

www.libtool.com.cn

CHAPTER I.

THE ABORIGINES.

SECTION I. General Characteristics of the Indian Tribes, 5.—Their Manners, Customs, Habits, Religion, Government, Funeral Ceremonies, and Destiny, 6, 7, 8, 9.

CHAPTER II.

DISCOVERIES.

SECTION I. Norman and Spanish Discoveries, 10.—§ II. English and French Discoveries, 15.

CHAPTER III.

SETTLEMENTS.

SECTION I. Virginia, 24.—§ II. New York, 32.—§ III. Massachusetts, 34.—§ IV. New Hampshire, 37.—§ V. Maryland, 37.—§ VI. Connecticut, 39.—§ VII. Rhode Island, 42. § VIII. Delaware, 43; New Jersey, 44; Pennsylvania, 45.—§ IX. The Carolinas, 46.—§ X. Georgia, 48.

CHAPTER IV.

THE COLONIES.

SECTION I. Virginia, 50.—§ II. Massachusetts, 56.—§ III. New York, 69.—§ IV. Maryland, 75.—§ V. Connecticut, 77.—§ VI. Rhode Island, 80.—§ VII. New Jersey, 81.—§ VIII. Pennsylvania, 83.—§ IX. The Carolinas, 85.—§ X. Georgia, 91.—§ XI. A Retrospect, 92. —§ XII. The French and Indian War, 95.

CHAPTER V.

THE REVOLUTION.

SECTION I. Preliminary Events, 115.—§ II. First Year of the War for Independence, 128. —§ III. Second Year of the War for Independence, 138.—§ IV. Third Year of the War for Independence, 149.—§ V. Fourth Year of the War for Independence, 160.—§ VI. Fifth Year of the War for Independence, 166.—§ VII. Sixth Year of the War for Independence, 174.—§ VIII. Seventh Year of the War for Independence, 191.—§ IX. Closing Events of the War for Independence, 190.

CHAPTER VI.

THE NATION.

SECTION I. Washington's Administration, 195.—§ II. John Adams's Administration, 201.—§ III. Jefferson's Administration, 203.—§ IV. Madison's Administration, 208.—§ V. The Second War for Independence, 214.—§ VI. Second War for Independence—continued, 222.—§ VII. Monroe's Administration, 231.—§ VIII. John Quincy Adams's Administration, 234.—§ IX. Jackson's Administration, 236.—§ X. Van Buren's Administration, 241.—§ XI. Harrison and Tyler's Administrations, 243.—§ XII. Polk's Administration, 246.—§ XIII. Taylor's Administration, 254.—§ XIV. Pierce's Administration, 257.—§ XV. Buchanan's Administration, 260.—§ XVI. Lincoln's Administration, 262.—The Great Civil War, 265.—The Constitution and Growth of the Republic, 305.

QUESTIONS FOR REVIEW, 336.

SUPPLEMENT.

The Declaration of Independence, 349.—The Signers of the Declaration of Independence, 356.—Biographical Sketches of the Presidents of the Republic, 357.—Chronological Table, 367.

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA
www.libtool.com.cn

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

CHAPTER I.

THE ABORIGINES.

SECTION I.

1. When men from Europe first came over the Atlantic ocean and landed on the shores of America at different places, they found inhabitants of a copper color, who could give very little account of themselves, as a people. They could not tell whether their race came from Asia, Africa, or Europe; or whether, as many of them believed, their first father and mother were created in the land which they inhabited.[1]

2. These people, who were called Indians,[2] spoke a great variety of dialects,[3] but there were among them only eight distinct languages.[4] They were divided into many families, or tribes; but in color, size, moral character, religion, and government, they were very much alike. They were tall, straight, and well formed;

1. There seem to be reasons for believing that the Aborigines, or first inhabitants of America, are of Asiatic origin.

2. When Columbus discovered the first land on the American coast (verse 6, page 12), he supposed that he had reached a point of Farther India, his theory being that, sailing westward, he would find that land. He and his people, therefore, called the native inhabitants *Indians*.

3. Dialect is the form of expression peculiar to the people of different provinces or sections of a country where the same *language* is spoken. The people of London and Yorkshire have such different modes of expressing the English language, that it is difficult, sometimes, for them to understand each other.

4. These languages, which represented eight nations, who inhabited the country from the Atlantic ocean to the Mississippi river and beyond, occupying a region embraced within about twenty-four degrees of latitude, and almost forty degrees of longitude, and covering a greater portion of the breadth of the north temperate zone, were called, respectively, Algonquin, Huron, Iroquois, Cherokee, Catawba, Uchee, Natchez, and Dacotah or Sioux.

Questions.—1. What kind of people did Europeans find in America? 2. What can you tell about their name, languages, and persons?

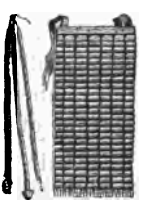
their eyes were black; their hair long, coarse, and straight. Sickness was very little known among them.

3. The men were employed in war, hunting, and fishing; and the women did all the labor of every kind required by family wants. Huts made of poles covered with mats, skins of beasts, or bark of trees, were their dwelling-places, and were called *wigwams*. Their few tools were made of stones, shells, and bones. Their food was the meat of animals found in the forests, with fish, and a few vegetables. Maize, commonly called *Indian corn*, was in common use. All the simple arts of their rude life were taught to their children.

A WIGWAM.

INDIANS IN SUMMER.

4. In summer they were generally naked, excepting a light covering about the loins. In winter, they were clad in the skins of beasts. Their money was made of pieces of shells in the form of tubes, and was called *wampum;* it was made in strings and belts, and was used in traffic, and, between nations and tribes, as tokens of affection or alliance. Wampum-belts were held by the sachems, or chief men, as records of public acts.



WAMPUM.

5. The Indians had no written language, excepting rude picture-writings, and these were confined to the records of warlike achievements, treaties of alliance, and deeds of brave men. These were more frequently preserved in memory, and handed down from father to son, and from chief to chief.

INDIAN HIEROGLYPHICS.[1]

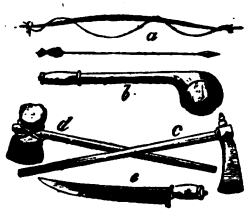
1. This is part of a record of a war expedition. The figures on the right and left—one with a gun, and the other with the hatchet—denote prisoners taken by a warrior. The one

QUESTIONS.—3. What can you tell about the employments, dwellings, and food of the Indians? 4. What of their clothing and money? 5. What of their writing and records?

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

6. War was the principal business of the men. They generally went forth in parties of about forty. Sometimes only half-a-dozen would go out on the war-path, like the ancient knights, to seek renown in combat. Their weapons were bows and arrows, hatchets (tomahawks) of stone, and scalping-knives of bone. They made prisoners, and tortured them; and the scalps of enemies were their trophies of war.[2] Peace was arranged by sachems in council;[3] and each, smoking the same pipe of peace, called *calumet*,[4] thus made a pledge of fidelity to the contract.

CALUMETS.



INDIAN WEAPONS.[1]

7. Women were the mere slaves of the men. They never engaged in any of the games, but were allowed, with their children, to be spectators of them and the war-dances. Marriage was a contract that might be broken by the husbands, who had a right to take and dismiss wives at pleasure.

8. The funeral ceremonies and methods of burial were similar among all the Indian nations. The dead body was wrapped in skins, when it was laid upon sticks in the bottom of a shallow pit; or placed in a sitting posture in a grave; or laid upon a high scaffold, out of the reach of wild beasts. Trinkets, arms, tools, paints, and food were buried with it, for they supposed the soul would need them on its journey

SCAFFOLD BURIAL-PLACE.

without a head and holding a bow and arrow, denotes that one was killed; and the figure with a shaded part below the cross indicates a female prisoner. Then he goes in a war-canoe, with nine companions, denoted by the paddles, after which a council is held by the chiefs of the Bear and Turtle tribes, indicated by rude figures of these animals on each side of a fire.

1. *a*, bow and arrow; *b*, war-club; *c*, an iron tomahawk; *d*, a stone one; *e*, a scalping-knife.

2. They seized an enemy by the hair, and, by a skillful use of the knife, cut and tore from the top of the head a large portion of the skin.

3. *Sachems* were the civil heads of nations or tribes; *chiefs* were military leaders.

4. Tobacco was in general use among the Indians for *smoking*, when the white men came. The more filthy practice of *chewing* it was invented by the Europeans. The *calumet* was made of pipe-clay, and often ornamented with feathers.

QUESTIONS.—6. What can you tell about the warfare and weapons, and method of peace-making of the Indians? 7. What can you tell about their women and marriages? 8. What of their funeral ceremonies and burials?

to the abode of spirits. They raised mounds over the graves, planted flowers upon them, and mourned there for many days.

www.libtool.com.cn

MEETING OF WHITE MEN AND INDIANS.

9. Their religion was simple in belief and ceremonies. They believed in a Great Good Spirit, and a Great Evil Spirit; and considered the sun, moon, stars, meteors, fire, water, thunder, wind, and everything which they could not control themselves, as a sort of deity or god. They also adored what they called the Great Master of Life, in different forms, whom they called *Manitou*, and made a sort of special deity. They had vague

QUESTIONS.—9. What can you tell about the religious belief of the Indians?

ideas of a great flood that covered the earth; and they occasionally made sacrifices of animals as an atonement for sin.

10. The government of the Indians was a mixture of family rule and kingly use of authority and power. The *Sachem* was chief ruler, often chosen because of his merits. So with the *Chief;* he was frequently chosen to be the leader of warriors, because of his own deeds in battle. The *Sachem* decided all questions debated in council; and wherever the *Chief* led, the warriors followed. Their councils were models of good order. While one was speaking, every other one listened with profound respect.

11. Such were the inhabitants of the territory of the present United States, when it was discovered by the Europeans. They were nearly all wanderers, and roamed over the solitary forests, free as the air they breathed, yet doing almost nothing toward cultivating the fertile soil beneath their feet. God did not design this continent to remain a wilderness. In his own good time he permitted the white man to find it. The white man came with the industry and arts of civilization, and changed the appearance of all things. Where the Indians hunted and fished, are seen farms, villages, and cities; and that race is rapidly passing away. Very few can now be found eastward of the Mississippi river.[1]

1. For a more detailed account of the Indians, see Lossing's *Pictorial History of the United States, for Schools and Families.*

Questions.—10. What can you tell about the government and leaders of the Indians? 11. What have you to say about them and their relation to the country? What changes have taken place?

www.libtool.com.cn

CHAPTER II.

DISCOVERIES.

SECTION I.

NORMAN AND SPANISH DISCOVERIES.

1. CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS, the son of a wool-carder of the city of Genoa, in Italy, is properly called the DISCOVERER OF AMERICA. There seems to be proof, however, that Europeans landed on its shores five hundred years before his time. There were bold sailors in Denmark, Sweden, and Norway, who came to be called Sea-Kings. They sailed fearlessly over the northern seas in their little vessels, and at a very early period made settlements on Iceland and Greenland. There are records of voyages which they made from Iceland to a continent southwest from Greenland, as early as the year of our Lord 1002; and learned men believe that these Northmen[1] visited that portion of the United States known as New England,[2] and perhaps sailed as far southward as the Delaware river.

NORMAN SHIP.

NORTHMAN.

1. The ancients called the territory which contains modern Norway, Sweden, Denmark, Lapland, Iceland, Finland, and the country around the Baltic sea, by the general name of Scandinavia. The people were called Scandinavians, but in time came to be known as Northmen or Normen.

2. The States of our Republic eastward of New York are collectively called *New England*.

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell about the discoverers of America? What about ancient sailors of Denmark, Sweden, and Norway? What discoveries did they probably make?

LIBRARY UNIVERSITY CALIFORNIA

2. There are proofs that the Northmen attempted to make settlements in the new land they had discovered; but they left no trace of their presence, unless it be the mysterious old Tower at Newport, Rhode Island, which many believe was built by them. If these voyages were ever known in Southern Europe, they had been long forgotten when Columbus proposed to sail westward in search of wealthy India by a new route.

TOWER AT NEWPORT.

3. At that time Italy was the mistress of the Mediterranean sea, and controlled the commerce of Europe with India, the great cape of Asia, for the route thither was through Egypt, Arabia, and Persia. The merchants of Western Europe wished to share with Italy in that traffic, but their ships were not allowed to sail unmolested in the Mediterranean, to Egypt. It was the common belief that under the equator was a region of impassable heat. This error was at length corrected by Portuguese navigators, who sailed around the southern extremity of Africa and went to the East through the Indian Ocean.

4. Lisbon, from which these navigators sailed, now became an attractive place for adventurers. Columbus went there, and married the daughter of an eminent deceased navigator; and from his father-in-law's papers he got much knowledge. He was convinced that the earth was round; that an unknown continent was in the Atlantic ocean; and that Asia might be sooner reached by sailing westward than by making the long voyage around Africa. He was also impressed with a belief that he was commissioned to carry the gospel of Christ to unknown heathen.

COLUMBUS.

5. In search of knowledge, Columbus made a voyage to Ice-

QUESTIONS.—2. What can you tell about the Northmen in America? 3. What did Italy do? What did merchants of Western Europe desire to do? What error was corrected? 4. What can you tell about Lisbon, and Columbus there? What were his beliefs?

land and the icy seas beyond, where he probably heard vague rumors of the early visits to a western continent. When he returned, he asked first his own countrymen, and then the kings of England and Portugal, to help him fit out an expedition for a voyage of discovery. None but King John of Portugal listened favorably, and he did nothing. Columbus waited long. At length his wife died, and, taking his little son by the hand, he started on foot, sad and discouraged, to lay his plans before Ferdinand and Isabella, the rulers of Spain.

www.libtool.com.cn

ISABELLA.

6. The queen became his friend,[1] and with others fitted out three small vessels for Columbus. With these he sailed from Palos, in Andalusia, on the 3d of August, 1492, and, after a tedious and perilous voyage, he first saw land on the 11th of October following. It was one of the Bahamas, now called Cat Island. On the next day he went ashore, richly dressed in scarlet, and, bearing the banner of the expedition, took possession of the country in the name of the king and queen.[2] The natives received him and his followers with awe. With pious feelings he named the island San Salvador, or Holy Savior.

BANNER OF THE EXPEDITION.

7. Columbus discovered several other islands, and named the group the West Indies. On his return he was received with great honors, but the monarchs attempted to keep his discoveries

1. Isabella was very religious, and the impression made on her mind by the zeal manifested by Columbus to become a missionary, had a powerful effect. His assurance that he should find the vast treasures hidden in that far-distant India, of which travelers had told, excited her desires for greater wealth and magnificence.

2. It was a common practice then, as now, for the discoverer of new lands to erect some monument and to proclaim the title of his sovereign to the territories so discovered. The banner of the expedition borne on shore by Columbus, was a white one, with a green cross. Over the initials, F. and Y. (Ferdinand and Ysabella), were golden mural crowns.

Questions.—5. What voyage did Columbus make? To whom did he apply for help? 6. What did Queen Isabella do? What can you tell about Columbus's voyage and discoveries? What took place when he reached land?

a secret from the rest of the world for their own advantage. He made several other voyages, and in 1498 discovered the coast of South America; yet he died in the belief that he had only found a portion of Eastern Asia. One of his companions revealed the secret to Amerigo Vespucci, a Florentine navigator, who explored the eastern coast

THE VESSELS OF COLUMBUS.

COLUMBUS DISCOVERING LAND.

QUESTIONS.—7. What other voyages and discoveries did Columbus make? What can you tell about another navigator, and the naming of our continent?

of South America, and published a glowing account of the great continent which he claimed to have discovered. In his honor that continent was called AMERICA.

AMERIGO VESPUCCI.

8. Spanish settlements were soon made in the West Indies, and expeditions were sent out from St. Domingo, Cuba, and Porto Rico, in search of gold-bearing regions which, it was believed, lay around them. In 1510, Balboa crossed the isthmus of Darien, and discovered the Pacific ocean, which he called the South sea. He waded into its waters in full costume, bearing the Spanish flag, and took possession of sea and land, in the name of his sovereign.

BALBOA.[1]

9. In 1512, John Ponce de Leon sailed from Porto Rico, and discovered the present great southern cape of the United States, which he named Florida.[2] Other adventurers followed him in the same direction, and made vain attempts to plant settlements on the coast of what is now Florida, Georgia, and South Carolina. In 1517, an expedition under Cordova discovered Mexico; and so favorable was his report that Velasquez, the governor of Cuba, determined to take possession of the country. For this purpose he sent a fleet and small army, under the command of Fernando Cortez, who by falsehood and treachery obtained possession of the country in 1521.

1. The picture gives a correct representation of those armed Spaniards who attempted conquests in the New World.

2. He had been governor of Porto Rico, and had been made to believe that on the neighboring continent was a fountain whose waters, when partaken of, would restore youth to old age, and perpetuate it. He was in search of this fountain when, on the 27th of March, he touched the shore, and found it covered with flowers. It was also *Pasquas de Flores*, or Easter Sunday, on which occasion the churches were decorated with flowers. So he called the land Florida.

QUESTIONS.—8. What can you tell about Spanish settlements and expeditions? What of Balboa? 9. What can you tell about the discovery of Florida? What can you tell about the discovery and conquest of Mexico?

10. In 1539, De Soto, a Spanish adventurer, who was then governor of Cuba, landed with six hundred men in Florida, and marching westward, in spite of hostile natives, discovered the Mississippi river, and explored the country beyond it almost to the base of the Rocky Mountains. After a march of three thousand miles, during a period of about three years, De Soto died on the Mississippi, and the remnant of his followers, having suffered terribly, made their way to a Spanish settlement in Mexico. The chief object of all these expeditions was GOLD.

DE SOTO.

SECTION II.

ENGLISH AND FRENCH DISCOVERIES.

1. While the Spaniards were searching for gold in the region of the Gulf of Mexico, English and French adventurers were on the more northerly shores of the continent, on the same errand, and for the discovery of a northwest passage to India through the Polar seas. Henry the Seventh, king of England, would not listen to Columbus; but when he heard of his wonderful success, he was willing to give help in a similar undertaking.

2. John Cabot, a wealthy merchant of Bristol, England, hearing of this disposition of the king, asked him to aid himself and his son Sebastian in fitting out exploring vessels. The king did so. In May, 1497, Sebastian Cabot sailed toward Greenland with two small ships. When he encountered fields of ice in the polar waters, he turned toward the southwest, and first saw the American continent on

SEBASTIAN CABOT.

1. Verse 5, page 11.

QUESTIONS.—10. Describe the adventures of De Soto, and the end of them. What was the object of all Spanish expeditions in America?—1. What were English and French navigators doing? What can you tell about King Henry of England? 2. What can you tell about John Cabot and his son? Describe the voyage and discoveries of Sebastian Cabot.

the rugged shores of Labrador. He was the first discoverer of the American *continent*, Columbus having seen only some of its neighboring *islands*.[1]

www.libtool.com.cn

3. Sebastian was placed in command of another expedition the following year. It was fitted out by his father and some Bristol merchants for the discovery of a northwest passage to India. He was again turned southward by ice. He discovered Newfoundland,[2] and explored the Atlantic coast as far as the present harbor of Charleston. His discoveries gave him great fame. In 1517 he was sent again to the Polar seas; and in 1526 while in the employment of the king of Spain, he explored the coast of Brazil, in South America, and discovered the great river de la Plata.

VERRAZZANI.

4. The king of France, in the mean time, had become interested in these wonderful voyages, and in 1523 he employed John Verrazzani, a Florentine, to explore the coasts of the mysterious New World. Verrazzani sailed in December, and in March first touched the continent at the mouth of the Cape Fear river. He then sailed northward, examined the coast all the way to Newfoundland, and called the entire country NEW FRANCE.

CARTIER'S SHIP.

5. Ten years later, the French king was induced to attempt the planting of settlements in New France, and for that purpose he sent James Cartier, a native of St. Malo, with several vessels. Cartier reached Newfoundland early in June,

ARMS OF FRANCE.

1. Verse 7, page 12.

2. He gave the name of Newfoundland (new found land) to this large island. He perceived the immense numbers of codfish in its vicinity; and within five or six years after this discovery, many fishermen from England, Brittany, and Normandy went thither for those treasures of the deep.

QUESTIONS.—3. Describe other voyages and discoveries of Sebastian Cabot on the coast of North America. Describe his discoveries in South America. 4. What did the king of France do? What can you tell about Verrazzani's discoveries? What did he call the new country? 5. What else did the French do? What can you tell about James Cartier's doings?

1534, and soon afterward discovered the mouth of the great river which he named St. Lawrence.[1] He set up a cross and the arms of France on the shore, and took possession of the country in the name of the French king.

www.ubtool.com.cn

6. Cartier commanded another expedition to the St. Lawrence, in 1535. Leaving his larger vessels in the mouth of the St. Charles, at the site of Quebec, he went in boats to the capital of the Indian king of the country, situated where Montreal[2] now stands. He was kindly received, and returning, wintered in his ships, in the St. Charles. In the spring he decoyed the Indian king on board of one of his vessels, and carried him off to France, where he died broken-hearted. This wicked act made the Indians hate the "pale-faces," as they called Europeans. Other efforts were made by the French to plant settlements in New France, but none were successful until seventy years afterward.[3]

7. At this period, there was much religious excitement in France. The protests of Martin Luther and others against certain doctrines and practices of the Roman Catholic Church, had made a great disturbance in Europe. Those who favored the reformation then attempted were called Protestants. These had become numerous in France about the year 1560, and there they were named *Huguenots*. They had a powerful friend in Jasper Coligny, high admiral of France.

---

1. This name was given because the discovery was made on the festival day of St. Lawrence in the calendar of the Roman Catholic Church.

2. It was called *Hochelaga*. He ascended the great hill in the rear of the village, and so inspired was he with the view from its summit, that he called it Mont-Real, or Royal Mountain, the name of the present city at its foot.

3. Cartier made another voyage to the St. Lawrence, as a subordinate. Francis de la Roque, a wealthy nobleman of Picardy, in France, fitted out an expedition for discoveries and settlement in New France, by permission of the French king. He chose Cartier for his lieutenant, who sailed before his superior was ready, in June, 1541. Cartier again went up the St. Lawrence, and found the natives sullen on account of his perfidy. He built a fort at Quebec. Francis (who is better known as Lord of Roberval) followed, but the attempt at settlement was a failure. Roberval passed up the St. Lawrence, built two more forts near Quebec, endured a winter of great distress, and returned to France in the spring of 1543. Six years afterward he again sailed for the St. Lawrence, and was never heard of afterward.

FRENCH NOBLEMAN IN 1540.

QUESTIONS.—6. What can you tell about Cartier's second voyage? How did he treat the Indian king? 7. What can you tell about religious excitement in Europe? What were the reformers called? What can you say of the French Protestants?

8. The rulers in church and state persecuted the Huguenots, and Coligny resolved to find a place of refuge for them in America. The king gave him authority to do so; and in February, 1562, several vessels filled with emigrants left France for the new-found world. They landed on the shore near Port Royal entrance, where the Broad river flows into the Atlantic ocean, and there built a fort, which they called Carolina, in honor of their monarch, Charles (Carlos) the Ninth. This name was afterward given to the adjacent portion of the continent, which it still bears.

9. The attempt to settle at Port Royal failed. Another was made on the bank of the St. John's river, in Florida, and met with a most tragical end. The Spanish monarch sent Pedro Melendez, a cruel soldier, to drive away or destroy the French. He landed with his followers on the coast of Florida, founded the city of St. Augustine, and proclaimed his king monarch of all North America. This was in September, 1565. He then fell upon the Huguenots and massacred about nine hundred men, women, and children. De Gourges, a French soldier, avenged the death of these people.[1] Thus ended this first attempt to plant settlements in America.

10. Fugitive Huguenots who were picked up at sea and carried to England, told of the beauty and fertility of the southern coasts of America, and the public attention was turned in that direction. Sir Humphrey Gilbert was the first to propose a sensible plan for settlement. With the aid of his young and wealthy step-brother, Walter Raleigh, he fitted out some vessels, and sailed with a number of followers early in 1579. He was driven back by storms and Spanish war-vessels. Four years afterward [1583] he made another attempt. He reached and explored the

1. De Gourges, a fiery soldier of Gascony, fitted out an expedition to revenge this cruel act. He sailed for Florida in three ships bearing one hundred and fifty men. He attacked and captured two Spanish forts on the St. John's, and made two hundred men prisoners. These he hung upon the trees. He was too feeble to attack the force at St. Augustine, and the Spaniards held possession. This was the first permanent European settlement within the present domain of the United States. The first house built there was demolished by United States troops, during the Civil War that commenced in 1861.

QUESTIONS.—8. What did Coligny do? What can you tell about the Huguenots in America? Where did they attempt a settlement? 9. What else did the Huguenots do? How and by whom was their new settlement broken up? Who avenged the act? 10. How came the English to make voyages to the more southern coasts? What can you tell about Sir Humphrey Gilbert and his voyages to America?

New England coast, but his little squadron was destroyed by storms. Gilbert was lost, and only one of his vessels returned to England.

www.libtool.com.cn

11. Raleigh now obtained a charter for himself, by which Queen Elizabeth made him proprietor of all lands that might be discovered between the Delaware and Santee rivers. He sent two ships to explore. They entered Albemarle sound, on the coast of North Carolina; and their commanders (Amidas and Barlow), returned with glowing accounts of the beauty and fertility of the country, which they had taken possession of in the name of Elizabeth. Raleigh was delighted; and the queen, in consideration of her unmarried state, named the region VIRGINIA, and knighted the gallant proprietor.

RALEIGH.

12. Raleigh sent five ships under Sir Richard Grenville the following year [1585], and one hundred emigrants, with Ralph Lane as their governor. They landed on Roanoke island, in Albemarle sound. Being gold-seekers instead of planters, and having offended the Indians, they suffered for want of food for nearly a year, when they embarked for England with Sir Francis Drake, who touched at Roanoke.

ONE OF RALEIGH'S SHIPS.

13. Raleigh learned wisdom by failure. Instead of gold-seekers he sent farmers and mechanics, with their families, in the spring of 1587, to found a colony in Virginia. They were accompanied by John White, an English gentleman, as governor. They reached Roanoke in July, and a month afterward, Eleanor Dare, a daughter of the governor, gave birth to a girl, whom

QUESTIONS.—11. What can you tell about Walter Raleigh, and his first expedition sent to America? Tell how Virginia was so named. 12. Relate the adventures of Sir Richard Grenville and his colony. 13. What can you tell about another expedition sent by Raleigh in 1587? What occurred?

they named *Virginia*. She was the first child of European parents born in America. This colony soon afterward disappeared. Five times Raleigh sent good mariners to search for them, but in vain. They were probably taken to the continent by the Indians.

ENGLISH GENTLEMAN, 1580.

14. Twelve years after the failure of Raleigh's colonization efforts, his friend Bartholomew Gosnold sailed in a small vessel for the American coast. That was in March, 1602. After a voyage of seven weeks he discovered the continent near Nahant, eastward of the site of Boston [May 14], and as he sailed southward he discovered and named Cape Cod. He also discovered the islands of Nantucket and Martha's Vineyard, and a group which he named the Elizabeth islands, in honor of his queen. On one of them he thought to make a settlement, but the fear of Indians and a lack of supplies caused him to abandon the design and return to England.

15. Gosnold's favorable account of the country caused Bristol merchants to send out two ships in the spring of 1603, commanded by Martin Pring. He discovered the coast of Maine at Penobscot bay, in June. Sailing westward he explored the bays and rivers all the way to Martha's Vineyard,[1] where he traded with the natives, but soon sailed for England.

16. In 1605, Captain Weymouth, an English navigator, also visited Maine, and took possession of the country in the name of King James. He decoyed five natives on board of his vessel, and sailed with them for England, leaving behind him, by this wicked act, cause for the bitter hatred of the Indians for the white people. Pring made another voyage the following year [1606], and more thoroughly explored the New England coast.[2]

17. At about this time the French were again engaged in

1. Properly *Martin's* Vineyard, which was so called in honor of Martin Pring, who first cultivated traffic with the Indians there.
2. Verse 1, page 10.

Questions.—14. What can you tell about Bartholomew Gosnold's voyage and discoveries? What did he attempt to do? 15. What can you tell about Martin Pring's voyage and discoveries? 16. What did Captain Weymouth do? What crime did he commit? What more can you relate of Pring?

making explorations in the direction of the St. Lawrence. De Monts, a wealthy Huguenot, obtained a commission of viceroy over six degrees of latitude, extending from Cape May to the site of Quebec. He sailed with two vessels in the spring of 1604, and planted a settlement on the site of Annapolis, Nova Scotia. In the autumn he passed over to the St. Croix river, on the extreme eastern boundary of the United States, and built a fort. He returned in the spring, organized a colony, called the place Port Royal (now Annapolis), and named the whole region now included in New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, and the adjacent islands, *Acadie*.

18. Having obtained a grant for a temporary monopoly of the fur trade on the St. Lawrence, De Monts sent Samuel Champlain up that river for traffic and explorations. Early in the summer of 1608 he founded a settlement, and named the place Quebec. A year later he ascended the Richelieu or Sorel river, and discovered the beautiful lake in Northeastern New York which bears his name, Champlain.[1]

19. The idea of finding a northern passage to India still filled the minds of English merchants and mariners. All attempts to find it in a northwesterly direction had been foiled by ice. A company of London merchants now determined to have a search in a northeasterly direction, and for that purpose they sent Henry Hudson, an eminent navigator, toward the Polar seas beyond the northerly capes of Europe, in 1607. During that and the following years he made two voyages, but ice firmly barred the way. The disappointed merchants abandoned the project.

HENRY HUDSON.

1. Champlain penetrated southward as far as Crown Point; perhaps south of Ticonderoga. It was at about the same time that Hudson went up the river that bears his name, as far as Waterford; so that these eminent navigators, exploring at different points, came very near meeting in the wilderness. Six years afterward, Champlain discovered Lake Huron, and there he joined some Huron Indians in an expedition against one of the *Five Nations* in Western New York.

Questions.—17. What did the French now do? Give an account of De Monts and his efforts to make settlements. 18. What privilege was granted to De Monts, and what did he do? Describe the voyage and discoveries of Champlain. 19. What did Englishmen now do? Describe Hudson's voyages.

20. Hudson was not discouraged. He asked the Dutch East India Company[1] to aid him in an attempt to find a northeast passage to India. The Amsterdam directors gave it, and on the 4th of April, 1609, he sailed from that city in a yacht of eighty tons, named the *Half-Moon*, and steered for Spitzbergen. The ice was impassable. Turning westward, he sailed directly across the Atlantic ocean, touched the continent of America at Penobscot bay,[2] and coasted southward to the capes of Virginia.[3]

THE HALF-MOON.

www.libtool.com.cn

21. It was now August, 1609. Hudson sailed northward, exploring the coast and the mouths of the great rivers, and Chesapeake and Delaware bays, until the beginning of September, when he entered what is now the harbor of New York, and anchored his vessel in the river that bears his name. Up that stream he sailed almost to the head of tide-water, and in a small boat went as high as the site of the city of Waterford. In November he returned to Europe; and his report of the beautiful country he had discovered set in motion those commercial operations which resulted in the formation of the Dutch West India Company, and the founding of a Dutch colony in America.[4]

22. Now, early in the seventeenth century, commenced the period of settlements in the New World. The leading commercial nations of Western Europe, namely, England, France, Spain, and Holland, perceived that a way was opened not only for

1. This company was organized in Amsterdam, in 1595, for traffic with the East Indies. They became powerful; made conquests; founded Batavia as a Dutch colony, and opened intercourse with Japan.

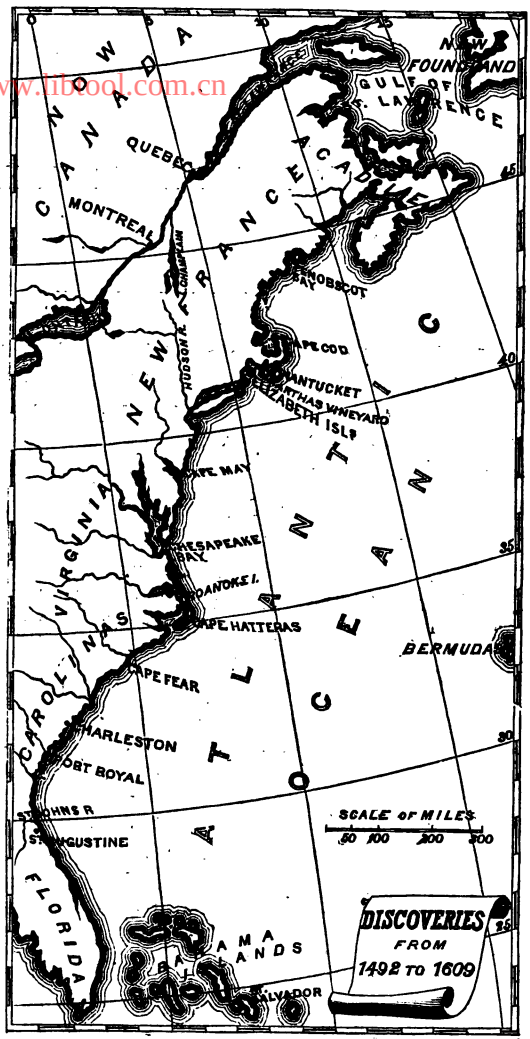
2. Verse 15, page 20.

3. The present capes Henry and Charles, at the entrance to Chesapeake bay. They were so named by Captain Christopher Newport, in honor of the sons of the then reigning king of England.

4. While on a subsequent voyage in search of a northwest passage, Hudson discovered the great northern bay that bears his name. He was there frozen in the ice during the winter of 1610-'11. While endeavoring to make his way homeward in the spring, his crew became mutinous. They finally seized Hudson, bound his arms, and placing him and his son, and seven sick companions, in an open boat, set them adrift upon the cold waters. They were never heard of afterward. Hudson left very interesting accounts of his voyages, ending with the discovery of the river that bears his name.

QUESTIONS.—20. What did Hudson do? What can you tell about his voyage when employed by the Dutch East India Company? 21. What can you tell about Hudson's coast explorations, and the discovery of a river? What did he then do? What followed?

profitable traffic, but for the founding of colonies and empires from which the parent states might receive almost unlimited tribute to national wealth and national glory; and they entered upon those vast enterprises which led to the founding of States and the creation of our Republic. When we contemplate these voyages across the stormy Atlantic, and consider the limited geographical knowledge of the navigators, the frailty of their vessels and equipments, the vast labor and constant privations endured by them, we are compelled to rank those sailors among the genuine heroes of history.



www.ibook.com.cn

QUESTIONS.—22. What have you to say about the discoveries and discoverers mentioned in this chapter? What did the nations of Western Europe expect and do?

www.libtool.com.cn

CHAPTER III.

SETTLEMENTS.

SECTION I.

1. The act of forming a settlement is not equivalent to the establishment of a colony or the founding of a state. It is the first and important step toward such an end, and may or may not show permanent results. When a *settlement* becomes permanent, and local laws for its government are framed and obeyed, it then assumes the character of a *colony*, the parent of a *state*. It seems proper, therefore, to consider the period of *settlements*, as distinct from that of *colonial organization*. The former period extends, in reference to the domain of the United States, from 1607 to 1733. The first permanent settlement within that domain, was made in

Virginia.

2. The English claimed dominion over a belt of territory extending from Cape Fear, in North Carolina, to Halifax, in Nova Scotia, and indefinitely westward. This was divided into two districts. One extended from the vicinity of New York city northward to the present southern boundary of Canada, including the whole of New England, and westward of it, and was called North Virginia. This territory was granted to an association in the west of England, called the *Plymouth Company*. The other district extended from the mouth of the Potomac southward to Cape Fear, and was called South Virginia. This was

---

Questions.—1. Define the difference between a *settlement* and a *colony*. What was the period of settlements in America? Where was the first permanent settlement within the territory of the United States? 2. What was the extent of the claims of England to territory in America? How was it divided? and what names were given to the owners?

granted to a company, chiefly residents of London, called the *London Company.*[1] The intermediate domain of almost two hundred miles was a dividing line so broad that disputes about territory could not occur, as neither company was allowed to make settlements more than fifty miles beyond its own boundary.

www.lhbook.com.cn

3. At that time great changes in society were visible in Europe, and especially in England. The printing-press was diffusing knowledge widely, and the feudal system of government, which kept great masses of men in ignorance and slavery, was rapidly giving way to more generous laws and usages.[2] Had King James the First, then the reigning monarch, been a wise and good man, he might have been a blessing to his people and to mankind, by encouraging freedom of thought and action.

4. King James was not a wise and good man. The charters which he gave to the Virginian companies, allowed to the people who were to form colonies under them, no rights of self-government as a community. They were to be controlled by a council appointed by the king; and they, in turn, were made responsible to a supreme council residing in England, also appointed by the king. Yet there were men enough who hoped to better their fortunes by a change, to allow the companies to attempt settlements at once.

5. The *Plymouth Company* made the first attempt at settlement, and failed. The *London Company* were more fortunate. In December, 1606, they sent three ships, under the command of Captain Christopher Newport, with one hundred and five emigrants, to make a settlement on Roanoke island.[3] They did not

1. The chief members of the company were Thomas Hanham, Sir John and Raleigh Gilbert (sons of Sir Humphrey Gilbert), William Parker, George Popham, Sir John Popham (Lord Chief Justice of England), and Sir Fernando Gorges, Governor of Plymouth Fort.

2. The nature of feudal laws may be illustrated by this single example: William, the Norman conqueror of England, divided the land of that country into parts, called *baronies*, and gave them to certain of his favorites, who became masters of the conquered people on their respective estates. For these gifts, and certain privileges, the *barons*, or masters, were to furnish the king with a stipulated amount of money, and a stated number of men for soldiers, when required. The *people* had no voice in this matter, nor in any public affairs, and were made essentially slaves to the barons. Out of this state of things originated the exclusive privileges yet enjoyed by the nobility of Europe. The people have been emancipated from this vassalage, and the ancient forms of feudal power have disappeared.

3. Verse 12, page 19.

Questions.—3. What can you say of society in Europe? What were producing changes? What can you say of King James? 4. What kind of government did he allow to the colonists? 5. What did the Plymouth Company do? What did the London Company do? Tell about the voyage of Newport and emigrants, and their landing-place.

arrive on the American coast until April, 1607, when they were driven by a storm into Chesapeake bay. They discovered and sailed up the Powhatan river, and on a beautiful peninsula,[1] fifty miles from its mouth, they landed and commenced building. They named the river James, and the capital of the new empire, Jamestown, in honor of the king.

www.libool.com.cn

6. Among the passengers was Bartholomew Gosnold,[2] the projector of the expedition, and Captain John Smith, a great military adventurer and energetic man. The latter was one of the council appointed by the king to rule the colony.[3] They chose Edward Maria Wingfield president, and commenced the business of founding a state. Newport, Smith, and others then explored the river as far as the site of Richmond, visited Powhatan,[4] the powerful Indian emperor of that region, and returned much gratified. In June, Newport sailed for England for more settlers and provisions.

JOHN SMITH.

7. A greater portion of these adventurers were poor materials for the construction of a state. There was no *family* among them, and only twelve laborers and mechanics. The others were "gentlemen," many of whom were idle, vicious, and dissolute, and unworthy associates of Gosnold and others who were anxious to found a permanent empire in the New World. They were consumers and not producers; and it soon became evident that if they did not plant, famine might overtake them.

---

1. This may be called an island, for the marsh which connects it with the main land is often overflowed. The currents of the river have washed away large portions of the original island.

2. Verse 14, page 20.

3. The silly king placed the names of the council in a sealed box, with instructions not to open it until they arrived in Virginia. Disputes arose on the passage. There was no competent authority to decide. Smith, who was the ablest man among them, was accused by some who were jealous of him of a design to murder the council, whoever they might be, and proclaim himself king of Virginia. He was put in irons, but when it was found that he was one of the council, the absurd accusation was withdrawn.

4. His residence, at that time, was a few miles below the site of Richmond. His chief residence was on the York river, nearer Jamestown.

QUESTIONS.—6. Who were the chief men who sailed with Newport? Who was chosen president of the colony? What did Smith and others do? 7. What was the character of most of the adventurers?

8. Famine did come soon. A larger portion of the provisions had been spoiled during the long voyage.[1] The Indians around them were unfriendly, and withheld food. Sickness attacked them; and early in September, one half of the emigrants were dead. Gosnold had perished with them. President Wingfield attempted to abandon the colony with the remainder of good supplies, and escape in a small vessel left by Newport. He was arrested and dismissed from office. Ratcliffe, his successor, was no better, and the suffering people chose Captain Smith to preside over them. He soon brought confusion into order, and made the Indians fear and like him so much that they brought corn to Jamestown.

www.ibtool.com.cn

9. Smith's energy was wonderful and useful. With the corn brought by the neighboring Indians, and the coming of wild fowl on the water, food was made plentiful in October. Then Smith, with a few men, started to explore the surrounding country. They ascended the Chickahominy river, where Smith was captured by the Indians, and his companions were slain. He was carried to the emperor Powhatan, on the York river, who received him with cool dignity.

10. A solemn council decided that Smith must die, and he was led out to execution. His head was placed upon a stone, and the heavy clubs of the executioners were raised to crush it, when Pocahontas, a child of "ten or twelve years," the favorite daughter of Powhatan, rushed from her father's side, and casting herself upon the captive, besought the king to spare his life. Powhatan consented, and Smith was conducted in safety to Jamestown by a guard of twelve men, after an absence of seven weeks. He found

POCAHONTAS.

1. Verse 5, page 25.

Questions.—8. What happened in the colony? What did the Indians do? What did President Wingfield attempt to do? What was done? What did Captain Smith do? 9. How was the colony relieved from famine? What can you tell about Smith's explorations and his captivity? 10. Relate how Smith was prepared for execution, and was saved by Pocahontas. What was the condition of the colony upon Smith's return?

everything in disorder on his return. Only forty men were living, and a greater portion of these were on the point of escaping to the West Indies.[1]

www.libtool.com.cn

11. Newport returned to Virginia early in 1608, with provisions and immigrants.[2] These were no better than the first adventurers, and instead of planting, nearly all of them engaged in gold-hunting. They could think and talk of nothing else. Even Newport was employed in the business, and carried a shipload of worthless yellow earth to England, under the impression that it contained a vast amount of the precious metal.

12. Smith vainly remonstrated against the idleness and folly around him. It increased rather than diminished. He turned in disgust from Jamestown, and with a few followers in an open boat, he traveled, during ninety days, in the summer of 1608, three thousand miles, exploring the country northward, on land and water, as far as the interior of Pennsylvania. He constructed a pretty accurate map of the region he traveled over.

13. It was now the autumn of 1608. On the 13th of September, Newport arrived with seventy immigrants. Among them were two women, the first of European birth ever seen in Virginia. These immigrants were similar to the others; and after the most strenuous efforts of Captain Smith for two years to induce the settlers to become planters, only forty acres of land were under cultivation. They depended upon the Indians for most of their food.

14. In 1609 the London Company obtained a new charter, and Lord De la Warr (Delaware), an enlightened peer, was appointed governor of Virginia for life. Toward the middle of June, Newport was sent over with a squadron of nine ships and

1. Smith wrote an earnest letter to the supreme council, saying: "I entreat you rather send but thirty carpenters, husbandmen, gardeners, blacksmiths, masons, and diggers of trees' roots, well provided, than a thousand such as we have."

2. The terms *emigrant* and *immigrant* may be applied to the same person, but under different circumstances. We use the word *emigrant* when a person leaves our country to settle in another. We use the word *immigrant* when a person comes to settle in our country.

QUESTIONS.—11. What can you tell about Newport and the immigrants who came with him? 12. What did Smith do? Give an account of his grand exploration of the country northward? 13. What can you tell about another arrival of immigrants? What were their characters? What showed their improvidence? 14. Whom did the London Company send as governor? What can you tell about Newport and other immigrants? Name the commissioners sent? What happened?

five hundred emigrants,[1] accompanied by Lieutenant-Governor Sir Thomas Gates, and George Somers.[2] These two, with Newport, were appointed commissioners to rule the colony until De la Warr's arrival. A storm dispersed the squadron, and the vessel bearing the three commissioners was wrecked on one of the Bermuda islands.

15. Seven vessels reached Jamestown in safety, and from them were landed a more vicious company of immigrants than had yet been seen there. They regarded Virginia as a paradise for bad men. In the absence of the commissioners they acknowledged no ruler. But Smith boldly asserted and maintained his authority, until an accident compelled him to go to England for surgical aid.

16. Now was a season of carelessness and suffering. Provisions were soon exhausted. The Indians withheld supplies, and resolved to destroy the intruders. Famine was quicker than they. The winter and spring of 1610 was remembered as "the starving time." Within six months after Smith left, only sixty of the five hundred settlers were alive. These would have been destroyed but for the interposition of Pocahontas. The time for the massacre was fixed. The loving Indian maiden[3] hastened to Jamestown on a stormy night, revealed the plot, made the suffering people watchful, and saved their lives.

17. The commissioners[4] reached Jamestown in June, 1610, and found the remnant of settlers on the verge of starvation. Gates determined to abandon the place, sail to Newfoundland,[5] and distribute the sufferers among the English fishermen there. They all left in four small vessels called pinnaces, but on the very next day they met English ships, with Lord de la Warr's provisions and immigrants, ascending the James river. That night

1. See note 2, page 28.
2. Domestic animals were now first taken to Virginia. They consisted of six mares, one horse, six hundred swine, a few sheep and goats, and five hundred domestic fowls. Two years later one hundred cows and some other cattle were brought over.
3. Verse 10, page 27.
4. Gates, Somers, and Newport.
5. Verse 3, page 16.

QUESTIONS.—15. What can you tell about the arrival of vessels and emigrants at Jamestown? How did they behave? What did Captain Smith do? 16. Relate what occurred to the settlers after Smith left them. How was the colony saved from entire destruction? 17. Relate what happened on the arrival of the commissioners. How was the colony saved from dispersion? What did the colonists do?

hymns of joy and thanksgiving for a great deliverance were heard in Jamestown.

18. From this time prosperity attended the settlement. In September, 1611, Gates, who had returned to England, came with six ships and three hundred immigrants, most of whom were sober and industrious men. A radical change in the domestic policy was made. Hitherto the land had been worked in common for the benefit of the whole community, and the industrious provided food for the lazy. Now a few acres of land were assigned to each man for his exclusive use. The community system was abandoned, and industry, on private account, created an ample supply of food for all.

19. At the beginning of 1613, there were one thousand Englishmen in Virginia. They had planted new settlements in the neighborhood of Jamestown, and but little seemed wanting to insure permanent success but the friendship of the Indians. The emperor, Powhatan,[1] was sullen and unfriendly; but his feelings were now changed by a remarkable event. Captain Argall, a sort of buccaneer, at the head of a foraging party, stole Pocahontas and carried her on board of his vessel, under the pretense of extorting a treaty of peace and friendship from her father. There a mutual attachment grew up between her and John Rolfe, a young Englishman of good family. He instructed her in letters and religion; and with the consent of Powhatan, she received the rite of Christian baptism, and became the wife of Rolfe, in 1613. The emperor was ever afterward the warm friend of the English.

20. Yet another element of success in founding a state was wanting. There were no *families* in Virginia, and few settlers expected to spend their lives there. This want was afterward supplied, and meanwhile the settlers prospered greatly. They cultivated the tobacco plant, as well as grain and vegetables for

1. Verse 10, page 27.

Questions.—18. What can you say of the Virginia colony at this time? What did Gates do? What change took place in Virginia? 19. How many Englishmen were in Virginia in 1613? What had they done? What was the disposition of Powhatan? What did Captain Argall do? What can you tell about Rolfe and Pocahontas? 20. What was lacking for the founding of a state? What can you tell about the cultivation of tobacco?

food; and so rapidly did the former gain in favor that it soon became, not only an article for export, but the currency of the country.[1]

www.libtool.com.cn

MARRIAGE OF POCAHONTAS.

21. A happy change took place in public affairs in Virginia in 1619, when George Yeardly became governor of the colony. He abolished martial law, released the planters from feudal ser-

1. This plant, yet very extensively cultivated in Virginia and adjoining States, was first discovered by Sir Francis Drake, near Tabaco, in Yucatan: hence its name. Drake and Raleigh first introduced it into England. King James conceived a great hatred of it, and wrote a treatise against its use. He forbade its cultivation in England, but could not prevent its importation from Virginia. It became a very profitable article of commerce, and the streets of Jamestown were planted with it. Other agricultural productions were neglected, and at times, while cargoes of tobacco were preparing for England, the necessaries of life were wanting. The money valuation of tobacco was about sixty-six cents a pound.

vice to the colony,[1] and established a representative government, by which the people had a voice in the public councils. On the 28th of June, 1619, the first representative assembly ever convened in America met at Jamestown, and then and there the foundations of the commonwealth were laid. Within two years afterward, one hundred and fifty reputable young women were sent over to become wives for the planters; and *homes*, the most adhesive materials for the foundation of a state, were created.

www.hdtool.com.cn

SECTION II.

NEW YORK.

1. We have observed that Henry Hudson's discoveries set in motion important commercial enterprises by the Dutch.[2] So early as 1610, Amsterdam directors of the Dutch East India Company[3] sent a ship from the Texel, to traffic with the Indians on the Mauritius or Hudson river, in furs and peltries. During the same year the *Half-Moon* was also sent on a similar errand, and a trading station was soon established on Manhattan island, on which the city of New York now stands.

DUTCHMAN [1620].

2. Some of these adventurers cruised along the New England coast[4] and opened the way for trappers and traders as far east as Narragansett bay. Others went up the Hudson and traded with Indians two hundred miles from the sea. They built Fort Nassau[5]

1. Verse 3, page 25.
2. Verse 21, page 22.
3. Verse 20, page 22.
4. Note 2, page 10.
5. Named in honor of the popular prince of Nassau.

QUESTIONS.—21. What change now occurred in the public affairs of Virginia? What did Governor Yeardley do? How were the foundations of the commonwealth of Virginia laid? What happy event for the colony occurred in 1619?—1. What did Hudson's discoveries do? What did some of the directors of the Dutch East India Company do in 1610? What can you tell about the *Half-Moon* and Manhattan Island? 2. What did Dutch adventurers do eastward, and up the Hudson river?

and a trading house, on a small island below the site of Albany, in 1614; and nine years later (1623) they founded the city of Albany, and built Fort Orange[1] there.

3. In the autumn of 1614, the States General[2] of Holland gave to a company of Amsterdam merchants a monopoly of the trade in America from Cape May to Nova Scotia, and the territory was named NEW NETHERLAND. The trade was very profitable; and in 1621 these merchants and others were incorporated the *Dutch West India Company.* Ample political powers were given to them. The territory was erected into a province of Holland, and the armorial distinction of a *count* was granted.[3]

SEAL OF NEW NETHERLAND.

4. In 1623, the *Dutch West India Company* commenced operations vigorously. In April, of that year, they sent thirty families of French Protestants who had taken refuge in Holland, to make a settlement in New Netherland. Cornelius Jacobsen May was sent with them as governor. Most of the families settled on the site of Brooklyn, opposite New York, and a few made their home where Albany now stands. In that year (1623) the foundations of the commonwealth of New York were laid.

1. Named in honor of the renowned William of Orange.
2. A legislative body, answering, in a degree, to our Congress.
3. Several hundred years ago there were large districts of country in England and on the Continent, governed by earls, who were subject to the crown, however. These districts were called counties, and the name is still retained, even in the United States, and indicates certain judicial and other jurisdiction. New Netherland was constituted a county of Holland, having all the individual privileges appertaining to an earldom, or separate government. The armorial distinction of an earl, or count, was a kind of cap, called coronet, seen over the shield in the above engraved representation of the seal of New Netherland. The figure of a beaver, on the shield, is emblematic of the Hudson river regions, where that animal abounded, and of one of the grand objects of settlement here, the trade in furs.

QUESTIONS.—3. How was New Netherland formed? Tell of the establishment of the Dutch West India Company. What was done for New Netherland. 4. What can you tell about the settlement of New Netherland? How were the foundations of the commonwealth of New York laid?

SECTION III.

MASSACHUSETTS.

www.libtool.com.cn

1. The *Plymouth Company*, we have observed, was at first unsuccessful. The country northward of the domain of the *London Company* was almost unknown, excepting its sea-coasts, until 1614, when the intrepid Captain John Smith[1] went there, and with only eight men explored its bays and rivers, and much of the country far inland from the Penobscot to Cape Cod.[2] He constructed a map of the country, and called the region NEW ENGLAND.

2. Smith was ordered to New England, to plant a settlement, in 1615. His vessel was captured by a French pirate, and Smith and his whole company were carried to France. He escaped to England in an open boat, and aroused the company to new exertions. Finally, in 1620, a new charter was granted, and forty of the wealthier and powerful men of the realm were incorporated THE COUNCIL OF PLYMOUTH. The territory confided to their charge embraced more than a million of square miles, between the fortieth and forty-eighth degrees of latitude, and westward indefinitely. This vast monopoly, composed chiefly of speculators and mercenary adventurers, was not a good instrument for founding a state.

3. What rich and powerful men could not do, a few humble Christian men and women performed. In the same year when this new charter was granted [1620], a company of pious people in Holland, who had been driven to that noble asylum by persecution several years before, crossed the Atlantic and founded a permanent and powerful state. They and their friends in faith and practice in England were called PURITANS, in derision, because they abstained from indulgence in the follies and vices of their

1. Verse 6, page 26. 2. Verse 14, page 20.

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell about New England, and exploration and naming of it by Captain Smith? 2. What was Smith directed to do? Relate his adventures. What can you tell about a new charter? What was the extent of the territory embraced in it? Who composed the owners? 3. What can you tell about good people driven from England? What were they called?

time, and endeavored to lead lives marked by goodness and purity. Because the Puritans dissented from the practices of the Church of England,[1] and refused to conform to them, they were also called Dissenters and Nonconformists.

www.libtool.com.cn

4. Among the devout men who fled from England was the Reverend John Robinson, pastor of a flock gathered in the northern counties. Informed that there was "freedom of religion for all men in Holland," he fled thither, with his people [1608], and established a church at Leyden. They were soon joined by others from their native country. Their purity of life and lofty independence commanded the admiration of the Dutch; and their loyalty to the country from which they had been driven was respected as a noble virtue.

A PURITAN.

5. The narratives of the Dutch traders to America made Robinson and his people, who felt they were only *Pilgrims*, determine to go to that land, where they might dwell in peace, and worship God in their own way. They obtained leave of the Plymouth company to settle in North Virginia. They formed a partnership with some London merchants, who furnished capital for the enterprise,[2] and, in the summer of 1620, many of them embarked for America, in two vessels, the *Speedwell* and the *May-Flower*.

6. The *Speedwell* did not proceed far before the courage of the

1. The national church in England was Roman Catholic for a long time, until King Henry the Eighth quarreled with the head of that church. The vicious king asked Pope Julius III. to divorce him from his queen, Catharine of Aragon, in order that he might marry the beautiful Anne Boleyn. The pope properly refused to give his sanction to the crime; and the licentious monarch, who had been so much of a friend of the Roman pontiff as to receive the title of *Defender of the Faith*, quarreled with the pope, and professed Protestantism. An act of Parliament in 1534 declared the king of England to be the supreme head of the church in that realm, and Protestantism (verse 7, page 17) was made the established religion of England.

2. The services of each emigrant were valued as a capital of ten pounds, and belonged to the company. All profits were to be reserved till the end of seven years, when all the lands, houses, and every production of their joint industry were to be valued, and the amount divided among the shareholders, according to their respective interests. This was a community of interest similar, in character, to those which have been proposed and attempted in our day, under the respective titles of Communism, Fourierism, and Socialism. It failed to accomplish its intended purpose, and was abandoned.

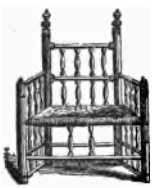
QUESTIONS.—4. What can you tell about John Robinson and his followers in Holland? 5. What caused Robinson and his people to desire to go to America? What did they do?

captain and company failed, and both ships returned to port. The *May-Flower* sailed again on the 6th of September, with forty men, most of them heads of families. The whole company numbered one hundred and one. After a boisterous passage of sixty-three days, she was anchored within Cape Cod. Her people had already entered into a written covenant, in the form of a constitution of government, and elected John Carver to be their governor. That was a sublime act performed in the cabin of the *May-Flower*.[1]

MAY-FLOWER.

www.libtool.com.cn

7. On the 22d of December, 1620, these *Pilgrim Fathers*, as they are lovingly called, landed on a bare rock, in the midst of snow, on the dreary coast of Massachusetts bay. They named the landing-place New Plymouth. There they suffered terribly. At one time there were only seven men able to take care of the sick. Governor Carver and his wife died, and so did nearly one-half of the immigrants, before the spring blossoms appeared. The survivors persevered. They built houses and planted grain; they prospered, and others came; and there, in the year 1620, the foundations of the commonwealth of Massachusetts were laid.



GOV. CARVER'S CHAIR.[2]

1. The following is a copy of the instrument: "In the name of God, Amen. We whose names are underwritten, the loyal subjects of our dread sovereign Lord, King James, by the grace of God, of Great Britain, France, and Ireland, King, Defender of the Faith, etc. Having undertaken, for the glory of God and the advancement of the Christian faith, and honor of our king and country, a voyage to plant the first colony in the northern part of Virginia; do, by these presents, solemnly and mutually, in the presence of God and of one another, covenant and combine ourselves together into a civil body politic, for our better ordering and preservation, and furtherance of the ends aforesaid; and by virtue hereof, to enact, constitute, and frame just and equal laws, ordinances, acts, constitutions, and offices from time to time, as shall be thought most meet and convenient for the general good of the colony; unto which we promise all due submission and obedience. In witness whereof we have hereto subscribed our names, at Cape Cod, the eleventh of November, in the year of the reign of our sovereign Lord, King James of England, France, and Ireland, the Eighteenth, and of Scotland the Fifty-fourth. Anno Domini, 1620.

2. This was the *throne* upon which sat the first Christian monarch of New England. Governor Carver was at the head of a new state, and, as chief magistrate, held the same relative position as King James of England, whose seat was richly ornamented and covered with a canopy of silk and gold.

QUESTIONS.—6. What can you tell about the people of the *Speedwell*? Tell of the voyage of the *May-Flower*. What great thing did the Pilgrims do on board of her? 7. What can you tell about the landing of the Pilgrims? Tell of their sufferings, and deaths. What did the survivors do?

SECTION IV.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.

www.libtool.com.cn

1. A territory, which was named *Laconia*, extending from the Merrimac river eastward to the Kennebec river, and inland to the St. Lawrence, was granted to Sir Ferdinand Gorges and John Mason, in 1622. Gorges was secretary to the council of Plymouth. Some settlements were immediately attempted, but it was seven years before a permanent one was established. This was effected in 1629, by the Rev. Mr. Wheelwright, who purchased from the Indians the wilderness between the Merrimac and Piscataqua rivers, and founded Exeter.

2. In the same year [1629], Mason became sole proprietor of Laconia, and the domain was named New Hampshire. He built a house on the site of Portsmouth.[1] Settlements were extended eastward as far as Machias, and the western limits of Acadiè, the French province, were fixed at Pemaquid Point, between the Kennebec and Penobscot rivers. In 1641, the scattered settlements became dependents of the flourishing colony of Massachusetts Bay, and remained so till 1680, when New Hampshire became a royal province, and its foundations as a commonwealth were laid.

SECTION V.

MARYLAND.

1. The conceited bigot, King James, persecuted the Puritans for non-conformity to the usages of the established church, and the Roman Catholics were subjected to still harsher treatment. But he was fickle and inconsistent; and men of both parties were found at times among his friends and counsellors.

1. Mason had been governor of Portsmouth, in Hampshire county, England, and these names were given in memory of his former residence.

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell about Laconia? Who was Gorges, and what did he do? What can you tell about a settlement in that region? 2. What did Mason do? What can you tell about settlements in New Hampshire and eastward? What did the settlements become?—1. What can you tell about King James?

2. Among the most influential Roman Catholics was George Calvert, an active member of the London Company, and secretary of state. James created him Lord Baltimore (an Irish peerage) in 1621, and granted him many personal favors. He visited Virginia in 1628, and resolved to establish a colony of Roman Catholics there. King Charles, successor of James,[1] readily granted a charter, but before it was completed [June, 1632] Lord Baltimore died. His son and successor, Cecil, received the charter, and the domain granted lay partly within the space between the lines of the London and Plymouth company's grants.[2] In honor of Charles, Queen, Henrietta Marié, the young peer named the province Maryland.[3]

CECIL, SECOND LORD BALTIMORE.

3. The first settlers in Maryland, who were mostly Roman Catholics, sailed from England on the 2d of December, 1633, with Leonard Calvert, brother of Cecil, as their governor.[4] They arrived in March, 1634, and founded the town of St. Mary, which was made the capital of the colony.

4. The charter of Maryland was so liberal, that it invited settlers of every kind; and Calvert treated the Indians so justly, that they were always friendly. Prosperity attended

1. King James died in 1625.

2. It was defined in the charter as extending along each side of the Chesapeake bay, from the 30th to the 45th degree of latitude, its western boundary being the line of the Potomac river. At this time the *London Company* was dissolved, and the soil over which it held control was the property of the king.

3. She was a sister of Louis the Thirteenth, of France. *Marié* is *Mary* in English.

4. Trading posts were established a little earlier than this within the Maryland province. In 1631, William Clayborne obtained a license from the king to traffic with the Indians; and when Calvert and his company came, he had two settlements, one on Kent island, nearly opposite Annapolis, and another at the present Havre de Grace, at the mouth of the Susquehannah. He refused to acknowledge the authority of Baltimore, and trouble ensued. He collected his people on the eastern shore of Maryland in 1635, with a determination to defend his claims by force of arms; and in May quite a severe skirmish ensued between his forces and those of the colonists. Clayborne's men were taken prisoners, and he fled to Virginia. He was declared guilty of treason, and sent to England for trial. His estates were forfeited; but, being acquitted of the charge, he returned to Maryland and ten years afterward incited a rebellion there.

QUESTIONS.—2. What can you tell about George Calvert, and James's friendship for him? What did Calvert do? What can you tell about the procuring of a charter for Maryland? 3. Who were the first settlers in Maryland? What did they do?

the settlers from the beginning. A pure democracy was established as a form of government;[1] and on the 8th of March, 1635, the first legislative assembly met at St. Mary. Then was founded the commonwealth of Maryland.

www.libook.com.cn

SECTION VI.

CONNECTICUT.

1. Adrian Block, a Dutch navigator,[2] discovered the Connecticut river in 1614, and, not long afterward, Dutch traders were on its banks. They ill-treated and exasperated the Indians,[3] and were soon compelled to erect a small fort for their own protection from the savages. This fort was a little below the site of Hartford.

2. In 1630, the *Council of Plymouth* granted a large domain in the region of Connecticut to the earl of Warwick, who, the following year, transferred all his rights thereto to several distinguished English gentlemen. The boundary of the province was defined as from the "Narraganset river" in the east, to the Pacific ocean on the west. The Dutch were disturbed, and claiming jurisdiction over the Connecticut valley by right of priority of occupation, determined to maintain their position by force, if necessary.[4]

3. The first attempt at settlement by the English was made in the autumn of 1633, when a party, under Captain Holmes, ascended the river in a sloop with the frame of a house. The Dutch at the fort ordered him to stop, but he sailed by unmolested, and set up his house on the site of Windsor, a few miles above Hartford.

1. That is, every freeman was allowed to vote in the assembly. As the members increased, this was found to be inconvenient, and in 1639 a representative government was formed.

2. Verse 2, page 32.

3. An Indian chief was taken on board a Dutch vessel, and was not released until a ransom of one hundred and forty fathoms of wampum (verse 4, page 6) had been paid. The outrage was never forgiven.

4. They had placed two cannon in their fort, and made it a formidable obstruction to the navigation for an enemy.

QUESTIONS.—4. What can you tell about the Maryland charter, and the founding of the commonwealth?—1. Who discovered the Connecticut river? What can you tell about the Dutch on its banks? 2. What did the council of Plymouth do in 1630? What were the boundaries of Connecticut? How did it affect the Dutch? 3. Describe the first attempt at settlement in Connecticut. What did the Dutch and Captain Holmes do?

4. Holmes's settlement flourished, and two years later a band of immigrants from Massachusetts Bay, sixty in number (men, women, and children), with cattle, made their way to the Connecticut through the dreary wilderness.[1] They suffered much on the way, and more after their arrival. Relief came in the spring. They built a small house for public worship on the site of Hartford, and there, in April, 1636, the first court, or organized government, was held. At about the same time, a fort was built near the mouth of the Connecticut river, and the settlement there was named Saybrook.

FIRST MEETING-HOUSE.

5. In June, 1636, about one hundred emigrants from Boston, led by Reverend Thomas Hooker, made their way through the wilderness to the Connecticut river. They reached that stream on the 4th of July, and a greater portion of them settled around the little house of worship on the site of Hartford, while others founded Wethersfield, and Springfield far up the valley.

6. Great trouble soon appeared. Between the powerful tribes of the Narraganset and Mohegan Indians, was a warlike one called Pequods, who were enemies to both. Because the white people were friendly with both their foes, the Pequods were jealous. They kidnapped white children, and sometimes murdered settlers in the forests. At length they sought an alliance with the Narragansets, in an effort to exterminate the intruders. The design was prevented by Roger Williams, of Massachusetts Bay, who had won the respect of the Indians in what is now Rhode Island.[2]

7. During the winter and spring of 1637, the Pequods made murderous raids into the Connecticut valley, in small numbers. At length the leaders of the settlers there declared war against the Pequods, whose chief, Sassacus, lived between the Thames

1. This was the first introduction of cattle into Connecticut.
2. Verse 1, page 42.

QUESTIONS.—4. What can you tell about other settlers in the Connecticut valley? What did they do on the site of Hartford? What was done at the mouth of the river? 5. What can you tell about settlers led by Hooker to Connecticut? 6. What trouble appeared? What can you tell about the Pequods?

and Mystic rivers. Their brethren in Massachusetts Bay agreed to aid them. White people, and Mohegans under the great Uncas, went by water to Rhode Island. There other white people, and Narragansets under Miantonomoh, joined them, and the little allied army, full five hundred strong, under Captains Mason and Underhill, brave leaders, marched westward to attack the strongholds of the Pequods.

8. Before dawn on the 5th of June, 1637, the principal fort of the Pequods, on the Mystic river, was surprised; and more than six hundred men, women, and children perished by weapons and fire. The blow was unexpected and appalling. Sassacus and his followers made no resistance; they fled westward in terror, and were utterly dispersed. A nation had perished in a day. The New England Indians were filled with awe; and for forty years the white people were unmolested by them.

9. While pursuing the Pequods along the region of Long Island sound, the sagacious Puritans discovered the beauty and fertility of the country, and in the autumn of 1637, a few adventurers built a hut on the site of New Haven. In the spring of 1638, others, with the Rev. John Davenport, arrived. They purchased lands of the Indians, founded the city of New Haven, and made the Bible their guide in matters of civil government.

10. In January, 1639, most of the settlers in the Connecticut valley met in convention at Hartford, and adopted a written constitution for their government. It provided for a governor and legislature, to be elected annually by the people. These were required to take an oath of allegiance to the commonwealth, and not to the king. Then and there (1639) were laid the foundations of the Commonwealth of Connecticut.

Questions.—7. What did the Pequods do? How was war with the Pequods commenced? 8. What can you tell about an attack on the Pequods? What were its effects? 9. What did the white people, chasing the Indians, discover? What did the discovery lead to? What can you tell about the founding of New Haven? 10. What did the Connecticut valley settlers do in 1639?

SECTION VII.

www.libtool.com.cn

RHODE ISLAND.

1. Roger Williams, an eminent preacher, was banished from Massachusetts Bay toward the close of 1635. He sought refuge in the wilderness, in the cabin of Massasoit,[1] the chief of the Wampanoags, at Mount Hope, near Narraganset bay. There he was joined by friends in the spring of 1636. In a light canoe they went up the bay, and at its head, on a green slope by a spring, they prayed, and chose the spot for a settlement. With grateful piety they named the place PROVIDENCE.[2]

2. Persecuted men came there to find freedom of speech, which was denied them in a degree by zealots in the Massachusetts Bay colony. They established a pure democracy in politics and religion. Canonicus, the powerful Narraganset sachem, became their fast friend; and, as we have seen, he and his people were kept from joining the Pequods by the persuasions of Williams.

3. In 1638, several persons came from Boston, on Williams's invitation; and Miantonomoh, another sachem, sold them the beautiful island of Aquiday[3] for a trifle, which they called the Isle of Rhodes. They founded Portsmouth on its northern extremity, adopted a written constitution for their government,[4] and chose William Coddington their governor.[5] Liberty of conscience was absolute there; and on their seal was the expressive motto, "*Amor vincit omnia*" ("Love is all-powerful"). In 1639,

1. Massasoit had become acquainted with the manner of building cabins adopted by the settlers at fishing-stations on the coast, and had constructed one for himself. They were much more comfortable than wigwams. See verse 3, page 6.

2. That fountain still bears the name of Roger Williams' Spring.

3. This was the Indian name of Rhode Island. It is a *Narraganset* word, signifying *Peaceable Isle*. It is sometimes spelled Aquitneck, and Aquitnet.

4. It was similar to the one used by Williams, and was as follows: "We, whose names are underwritten, do swear solemnly, in the presence of Jehovah, to incorporate ourselves into a body politic, and, as He shall help us, will submit our persons, lives, and estates, unto our Lord Jesus Christ, the King of kings, and Lord of Hosts, and to all those most perfect and absolute laws of His, given us in His holy Word of truth, to be guided and judged thereby."

5. He was not absolutely a governor. Their executive was in imitation of the Jewish form of government under the judges. Coddington was chosen first judge or chief ruler, with three assistants.

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell about Roger Williams? What can you tell about his making a settlement? 2. Who joined Roger Williams, and why? What can you tell about Canonicus? 3. What can you tell about the settlement of Rhode Island? What can you tell about their government? What was their seal?

Newport was founded near the other extremity of the island. The settlements under Williams and Coddington were known respectively as the PROVIDENCE and RHODE ISLAND PLANTATIONS.

4. In 1643, Roger Williams went to England to obtain a charter for them jointly. After much delay, he succeeded; and in March, 1644, he received a charter of incorporation, under which all the settlements were united, as one independent colony, with the general title of *The Rhode Island and Providence Plantations.* Then (1644) were laid the foundations of the Commonwealth of Rhode Island.

SECTION VIII.

DELAWARE, NEW JERSEY, AND PENNSYLVANIA.

1. The first permanent settlements in the provinces of Delaware, New Jersey, and Pennsylvania, bore such intimate relationship that they may be appropriately considered as parts of one grand event in the history of American colonization.

DELAWARE.

2. The southern coast-limit of New Netherland[1] was Cape Henlopen. The Dutch attempted settlements in that direction, and failed. The Swedes were the first permanent occupants of the shores of the Delaware bay and river. Their attention had been called to the subject of colonizing that region by Usselincx, a dissatisfied member of the *Dutch West India Company*, who laid plans before Gustavus Adolphus, king of Sweden.

3. The king heartily approved the project, and his representatives executed it with zeal. Toward the close of 1637, fifty emigrants sailed from Stockholm, with Peter Minuit as governor,

1. Verse 3, page 33.

QUESTIONS.—4. By what name were the settlements known?—1. What have you to say of settlements in Delaware, New Jersey, and Pennsylvania? 2. What was the southern boundary of New Netherland? What did the Dutch attempt? What did the Swedes do?

and in April, 1638, they landed on the site of New Castle, Delaware, and commenced a settlement. They built a church and fort on the site of Wilmington, named the territory New Sweden, and on an island just below the site of Philadelphia, founded the capital of the new empire.[1] They had purchased from the Indians the territory extending from Cape Henlopen to the Falls of the Delaware, at Trenton.

4. The Dutch finally determined to expel the intruders. Toward the close of 1655, Peter Stuyvesant, governor of New Netherland,[2] sent vessels with troops for the purpose. The Swedes were not driven away, but subjugated. For twenty-five years they increased, and greatly prospered under the rule of the authorities of New Netherland, which, meanwhile, became New York. The year 1638 is the time when the first permanent settlement was made in Delaware.

NEW JERSEY.

5. Like Delaware, the territory of New Jersey was included in the New Netherland charter.[3] The Dutch built Fort Nassau, on the Delaware, just below the site of Camden, in 1623; and in June, the same year, four couples who had been married on the voyage from Amsterdam, seated themselves on the site of Gloucester, a little below the fort.

6. Traders' huts were seen in various parts of New Jersey previous to 1664, when New Netherland passed into the hands of the English. The duke of York, its proprietor, conveyed to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret the same year all the territory between the North and South (Hudson and Delaware) rivers. During the same year several families from Long Island settled on the site of Elizabethtown. In 1665, a charter was

1. This was about forty years before William Penn became proprietor of Pennsylvania, and twenty-six before there was a settlement in New Jersey.

2. Verse 8, page 33.

3. Verse 3, page 33.

QUESTIONS.—3. What did the representatives of the Swedish king do? What can you tell about Swedish emigration to America? In what region did they settle? 4. What did the Dutch and Swedes do? 5. What can you say about New Jersey? What did the Dutch do there? What can you tell about settlements on the Delaware? 6. What can you tell about settlements in New Jersey? What did the duke of York do? What can you tell of a permanent settlement, and the founding of the commonwealth?

given them; Philip Carteret, the governor, came; and a representative government, composed of the governor and council, and delegates chosen by the people, was established. Then [1665] were laid the foundations of the Commonwealth of New Jersey.

www.libtool.com.cn

PENNSYLVANIA.

7. Among the strictest of the Puritans of England were a sect who were called QUAKERS, in derision.[1] The founder of the sect was George Fox, and one of the most distinguished of his converts was William Penn, son of an eminent admiral of that name.

8. Fox visited America in 1673, and found his people everywhere despised. He yearned for an asylum there for the persecuted sect everywhere; and through the powerful influence of Penn and his family, the Quakers became possessors, by purchase, of the western half of New Jersey. The first company of immigrants landed in the autumn of 1675, and named the place of debarkation Salem. There, in 1681, the first legislative assembly of Quakers convened.

WILLIAM PENN.

9. In the mean time, Penn projected a colony beyond the Delaware. Charles the Second gave him a charter, on the 14th of March, 1681, and the domain granted was called PENNSYLVANIA. Penn sent a deputy to organize a civil government.[2] He was accompanied by a large party of emigrants, who had purchased lands of the proprietor.[3] The following year, Penn obtained by grant and purchase the domain of the present State of Delaware.

1. Some say it was given because Fox and his followers quaked or shook when they preached. Others affirm that it was derived from the fact, that George Fox admonished a magistrate before whom he was brought, to "quake at the word of the Lord."

2. He sent a frame of government for the approval of all the settlers. It ordained a general assembly, or court, to consist of a governor, a council of seventy chosen by the freemen of the colony, and a house of delegates, to consist of not less than two hundred members, nor more than five hundred. These were also to be chosen by the people. The proprietor, or his deputy (the governor), was to preside, and to have a threefold voice in the council; that is, on all questions, he was to have three votes for every one of the councilors.

3. Lands in the new province were offered for about ten cents an acre. A large number of purchasers united, and called themselves *The Company of Free Traders*, with whom

QUESTIONS.—7. What can you tell about Quakers? Who was William Penn? 8. What did George Fox do and desire? What can you tell about Quakers in West Jersey? 9. What did William Penn do? How was he favored by the king? What can you tell about the settlement of Pennsylvania? How did Penn extend his possessions?

10. At the close of summer, in 1682, Penn sailed for America. He was joyfully received by the Swedes and the thousand new comers then on the soil. He visited his brethren in West Jersey, and the English authorities in New York. On his return, he met the general assembly of Pennsylvania, at Chester, when he made a more judicious and permanent organization of the government. Then [1682] the foundations of the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania were laid.

THE ASSEMBLY HOUSE.[1]

www.libtool.com.cn

SECTION IX.

THE CAROLINAS.

1. We have noticed the unsuccessful attempts to make settlements on the coasts of the Carolinas in the sixteenth century. Others were made soon after the settlement of Jamestown, and failed. Finally, some emigrants from Virginia settled near the site of Edenton, on the Chowan river, and their habitations became permanent. William Drummond was appointed their governor in 1663, and an independent community, with the title of the *Albemarle County Colony*, was established.

2. In the same year [1663], King Charles granted to eight of his favorite friends an immense territory in that region, and gave it the general name of CAROLINA.[2] In 1667, the Bahama islands were added to the grant. Already some Barbadoes planters,

Penn entered into an agreement concerning the occupation of the soil, laying out of a city, etc.

1. The picture is a correct representation of the building at Chester, in Pennsylvania, wherein the assembly met. It was yet standing in 1850. Not far from the spot, on the shore of the Delaware, at the mouth of Chester creek, was also a solitary pine tree, which marked the place where Penn landed.

2. It extended coast-wise, from the present boundary line between Virginia and North Carolina, southward to St. Augustine, and westward to the Pacific ocean.

QUESTIONS.—10. How was Penn received in America? What did he do after his arrival?—1. What can you say of attempts to settle in the Carolinas? What was accomplished?

under Sir John Yeamans, a bankrupt baronet, had made a settlement on the site of Wilmington, on the Cape Fear river.[1] An independent government was organized, under the title of the *Clarendon County Colony*, and Yeamans was appointed governor. In 1668 the first popular legislative assembly convened at Edenton; and at that period the Commonwealth of NORTH CAROLINA was founded.

3. In 1670 a colony, under William Sayle and Joseph West, attempted to settle on Beaufort island, where the Huguenots built Fort Carolina.[2] They soon abandoned the spot, and on the Ashley river, a few miles above the site of Charleston, they made a settlement. They were joined by Sir John Yeamans, who came from Barbadoes with fifty white families and about two hundred negro slaves. He was appointed their governor, and *Carteret County Colony* was established.

4. Ten years later [1682] Charleston was founded, on the point formed by the Ashley and Cooper rivers.[3] Immigrants came from Europe and the northern colonies, and settlements spread into the interior. Representative government was established, and at about this period [1682] the foundations of the Commonwealth of SOUTH CAROLINA were laid.

1. In 1661 some New England Puritans settled on the same spot, but the poverty of the soil made them soon abandon it. The new settlers turned their attention chiefly to the manufacture of boards and other timber, and also turpentine, from the immense pine forests of the coast regions. Such continues to be the staple trade in the region between the Cape Fear and Roanoke, in the vicinity of the seaboard.

2. Verse 8, page 18. Sayle had previously explored the Carolina coast. Twenty years before he had attempted to plant an "Eleutheria," or place dedicated to the genius of Liberty (see *Eleutheria*, Anthon's Classical Dictionary), in the beautiful islands near the coast of Florida.

3. Charleston was laid out by John Culpepper, who had been surveyor-general for North Carolina. The two rivers were named in honor of Ashley Cooper, earl of Shaftesbury. The Indian name of the former was *Ke-a-wah*; of the latter *E-ti-wan*.

QUESTIONS.—2. What did King Charles do in 1663 and 1667? What can you tell about a settlement on the site of Wilmington? What can you tell about the establishment of a government, and the founding of the Commonwealth of North Carolina? 3. What can you tell about settlers and settlements farther south? What about the establishment of a colony there? 4. What can you tell about the founding of Charleston, and the Commonwealth of South Carolina?

SECTION X.

www.libtool.com.cn

GEORGIA.

1. The right to occupy the wilderness between the Savannah and St. John rivers was so hotly disputed, for a time, by the Spaniards at St. Augustine and the South Carolinians, that war seemed inevitable.[1] At that time a great moral movement was in progress in England, at the head of which was General James Edward Oglethorpe, a brave soldier and member of Parliament. It was to afford relief to virtuous prisoners for debt, and other poor of the realm.

JAMES EDWARD OGLETHORPE.

2. Oglethorpe proposed to open the prison doors to all such debtors as should agree to go to America and settle there, on the southern coast. A royal charter was granted by George the Second in June, 1732, to a corporation "in trust for the poor," for twenty years; and Parliament and individuals furnished money to carry out the benevolent design.[2]

3. Oglethorpe was a practical philanthropist. He accompanied the first band of emigrants, as their governor. They sailed in November, 1732, for the Carolina coast; touched at Charleston; many made a brief halt at Beaufort; and by the middle of February, 1733, the whole company were seated on Yamacraw bluff, on the site of the city of Savannah, which Oglethorpe had chosen as the place for settlement. There they commenced building the capital of the future state.

1. The Savannah is the present boundary line between South Carolina and Georgia, and the St. John is a river in Northern Florida. The Spaniards instigated the Indians to depredate on the Carolina settlers, who went southward of the Savannah.

2. Individuals subscribed large sums; and within two years after the charter was issued, Parliament had appropriated $180,000 for the same purpose.

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell about disputes between the Spaniards and the South Carolinians? What movement took place in England, and for what purpose? 2. What did Oglethorpe propose? What was done? 3. What did Oglethorpe do? What can you tell about the first settlers in Georgia?

4. Oglethorpe built a fort, mounted cannon upon it, and in May, 1733, he met fifty chiefs in council, with To-mo-chi-chi,[1] the principal sachem of the Creek confederacy, at their head. Satisfactory bargains were made for territory; and by a treaty concluded in June, the English obtained sovereignty over a vast domain,[2] which was named GEORGIA, in honor of the king. Then were laid the foundations of the commonwealth of that name.

www.libtool.com.cn

5. We have considered the events which led to the first permanent settlements in the United States, and the formation of colonies. We will now consider the history of those colonies, until the period of the French and Indian war, when they were united in a sort of national league for common defence.

1. *To-mo-chi-chi* was then an aged man, and at his first interview with Oglethorpe, he presented him with a buffalo skin, ornamented with the picture of an eagle. "Here," said the chief, "is a little present; I give you a buffalo's skin, adorned on the inside with the head and feathers of an eagle, which I desire you to accept, because the eagle is an emblem of speed, and the buffalo of strength. The English are swift as the bird, and strong as the beast, since, like the former, they flew over vast seas to the uttermost parts of the earth; and, like the latter, they are so strong that nothing can withstand them. The feathers of an eagle are soft, and signify love; the buffalo's skin is warm, and signifies protection: therefore I hope the English will love and protect our little families." Alas! the wishes of the venerable *To-mo-chi-chi* were never realized, for the white people more often plundered and destroyed, than loved and protected the Indians. See picture on page 8.

2. The domain granted by the charter extended along the coast from the Savannah to the Alatamaha, and westward to the Pacific ocean. The trustees appointed by the crown possessed all legislative and executive power; and therefore, while one side of the seal of the new province expressed the benevolent character of the scheme, by the device of a group of toiling silkworms, and the motto, *Non sibi, sed aliis;* the other side, bearing, between two urns, the genius of "Georgia Augusta," with a *cap of liberty* on her head, a spear, and a horn of plenty, was a false emblem. There was no political liberty for the people.

QUESTIONS.—4. What did Oglethorpe do at Savannah? What can you tell about his interview with the Indians? What can you say of the founding of the Commonwealth of Georgia? 5. What have we considered in this chapter, and what shall we now consider?

www.libtool.com.cn

CHAPTER IV.

THE COLONIES.

SECTION I.

1. THE colonial history of the United States is comprised within the period commencing when the several settlements along the Atlantic coasts became organized into political communities, and ending when representatives of these colonies met in general congress in 1774. There was an earlier union of interests and efforts. It was when the English colonies aided the mother country in a long war against the combined hostilities of the French and Indians. As the local histories of the several colonies after the commencement of that war have but little interest for the general reader, we shall trace the progress of each colony only to that period, and devote a section to the narrative of the French and Indian war.

2. We have observed that a *settlement* acquires the character of a *colony* only when it has become permanent, and the people, acknowledging allegiance to a parent state, are governed by organic laws.[1] According to these conditions, the earliest of the twelve colonies represented in the congress of 1774,[2] was

VIRGINIA.

3. It was a happy day for the six hundred settlers in Virginia, when the gold-seekers disappeared,[3] and the enlightened George

1. Verse 1, page 24.
2. Georgia was not officially represented in that Congress.
3. Verse 11, page 28.

QUESTIONS.—1. What is the period of the colonial history of the United States? What earlier union than 1774 took place? What shall we now do? 2. What is the difference between a *settlement* and a *colony*? Which was the earliest colony?

Yeardley became governor, and established a representative assembly [June 28th, 1619]—the first in all America.[1] And yet a prime element of happiness and prosperity was wanting. *There were no white women in the colony.* This want was soon supplied. During the following year [1620] not less than twelve hundred emigrants went from England to Virginia, and among them were ninety young women, "pure and uncorrupt," who were sold to the planters for wives, at the cost of their passage.[2] The family relation was soon established; the gentle influence of woman gave refinement to social life on the banks of the James river, and a new incentive was given to industry and thrift.[3] During the same year [1620] a Dutch trading vessel entered the James river with negroes, and sold twenty of them to the planters at Jamestown. This was the beginning of Negro Slavery in the United States.

4. Emigrants now flocked to Virginia in great numbers, and settlements extended even so far as the site of Richmond. The government was remodeled. Sir Francis Wyatt, appointed governor in 1621, took with him to Virginia a written constitution, which gave the people the privilege of choosing a popular legislative assembly,[4] while the governor and council were appointed by the Company. Trial by jury was established, and courts like those of England were organized.

5. Serious trouble soon appeared. Emperor Powhatan, the friend of the English,[5] was dead, and their enemy sat in his seat.

---

1. Verse 21, page 31.

2. Tobacco had already become a circulating medium, or currency, in Virginia. The price of a wife varied from one hundred and twenty to one hundred and fifty pounds of this product, equivalent, in money value, to about $90 and $112 each. The second "cargo" were sold at a still higher price. By the king's special order, one hundred dissolute vagabonds, called "jail-birds" by the colonists, were sent over the same year, and sold as bond-servants for a specified time.

3. Most of the immigrants hitherto were possessed of the spirit of mere adventurers. They came to America to repair shattered fortunes, or to gain wealth, with the ultimate object of returning to England to enjoy it. The creation of families made the planters more attached to the soil of Virginia.

4. The different settlements were called *boroughs.* This assembly consisted of two burgesses or representatives from each borough, chosen by the people. This was the beginning of the Virginia House of Burgesses, which was so powerful on the side of freedom when the old war for independence broke out in 1775.

5. Verse 19, page 30.

QUESTIONS.—3. What was a happy incident in the history of Virginia? What were wanting in the colony? How was that want supplied? What did the family relation do? How was Negro Slavery in the United States begun? 4. What can you say of the growth of Virginia? What of a new form of government?

The Indians plotted the extermination of the white people. At midday, on the first of April, 1622, they fell in fury on the more remote settlements. Within an hour, three hundred and fifty men, women, and children were slain. In the space of a few days, *eighty* plantations were reduced to *eight*.[1] The people at Jamestown and vicinity were put on their guard by a Christian Indian, and were saved.

www.libtool.com.cn

6. A vindictive war ensued, and a terrible blow of retaliation was given by the white people. The Indians upon the James and York rivers were slaughtered by scores, or were driven far back into the wilderness. Yet a blight was upon the colony. Sickness and famine followed close upon the massacre. Within three months, the colony of four thousand souls was reduced to twenty-five hundred; and at the beginning of 1624, of the nine thousand persons who had been sent to Virginia from England, only eighteen hundred remained.

7. By an act of high-handed usurpation, King James dissolved the *London Company* in 1623, and, seizing their possessions, made Virginia a royal province. Yeardley[2] was appointed governor, with twelve councilors; but the king wisely abstained from interfering with the House of Burgesses, for the people regarded their constitutional *privileges* as their *rights*.

8. James was succeeded by his son Charles, in 1625. He was a weak and selfish man. He favored the Virginians, because he wished to share in the profits of projected commercial speculations in their tobacco.[3] The people accepted his favors, but went steadily on in the practice of self-government, with a determination to be free. They boldly deposed an obnoxious governor,

1. The leader of this massacre was Opechancanough, a younger brother of Powhatan, and his successor as emperor. He was wily and very treacherous. Only a few days before the massacre, he declared that "sooner the skies would fall than his friendship with the English should be dissolved." Even on the day of the massacre, the Indians entered the houses of the planters with usual tokens of friendship.

2. Verse 3, page 50.

3. In June, 1628, the king, in a letter to the governor and council, asked them to convene an assembly to consider his proposal to contract for the whole crop of tobacco. He thus tacitly acknowledged the legality of the republican assembly of Virginia, hitherto not *sanctioned*, but only *permitted*.

QUESTIONS.—5. What can you tell about troubles on the death of Powhatan? What did the Indians do? What dreadful calamity befell the colony? 6. What can you tell about retaliation? How did the colony suffer from sickness? 7. What did the king do to the London Company? How did it affect Virginia? 8. Who succeeded King James? What did he do? and for what purpose? How did the people show their independence?

and elected a new one. Although the dismissed magistrate was reinstated, the royal governors ever afterward paid marked respect to the expressed will of the people.

www.libtool.com.cn

9. Sir William Berkeley, an accomplished courtier, was appointed governor in 1641. He ruled with vigor and discretion, and the colony prospered greatly.[1] He was a stanch royalist, and suppressed the growth of democracy as much as he dared, periling his seat. During the years 1644 and 1645, he conducted a war with the Indians, which they began, so well that the power of the savages for harm was completely broken, and he received large cessions of land from the subjugated chiefs.

10. During the civil war in England, when King Charles lost his head, the Virginians, adroitly led by Berkeley, remained loyal, and invited the monarch's exiled son and heir to come over and be their king. They defied the power of Cromwell and the republican Parliament; and until Charles was restored to the throne of his father in 1660, Virginia was virtually an independent state. Becoming dissatisfied with Berkeley, they elected another governor in his place, and democracy became wide-spread and powerful throughout the colony, notwithstanding the royalist majority proclaimed Charles "king of England, Scotland, Ireland, and *Virginia*."[2]

11. The restoration of monarchy in England was the signal for an attempt to overthrow democracy in Virginia. Full power to do so was given to Berkeley and the royalist party. Those of the latter who were members of the House of Burgesses, elected for two years, claimed the right to hold office indefinitely. Thus the representative system, which was so prized by the people, was virtually overthrown. Unequal taxes were levied, and an

1. In 1648 the number of colonists was 20,000. "The cottages were filled with children, as the ports were with ships and immigrants."

2. When informed that Parliament was about to send a fleet to bring them to submission, the Virginians sent a message to Charles, then in Flanders, inviting him to come over and be king of Virginia. He had resolved to come, when matters took a turn in England favorable to his restoration. In gratitude to the colonists, he caused the arms of Virginia to be quartered with those of England, Scotland, and Ireland, as an independent member of the empire. From this circumstance Virginia received the name of *The Old Dominion*. Coins, with these quarterings, were made as late as 1773.

QUESTIONS.—9. What can you tell of Governor Berkeley? What can you tell about a war with the Indians? 10. What did the Virginians do during the civil war in England? What did the Virginians do after the restoration of Charles the Second? 11. What was attempted in Virginia? What did Berkeley and the royalists do?

idle aristocracy were recognized as a distinct and ruling class. The Church of England was made the state religion, and intolerance, the parent of persecution, began to grow. The profligate monarch gave away large tracts of the finest portions of Virginia to his special favorites, and an oppressive navigation act, passed by the Parliament ten years before, was revived.

www.libtool.com.cn

12. The "common people"—the men of toil and substantial worth in the colony—formed a republican party, and rebellious murmurs were heard on every side. These soon grew into *acts*. Threats of an Indian raid was a pretext for the people to arm themselves. They chose Nathaniel Bacon for a leader, and he placed himself at the head of about five hundred men, without Berkeley's permission. The governor proclaimed him a traitor, and sent troops to arrest him. The whole colony was soon involved in civil war.

13. Bacon drove Berkeley to the eastern shore of the Chesapeake. He dissolved the aristocratic assembly; reinstated the House of Burgesses;[1] confiscated the property of royalists; held their wives as hostages; and proclaimed the abdication of the governor. He was about to cast off all allegiance to the British crown, when news came that troops from England had arrived to put down the rebellion.

CHURCH TOWER.

14. Bacon was deceived. There were no imperial troops in Virginia. Under the impression that there were, and that armed royalists were marching upon Jamestown, he set that village on fire at dusk on the 30th of September [1676]. The next morning nothing was left of the first town built by the English in America, but the broken tower of the church, which now attracts the attention of the voyager on the James river.[2] Bacon then

1. Note 4, page 51.

2. The church, of which the brick tower alone remains, was built about 1620. It was probably the third church erected in Jamestown. The ruin is now (1864) a few rods from

QUESTIONS.—11. How were the people oppressed? 12. Who formed a republican party in Virginia? What did they do? How came they to arm themselves? What can you tell about Nathaniel Bacon? 13. What did Bacon do, and contemplate doing? What rumors reached Bacon? 14. What did Bacon do? What remains of Jamestown? What can you tell about the death of Bacon, and the end of his "rebellion"? What did the governor do?

pushed on with his troops to meet his enemy, but within a fortnight he perished, on the north bank of the York river [October 11, 1676], from fever—a foe more inexorable than man. With him died the rebellion. The exasperated governor caused more than twenty of Bacon's leading associates to be hanged, and many suffered from fines, confiscations, and imprisonments.

www.libtool.com.cn

15. This effort to establish a free government is known in history as *Bacon's Rebellion*. There was no printing press in Virginia to put facts on record,[1] and for a hundred years loyalists called the leader a *traitor*. Such would have been Washington's title, had our Revolution failed. The colony felt the effects of this civil commotion many years, and suffered much from tyranny; but democratic ideas had taken root, and the people were on the eve of another general rebellion. King Charles died, and his brother James succeeded him, in 1685.

16. The Virginians hoped for a change on the accession of James the Second. They were disappointed; and again they were on the verge of open rebellion, when the Revolution in England, in 1688, placed William of Orange and his wife Mary on the throne. Then a real change for the better took place in all the American colonies. The rights of the people were expressly defined, and the growth of free institutions in America was rapid and healthful. From that time Virginia was a prosperous commonwealth.[2]

---

the encroaching bank of the river, and is about thirty feet in height. The engraving is a correct representation of its present appearance. In the grave-yard adjoining are fragments of several monuments. Besides the church and court-house, Jamestown contained sixteen or eighteen houses, built of brick, and quite commodious, and a large number of humble log cabins.

1. Berkeley was an enemy to popular enlightenment. He said to commissioners sent from England in 1671, "Thank God, there are no free schools nor printing-press; and I hope we shall not have these hundred years; for learning has brought disobedience, and heresy, and sects into the world, and printing has divulged these, and libels against the best government." Despots are always afraid of the printing-press, for it is the most formidable foe of tyranny.

2. The population at that time (1688) was about 50,000, of whom one-half were negro slaves. The tobacco trade had become very important, the exports to England and Ireland being about 30,000 hogsheads that year. Almost one hundred vessels annually came from those countries to Virginia for tobacco. A powerful militia of almost 9,000 men was organized, and they no longer feared their dusky neighbors. They became very expert in the use of fire-arms in the woods, and back to this period the Virginia rifleman may look for the foundation of his fame as a marksman. The province contained twenty-two counties, and forty-eight parishes, with a church and clergyman in each, and a great deal of glebe land. But there was no printing-press nor book-store in the colony. A press was first established in the colony in 1729.

QUESTIONS.—15. What was this effort of the people called in history? What thoughts arose on the subject? How did the "rebellion" affect the colony? 16. What did the Virginians hope for? What were they about to do? How were the colonies benefited by the Revolution in England, in 1688?

SECTION II.

www.libtool.com.cn

MASSACHUSETTS.

1. For a hundred days after the landing of the Pilgrim Fathers at New Plymouth,[1] a few Indians hovered with fear around that band of sufferers. Then they boldly approached the settlement [March 26, 1621]; and Samoset, who had learned some English words of fishermen at Penobscot,[2] said, *Welcome, Englishmen!* These were blessed words for the settlers, who feared the savages. Soon afterward, Massasoit, the Wampanoag sachem,[3] came from Mount Hope in barbaric pomp, and formed a treaty of friendship with the white people, which remained unbroken for fifty years.

2. Three days after this interview [April 3, 1621], Governor Carver died, and was succeeded by William Bradford, who was a chief manager of the affairs of the colony for more than thirty years. The settlers endured great hardships. In the autumn of 1621 they were barely saved from starvation by a scanty crop of Indian corn.[4] In November, other immigrants came, and offered more mouths to be filled with scanty supplies. The winter was spent in suffering from cold and hunger, and dread of Canonicus, the Narraganset sachem, who was unfriendly.

3. In the summer of 1622, a company of sixty-three immigrants arrived. They had been sent by Weston, a dissatisfied member of the Plymouth Company, to plant a new colony. Many of them were idle and vicious. They lived on the slender supplies of the Plymouth people a while, when they commenced a settlement on the site of Weymouth. They offended the Indians, and

1. Verse 7, page 36. 2. Verse 15, page 20. 3. Note 3, page 7.

4. While Captain Miles Standish and others were seeking a place to land (verse 7, page 36), they found some *maize* in one of the deserted huts of the savages. Afterward, Samoset and others taught them how to cultivate the grain (then unknown in Europe), and this supply serving for seed, providentially saved them from starvation. The grain now first received the name of *Indian corn*. Early in September [1621], an exploring party, under Standish, coasted northward to Shawmut, the site of Boston, where they found a few Indians. The place was delightful, and, for a while, the Pilgrims thought of making their residence there.

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell about the *Pilgrims* and Indians at Plymouth? What can you relate of *Massasoit*? 2. What can you tell about Governors Carver and Bradford? What can you tell about the sufferings of the settlers? 3. What can you tell about the arrival and character of new immigrants? What did they do? What did Captain Standish do?

were saved from destruction by them[1] by the timely assistance of Captain Miles Standish and eight followers, who attacked the savages and killed a chief and several warriors.[2] Most of the emigrants at *Wissagusset*, as the Indians called the place, soon afterward returned to England.

www.libtool.com.cn

4. The partnership of the London merchants and the settlers[3] proved injurious to the interests of the latter, and at the end of the prescribed term of seven years, in 1627, it was dissolved. The colonists became sole proprietors of the soil; the community system was abandoned; and industry and thrift found new and powerful incentives in individual enterprise.[4] Their government, which was a pure democracy in church and state, remained almost unchanged until 1634, when a representative system was established, and a pastor was chosen as spiritual guide.

FIRST COLONY SEAL.

5. Persecutions of Nonconformists had sent many and valuable emigrants to New England. Some made a temporary settlement on Cape Anne, in 1624; others seated themselves, four years later, on the Merrimac river; and, in the summer of 1628, John Endicqt and one hundred immigrants came over, and at Naumkeag, which they named SALEM, they laid the foundations of the colony of *Massachusetts Bay*. The proprietors received a charter from the king the following year [March 14, 1629], and they were

1. In gratitude for attentions and medicine during a severe illness, Massasoit revealed the plot formed by the Indians to murder these settlers, to Edward Winslow (afterward governor of the colony), a few days before the time appointed to strike the blow.

2. Standish carried the chief's head in triumph to Plymouth. It was borne upon a pole, and was placed upon the palisades of the little fort which had just been erected. The good Robinson (verse 4, page 35), when he heard of it, wrote, "Oh, how happy a thing it would have been that you had converted some before you killed any!" The injustice and violence practiced toward the Indians by the English produced much evil.

3. Verse 5, page 35.

4. Verse 18, page 30. The colonists unsuccessfully tried the cultivation of tobacco. They raised enough grain and vegetables for their own consumption, and relied upon traffic in furs with the Indians, for obtaining the means of paying for cloths, implements, etc., from England. In 1627, they made the first step toward the establishment of the cod fishery, since become so important, by constructing a salt work, and curing some fish. In 1624, Edward Winslow imported three cows and a bull, and soon animals of that kind became numerous in the colony.

QUESTIONS.—4. What change in ownership of the territory occurred? What effect did it have? What was the form of government in 1634? 5. What drove English people to America? What can you tell about them, and about the founding of the colony of Massachusetts Bay?

incorporated by the name of *The Governor and Company of the Massachusetts Bay, in New England.*[1]

6. The new colony increased rapidly, and in the autumn of 1629 the proprietors assigned the charter and government to them. Men of wealth and character prepared to emigrate to the independent republic; and in July, 1630, John Winthrop and about three hundred families arrived at Salem, Winthrop having been chosen governor. They commenced settlements at and around Dorchester, Roxbury, Watertown, and Cambridge. Winthrop and others built cottages on the peninsula of Shawmut, and there founded the city of Boston, the future capital of New England.

7. Sickness laid two hundred of the emigrants in the grave before winter. The survivors were not disheartened. They had come to establish a free state, and persevered. In 1634 they changed their pure democracy to a representative government.[2] Prosperity prevailed. Indian leaders dined at Governor Winthrop's table, and made treaties of friendship with him. Friendly words passed between him and the Dutch authorities on Manhattan;[3] and intercourse was opened, by sea, with Virginia, as early as May, 1632.[4]

JOHN WINTHROP.

8. The Puritans[5] of Massachusetts, just escaped from persecution, were jealous of every interference with their authority, their

1. The administration of affairs was intrusted to a governor, deputy, and eighteen assistants, who were to be elected annually by the stockholders of the corporation. A general assembly of the freemen of the colony was to be held at least four times a year, to legislate for the colony. The king claimed no jurisdiction, for he regarded the whole matter as a trading operation, not as the founding of an empire. The instrument conferred on the colonists all the rights of English subjects, and afterward became the text for many powerful discourses against the usurpations of royalty.

2. It was agreed at a general assembly of the people in May, 1631, that all the officers of the government should thereafter be chosen by the *freemen* of the colony. None were considered freemen unless they were members of some church within the colony. From the beginning, the closest intimacy existed between the church and state in Massachusetts, and that intimacy gave rise to a great many disorders. This provision was repealed in 1665.

3. Verse 1, page 32.

4. In May, 1632, a vessel from Virginia, laden with Indian corn, sailed into Boston Harbor.

5. Verse 3, page 34.

QUESTIONS.—6. What can you tell about the new colony? What of new settlements? How was the city of Boston founded? 7. How did the colony suffer? What can you tell about prosperity that ensued?

peculiar views, and their peace. They regarded Churchmen [1] and Roman Catholics as their deadly foes—to be kept at a distance.[2] They adopted rigid rules of action, and required those who came among them to conform to them. By the standard of our day they would be called intolerant bigots; by the standard of their time, they appear like sagacious men, made cautious and suspicious by suffering, and inimical to every seeming disturber of their peace.

9. Roger Williams,[3] a Puritan minister, was the first to feel the power of that intolerance. He boldly denounced the prevalent exclusiveness in Massachusetts; denied the right of magistrates to control the consciences of the people, or to withhold protection from any religious sect whatever; and concluded that the king had no right to require an oath of allegiance from the colonists, who were free.[4] For these and other broad views of the civil and religious rights of the people, he was banished from the colony, went to the wilderness [January, 1635], and founded Rhode Island.[5]

10. Violent theological discussions ensued, in which Anne Hutchinson, an eloquent woman, took part, in favor of the views of Williams. Young Henry Vane, who had been elected governor in 1636, and several ministers and magistrates, agreed with him; but the exclusive party, led by Winthrop, were the most powerful. Mrs. Hutchinson's doctrines were condemned as hereti-

1. Note 1, page 35.
2. The following is an example of the jealous zeal of the colonists in keeping their old persecutor at bay: Lyford, who was sent out to the Pilgrims by the London partners, as their minister, was refused and expelled, because he was friendly to the Church of England. John and Samuel Browne, residents at Salem, and members of Endicot's council, were arrested by him, and sent to England as "factious and evil-conditioned persons," because they insisted upon the use of the liturgy, or printed forms of the English Church, in their worship.
3. Verse 1, page 42.
4. Williams was violent in his denunciations, and even went so far as to contend that obedience to magistrates ought not to be enforced; in other words, all civil government should be abolished, so far as it controlled the wills of men. He also held some very narrow views of social obligations. He maintained that an oath should not be tendered to an unconverted person, and that no Christian could lawfully pray with such a one, though it were a wife or child! In the intemperance of his zeal, Williams often exhibited intolerance himself, and at this day would be called a bigot. Yet his tolerant teachings in general had a most salutary effect upon Puritan exclusiveness.
5. Verse 1, page 42.

QUESTIONS.—8. What have you to say about the feelings and actions of the Puritans in Massachusetts? 9. What can you tell about Roger Williams's banishment, and the reasons for it? What were his views? 10. What can you tell about theological discussions and persons connected with them, in Massachusetts? What was done to Anne Hutchinson?

cal, and she and her family were banished from the colony in the summer of 1637.

11. The continual dread of the Indians was removed by the results of the Pequod war,[1] in 1637, and the Massachusetts colony flourished amazingly. Persecution in England sent hundreds of true men across the Atlantic in search of freedom. Vain efforts were made to stop the flight, as early as 1633. Believing that the colonists "aimed not at new discipline, but sovereignty," the king attempted to deprive them of their charter and reduce them to dependent vassals. He failed. The colonists prospered. They fostered education,[2] religion, and morals, and laid deeper and deeper the foundations of a free state.

12. The civil war in England left the colonies free to act. Those of New England, excepting Rhode Island, formed a confederation for mutual benefit in 1643.[3] It lasted more than forty years, when mutual jealousies caused its dissolution. This was the first effort to establish a *nation* in America. The work was not accomplished until a century after this experiment was abandoned.[4]

13. In 1644, Massachusetts established a distinct House of Representatives. The people were thoroughly democratic, and sympathized with the opposers of royalty during the civil war in England. They prospered wonderfully. They opened trade with the West Indies[5] in defiance of a Navigation Act.

---

1 Verse 7, page 40.

2. In 1636 the general court at Boston appropriated two thousand dollars for the establishment of a college. In 1638, Rev. John Harvard bequeathed more than three thousand dollars to the institution which was then located at Cambridge, and it received the name of "Harvard College," now one of the first seminaries of learning in the United States. In 1647 a law was passed, requiring every township which contained fifty householders, to have a school-house and employ a teacher; and each town containing one thousand freeholders, to have a grammar-school.

3. Rhode Island asked for admission into the union, but was refused unless it would acknowledge the authority of Plymouth.

4. When James the Second came to the throne, the charters of all the colonies were taken away, or suspended. When local governments were reëstablished after the Revolution of 1688, there no longer existed a necessity for the union, and the confederacy dissolved. A nation, permanent and powerful, was formed under the National Constitution of 1789, when our Great Republic was established.

5. Verse 7, page 12.

QUESTIONS.—11. What caused the prosperity of the Massachusetts colony? What can you tell of the efforts to stop emigration from England? What did the colonists do? 12. What can you tell about a confederation of the New England colonies? 13. What can you tell about a change in the government of Massachusetts in 1644? What evidences of prosperity were seen in Massachusetts?

CALIFORNIA

They coined money in 1652,[1] and performed other acts of sovereignty, much to the disgust and alarm of the royalists in England. During that year the jurisdiction of Massachusetts was extended over the settlements in Maine.

FIRST MONEY COINED IN THE UNITED STATES.

14. The arrival of two Quaker women at Boston in 1656, was the beginning of lamentable events in that colony. They were suspected of every evil practice, and were imprisoned. Others came, and were whipped and imprisoned. Finally a decree of banishment, on pain of death in the event of their return, was proclaimed. Still they came. Some suffered death, and many were scourged and imprisoned. Finally they came to be regarded as martyrs. A more Christian spirit prevailed and persecutions ceased. The excuse for these terrible measures was that the Quakers preached doctrines dangerous to good government.

15. When monarchy was restored in England, in 1660,[2] the republican New Englanders were made to feel the royal displeasure in various ways. Steps were taken to bring Massachusetts, in particular, to the feet of the monarch, by the rule of royal commissioners in violation of its charter. The people so boldly resisted this attempt at usurpation that it was abandoned. Ever afterward Massachusetts took a front rank in the march of the American colonies toward complete freedom. The colony was prospering wonderfully when, in 1675, Metacomet (known as King Philip), son of the good Massasoit,[3] commenced a terrible

1. In October, 1651, the general court or legislature of Massachusetts ordered silver coins of the values of threepence, sixpence, and a shilling sterling, to be made. The mint-master was allowed fifteen pence out of every twenty shillings, for his trouble. He made a large fortune by the business. From the circumstance that the effigy of a *pine-tree* was stamped on one side, these coins, now very rare, are called *pine-tree money*. The date [1652] was not altered for thirty years. Massachusetts was also the first to issue paper money, in the shape of treasury notes, in 1690.

2. Verse 10, page 53.

3. Verse 1, page 56.

QUESTIONS.—14. What can you tell about the Quakers in Boston? What was done to them? 15. What was the effect in New England of the restoration of monarchy in Old England in 1660? What was attempted, and what did the people do? What calamity came upon the colony in 1675?

war against the white people. This is known in American history as

KING PHILIP'S WAR.

www.histori.com.cn

16. Philip kept the covenant of his father with the white people for twelve years after the old sachem's death. But as spreading settlements were reducing his domains acre by acre, breaking up his hunting-grounds, diminishing his fisheries, and menacing his nation with servitude or annihilation, his patriotism was aroused, and he willingly listened to the hot young warriors of his tribe, who counseled a war of extermination against the English. At Mount Hope,[1] the seat of the chief sachems of the Wampanoags, in the solitudes of the forests, he planned, with great skill, an alliance of all the New England tribes against the European intruders.[2]

KING PHILIP.

17. Philip struck the first blow at Swanzey, thirty-five miles southwest from Plymouth, on Sunday, the 4th of July, 1675. Many white people were slain or made captives, and others fled to the surrounding settlements and gave the alarm. The settlers flew to arms, and very soon Philip was a fugitive among the Nipmucs in the interior of Massachusetts. They espoused his cause; and with fifteen hundred warriors he fell upon the remote settlements high up the Connecticut valley.

18. The murders and burnings by the savages were widespread and terrible, and for months there was an apprehension

1. Mount Hope is a conical hill, three hundred feet in height, and situated on the west side of Mount Hope bay, about two miles from Bristol, Rhode island. It was called Pokanoket by the Indians.

2. The tribes which became involved in this war numbered, probably, 25,000. Those along the coast of Massachusetts bay, who had suffered terribly by a pestilence just before the Pilgrims came (verse 7, page 36), had materially increased in numbers; and other tribes, besides the New England Indians proper, became parties to the conflict. The New England Indians inhabited the country eastward from the Connecticut river to the Sacro, in Maine.

QUESTIONS.—16. What can you tell about King Philip? What caused him to commence a war? What did he plan? 17. How and where did King Philip's war commence? What did the settlers do? What can you tell about the movements of Philip?

that the white people of New England would be utterly exterminated. Philip was joined by the Springfield Indians in September,[1] and on the 29th of October he fell furiously upon Hatfield, with almost a thousand warriors. He was so severely handled by its defenders that he fled, with a remnant of his followers, toward Rhode Island.

www.libtool.com.cn

19. In violation of a recent treaty, the Narragansets gave Philip shelter. Fifteen hundred New Englanders proceeded to punish them for their bad faith. In a swamp, where they had collected their winter stores within palisades, the savages were surrounded at the close of December [1675], and within a few hours five hundred wigwams and a large amount of stores were in flames. Hundreds of men, women, and children perished in the fire, and a thousand warriors were slain or made captives.

20. Philip escaped, and found new allies during the winter; and in the spring of 1676 he commenced the work of desolation anew. It was terribly performed, and as terribly retaliated. During that year almost three thousand Indians were slain or brought into submission. Philip was chased from one hiding-place to another. His family were captured. His spirit was broken. A faithless Indian shot him, and Captain Church cut off his head. His body was quartered. His little son was sold as a bond-slave in Bermuda.[2] So perished the last prince of the Wampanoags, and thus ended KING PHILIP'S WAR and the power of the New England Indians.[3]

---

1. They had been friendly until now. They plotted the entire destruction of the Springfield settlement; but the people defended themselves bravely within their palisaded houses. Many of the strong houses of frontier settlements were thus fortified. Trunks of trees, eight or ten inches in diameter, were cut in uniform lengths, and stuck in the ground close together. The upper ends were sharpened, and the whole were fastened together with green withes or other contrivances.

PALISADED BUILDINGS.

2. The disposal of the boy was a subject of serious deliberation. Some of the elders proposed putting him to death; others, professing more *mercy*, suggested selling him as a slave. The most *profitable* measure appeared the most *merciful*, and the child was sold into bondage. The head of Philip was carried in triumph to Plymouth, and placed upon a pole.

3. The result of this war was vastly beneficial to the colonists, for the fear of savages,

---

QUESTIONS.—18. What can you tell about the progress of the war? Relate how Philip became a fugitive? 19. What did the Narraganset Indians do? By whom and how were they punished? What terrible event occurred? 20. What did Philip do? What befell him and his family? How did the war end?

21. While the New England colonies were yet weak from the effects of King Philip's war, the profligate Charles, who feared and hated the growing republics in America because their free life was making many discontented subjects at home, attempted to take their government into his own hands. He made the rejection of Edward Randolph, a custom-house officer, by the authorities of Massachusetts, the occasion for declaring the charter of that colony void. Before his object could be practically effected, he died [Feb. 26, 1685], but his brother James gladly continued the wicked scheme.

22. James declared the Massachusetts charter void, and at the close of 1686 he sent over Sir Edmund Andros with authority to rule all New England as governor-general. Andros arrived at Boston on the 30th of December, and at once began playing the tyrant with a high hand. The oppressed people were about to practice the doctrine that "*resistance to tyrants is obedience to God*,"[1] when intelligence reached Boston [April 14, 1689] that James was driven from the throne [1688], and was succeeded by William and Mary, of Orange. The inhabitants of Boston seized and imprisoned Andros and fifty of his political associates [April 28, 1689], sent them to England under a just charge of maladministration of public affairs, and reëstablished their constitutional government. Again republicanism was triumphant in Massachusetts.

23. The Revolution in England in 1688[2] was a cause of war between that country and France. King James fled to the court of the French monarch, who espoused his cause, and hostilities between the two nations commenced the same year. Their quarrel extended to their respective colonies in America. The con-

which prevented a rapid spread of settlements, was removed. From this period may be dated the real growth of New England. During the war, New England lost six hundred men; a dozen towns were destroyed; six hundred dwellings were burned; every twentieth family was houseless; and every twentieth man who had served as a soldier, had perished. The cost of the war equaled five hundred thousand dollars; a very large sum at that time.

1. Oliver Cromwell's motto. 2. Verse 16, page 55.

Questions.—21. What was done to deprive the colonies of their liberties? Who was King Charles's successor? 22. What did King James do? What did Andros attempt? What were the people about to do? What prevented revolution in Massachusetts? How did the people get rid of Andros? 23. What was an effect of the Revolution in England? What did the king of France do? What important event occurred, and what was it called?

flict that ensued, and which continued more than seven years, is known in history as

www.libtool.com.cn

KING WILLIAM'S WAR.[1]

24. In this war the English colonists suffered dreadfully. The French Jesuits,[2] who had acquired great influence over the eastern tribes of Indians, easily excited them to renew their fierce warfare against the English. They also made the savages their allies; and all along the frontier settlements, murder and desolation were soon seen. Dover, a frontier town, was first attacked, on the 7th of July, 1689; and from that time the greatest alarm and confusion prevailed all along the frontiers, from the Penobscot to the Hudson. In February, 1690, the inhabitants of Schenectady, on the Mohawk river, were massacred by the French and Indians in the dead of night, and the village was burned; and some settlements in the east suffered a like fate during the spring.

25. These atrocities aroused all the colonies to a sense of danger, and the New England people fitted out an expedition under Sir William Phipps, in May, 1690, which seized and plundered portions of the French domain of Acadie.[3] New York, also menaced, joined New England in an attempt to conquer Canada, by sending a land expedition by way of Lake Champlain[4] to Montreal,[5] and a naval expedition up the St. Lawrence against Quebec.[6] The former was commanded by a son of Governor Winthrop, of Connecticut, and the latter by Sir William Phipps. Both were unsuccessful. Winthrop's troops, with warriors of the

1. Because it was during the reign of William and Mary. See verse 16, page 55.
2. This was a Roman Catholic religious order, founded by Ignatius Loyola, a Spaniard, in 1539. They have ever been remarkable for their great devotion to their cause, their self-denial, and masterly sagacity in the acquirement and maintenance of power. Their missionaries preached Christianity in every part of the habitable globe. They came with the first French adventurers to America, and, under their influence, whole tribes of Indians, eastward of Massachusetts and in Canada, were made nominal Christians. This was one of the ties which made the savages such faithful allies to the French during the contests between them and the English, previous to 1763.
3. Verse 17, page 20.
4. Verse 18, page 21.
5. Verse 6, page 17.
6. Verse 18, page 21.

QUESTIONS.—24. What can you tell about the effects of King William's war in America? What did the Jesuits do? What terrible events occurred? 25. What did these atrocities effect? What expedition was fitted out? What did it do? What can you tell about expeditions against Canada?

Five Nations,[1] were repulsed at Frontenac,[2] and Phipps found Quebec too strongly fortified to promise a successful siege.

26. Another change of government now took place in New England. King William caused the colonies of Plymouth, Massachusetts, and the settlements in Maine and New Brunswick, to be consolidated by a new charter, under the old name of *Massachusetts Bay Colony*, and made it a royal province. The new charter (which was taken to Boston from England in May, 1692, by Sir William Phipps, who had been appointed governor under it) was not acceptable to the people, for it abridged their privileges. Much discontent ensued, but no overt act of revolt occurred.

27. During the same year [1692] the people of a portion of Massachusetts were afflicted by a great delusion. A belief in witchcraft, or sorcery, generally prevailed, and to the practice of that "black art" some strange conduct of persons in Salem was attributed. Persons were suspected of being witches, or wizards, and were arrested and punished. The delusion spread fearfully; and in the course of six months no less than twenty inhabitants, suspected of practicing witchcraft, suffered death, and scores of others were imprisoned. The delusion passed away as suddenly as it appeared.

28. King William's war continued until 1697. The English frontier settlements suffered terribly from the savages, incited, and often accompanied, by the French. A treaty of peace stopped the war, but the lull in the storm was very brief. King James died in the autumn of 1701, and the French monarch acknowledged his son to be the rightful sovereign of England. On that account the war was renewed in 1702, when Anne was reigning monarch of England. The French and English colonies in

1. These were properly tribes of the Iroquois nation (see note 4, page 5), named respectively Mohawks, Oneidas, Onondagas, Cayugas, and Senecas. They formed a confederacy in the present State of New York.
2. The site of Kingston, Upper Canada.

QUESTIONS.—26. What change in government took place in New England in 1692? How was it received by the people? 27. What can you tell about a delusion in Massachusetts concerning witchcraft? 28. How long did King William's war continue? How was it stopped? What can you tell about the renewal of war between England and France?

America were involved in the contest, and it is known in American history as

QUEEN ANNE'S WAR.

29. Again the New England frontiers were desolated by the French and Indians. Blood flowed in almost every valley. Deerfield, on the Connecticut river, was laid in ashes, and many of the inhabitants were carried into captivity. Remote settlements were abandoned; the people collected in palisaded houses[1] for protection, and worked their fields with arms in their hands. Fortunately for the inhabitants of New York, the *Five Nations*[2] had made a treaty of neutrality with the French in Canada [August, 1701], and they stood an impassable barrier against the savage hordes on the borders of the St. Lawrence.

30. Attempts were made, from time to time, by the New England people, to chastise their enemies on their eastern border. Little was accomplished until 1710, when an expedition from Boston, in conjunction with a fleet from England, captured Port Royal,[3] and named the place Annapolis, in honor of the queen. This led to the annexation of Acadiè to the British realm, under the name of Nova Scotia, or New Scotland.

31. An English fleet and army, under Sir Hovenden Walker, designed for the conquest of Canada, arrived at Boston in July, 1711. They were joined by New Englanders; and on the 10th of August, almost seven thousand troops departed for Quebec. On the night of the 2d of September, eight of the ships and almost a thousand men perished on the rocks at the mouth of the St. Lawrence, and the expedition was abandoned. A land force, four thousand strong, on its way from Albany, on the Hudson,[4] hurried back. Hostilities were suspended; a treaty of peace was concluded in April, 1713; and the Indians sued for pardon.

32. For thirty years after Queen Anne's war, the colonists

1. Note 1, page 63.
2. Note 1, page 66.
3. Verse 17, page 20.
4. Verse 2, page 32.

QUESTIONS.—29. What can you tell of the sufferings of the New England settlers? How were the inhabitants of New York protected? 30. What did the New England people attempt? What can you tell about an expedition against the French in Acadiè? What was the result? 31. What can you tell about an expedition against Quebec? What great calamity occurred to the fleet? What followed?

enjoyed comparative repose. It was a period of much political agitation in Massachusetts, and democratic principles grew vigorously. The royal governors and the people had some warm disputes, and sometimes they appeared almost warlike. These were arrested in the spring of 1744, when they heard that France had declared war against England. They immediately prepared to commence the contest known in American history as

KING GEORGE'S WAR.

33. The principal event of this war, in America, was the capture of Louisburg, on the island of Cape Breton. It was a strong fortress, erected by the French, and called *The Gibraltar of America.* Plans for its capture were perfected in Massachusetts, under the direction of the energetic Governor Shirley. The other New England colonies contributed their quota of troops. New York sent artillery, and Pennsylvania contributed provisions. Common danger from a common foe was thus knitting the English colonies into a closer union of interest and sympathy.

34. Three thousand two hundred troops, under General William Pepperell, sailed from Boston, for Louisburg, on the 4th of April, 1745. On the 9th of May they were joined by a British fleet under Admiral Warren. The combined forces, four thousand strong, landed in the rear of the town and fort. The French were taken by surprise. A regular siege commenced on the 31st of May, and on the 28th of June

CAPTURE OF LOUISBURG IN 1745.

QUESTIONS.—32. How long afterward did the colonies enjoy repose? What was the aspect of public affairs in Massachusetts? What new war broke out in 1744? 33. What was the principal event in *King William's war*? Give an account of the preparations to attack Louisburg? What was the effect of these efforts on the colonies? 34. What can you tell about the expedition to capture Louisburg? How and when was it effected?

the city and fortress of Louisburg and the island of Cape Breton were surrendered to the English.[1]

35. This event deeply mortified the pride of the French, and, in 1746, the duke d'Anville was sent with a powerful armament to recover the lost fortress. Storms wrecked many of his vessels, and disease swept off hundreds of his men. Dismayed and disheartened, he abandoned the enterprise. Two years afterward, a treaty of peace restored quiet; but it was not long before the colonists were called upon to engage in the final struggle for dominion in America between the French and English, known in American history as *The French and Indian War.*

www.ftbook.com.cn

SECTION III.

NEW YORK.

1. The colony of New York was founded in 1623, when the territory was called New Netherland.[2] When Peter Minuit[3] arrived as governor, in May, 1626, he purchased of the Indians, for about twenty-four dollars, the whole of the island of Manhattan, on which the city of New York now stands,[4] and began vigorously to perfect the founding of a state similar to those of Holland. He erected a strong fortification near the site of the present *Battery*, and called it *Fort Amsterdam*, *New Amsterdam*

1. Louisburg is on the east side of the island of Cape Breton, with a fine, deep harbor. The landing-place of the British, position of the camp, etc., will be seen by reference to the map. The *royal battery* was taken by four hundred men. When they approached, the French thought the whole English army was upon them. They immediately spiked their guns (that is, drove steel spikes into the touch-holes of the cannons, so as to make them useless), and fled. In the upper part of the map is a profile of the fortifications at Louisburg. It is given here in order to illustrate certain terms which are used in military narratives: *a*, the *glacis*, is the extreme outside slope of the works; *b*, the *banquet*, or step upon which the soldiers stand to fire over the parapet; *c*, a *covered way* into the fort, under the *banquet*; *d*, *counterscarp*, a bank or wall, outside the *ditch*, *e*; *f*, the *parapet*, a protection for the men and guns from the balls from without; *g*, the inner *banquet*; *h*, *ramparts*, the most solid embankment of the fortress; *i*, the last slope in the interior of the fort, called *talus*. The property obtained by the English, by this conquest, amounted, in value, to little less than $5,000,000.

2. Verse 3, page 33. 3. Verse 3, page 43. 4. Verse 1, page 32.

QUESTIONS.—35. What effect did the capture of Louisburg have on the French? What was done to recover it? What happened to the French? What restored quiet?—1. When was the colony of New York founded, and what was it first called? What can you tell about the beginning of a state on Manhattan island? How did Governor Minuit manage affairs?

being the name given to the city. By kind measures he gained the confidence of the Indians;[1] and he also opened a friendly correspondence with the Puritans at Plymouth. The English reciprocated the friendly expressions of the Dutch; at the same time they requested the latter not to send their trappers quite so far eastward as Narraganset Bay, to catch otters and beavers.[2]

www.libtool.com.cn

2. To encourage emigration to New Netherland, the *Dutch West India Company*[3] offered [1629] large tracts of land and certain privileges to those persons who should lead or send a given number of emigrants to occupy and till the soil. Directors of the Company availed themselves of the privilege, and sent Wouter Van Twiller to examine the country and select the lands. Immigrants came; and then were laid the foundations of the most noted of the manorial estates of New York. The proprietors were called *patroons*, or patrons.

3. Van Twiller was appointed governor in 1633, and after a rather quiet administration, he was succeeded in 1638 by Sir William Kieft, a haughty, rapacious, and unscrupulous man, who soon brought serious trouble upon the colony. He sought to make his own will the supreme law; and he treated the people with disdain. His turbulent spirit soon led him into strife with the Swedes on the Delaware,[4] the English on the Connecticut,[5] the Indians all around him, and the colonists at his door.

4. At length the murmurs against him were too loud not to be heeded by him. He had determined to make war upon the neighboring Indians, but thought it prudent to consult some of the leading men. He called a meeting of the heads of twelve families in New Amsterdam, in August, 1641, and these, on the 29th of that month, chose "twelve select men," with De Vries at

1. Verse 7, page 71.
2. Trade in furs was the chief occupation of the Dutch of New Netherland at this time. They became expert trappers, and were seen as far east as Nantucket, and even Cape Cod. The trade soon became profitable to the Company. The first year's remittance of furs to Amsterdam was valued at $11,000. This trade greatly increased; and before the troubles with the Indians in 1640, the value of furs sent to Holland annually, was more than $60,000.
3. Verse 3, page 33. 4. Verse 2, page 43. 5. Verse 3, page 39.

Questions.—2. What was done to encourage emigration to New Netherland? How were the manorial estates of New York founded? 3. What can you tell about Van Twiller and his successor? What was the character of Kieft? With whom was he at strife? 4. What can you tell about Kieft's respect for the people, through fear? What did the representatives of the people do? What followed?

their head, to act for them. This was the germ of representative government in New Netherland. It grew vigorously. These "select men" were opposed to Kieft's war projects. They also talked freely about the grievances of the people; and the governor, alarmed by this appearance of the democratic principle, dissolved them in February, 1642.

www.tbtool.com.cn

5. Released from the restraint imposed by these representatives of the people, the governor made war upon the Indians. With cruel treachery he caused an attack to be made upon some at Hoboken, who had craved his protection from savage foes. The Hollanders and some Mohawk warriors fell upon them at midnight [February, 1643], and before the dawn almost one hundred men, women, and children had perished. This atrocity created an intense thirst for revenge among the savages. The frontier settlements were devastated, and for a while the very existence of the Dutch colony was in peril.

6. The Indians were finally subdued, and the cruel Kieft, the author of all the serious trouble in the colony, was recalled, and succeeded by Peter Stuyvesant, a just, prudent, honest, and energetic man. He arrived at New Amsterdam in May, 1647, and entered upon his duties with vigor. As a military leader, he had been accustomed to arbitrary rule. He was stern and inflexible, and could play the tyrant admirably when disposed to do so.

PETER STUYVESANT.

7. Stuyvesant cultivated the friendship of the Indians, and treated his white neighbors with respect.[1] He regarded the Swedes with some disdain, and without their leave built a fort on the Delaware, within

1. Stuyvesant prudently avoided collisions with the English settlers eastward of him. He went to Hartford, and there made a treaty which fixed the eastern boundary of New Netherland nearly on the line of the present division between New York and Connecticut, and across Long island, at Oyster bay, thirty miles eastward of New York. The Dutch claims to lands on the Connecticut river were extinguished by this treaty.

Questions.—5. What can you tell about Kieft's war with the Indians? What effect did his atrocity at Hoboken produce? 6. What can you tell about Kieft's recall and Stuyvesant's arrival? What was the character of Stuyvesant? 7. What was Stuyvesant's deportment toward his neighbors? How did he regard the Swedes? How did he treat them? What can you tell of the subjugation of the Swedes?

their domain.[1] They seized it; and in August, 1655, Stuyvesant with six hundred men proceeded to chastise them for the act. By the middle of autumn they were completely in his power, and submitted to him as a conqueror.[2] Thus, after an existence of about seventeen years, NEW SWEDEN[3] disappeared by annexation to NEW NETHERLAND.

8. A spark of Indian war that appeared during Stuyvesant's absence, was immediately extinguished on his return, and he saw no appearance of trouble coming from his neighbors. But the aspect of affairs in his own colony made him uneasy. He had perceived the rapid growth of democratic ideas planted in Kieft's time. These were fostered by Puritan settlers in New Netherland, whose continual praises of English laws and government had created among the Hollanders a desire to exchange Stuyvesant's rigor for the milder English rule.

9. In December, 1653, deputies from each village in New Netherland, chosen by the people, had assembled at New Amsterdam, without Stuyvesant's consent, to consult on public affairs. He opposed them with all his might. They grew bolder and bolder, and finally they resisted taxation, and openly expressed a willingness to bear English rule for the sake of enjoying English liberty. They were on the point of revolution, when the change in government which they professed to desire, was made without their help.

10. The change was made in this wise: Charles the Second, king of England, gave to his brother James, Duke of York and Albany, the whole territory of NEW NETHERLAND, in March, 1664. The duke sent a squadron under Colonel Richard Nicolls to secure the gift, and on the 3d of September following, the red

1. Verse 3, page 43. The fort was built on the site of New Castle, Delaware, and was named Cassimer.

2. He captured all the Swedish fortresses, and sent the governor (Risingh) and several influential Swedes to Europe. Some of the settlers withdrew to Maryland and Virginia, but the great body of them quietly submitted, and took an oath of allegiance to the States-General of Holland. Note 2, page 33.

3. Verse 3, page 43.

QUESTIONS.—8. What did Stuyvesant do on his return from the Delaware? What trouble did he find in his own colony? How were the Hollanders made discontented? 9. What can you tell about a popular assembly at New Amsterdam? What did Stuyvesant do? What did the people attempt? 10. Can you relate how New Netherland passed into the hands of the English, and was named New York?

cross of St. George[1] floated in triumph over the fort, and the name of NEW YORK was given to New Amsterdam. The whole province passed into the possession of the English. It was named NEW YORK,[2] and Colonel Nicolls was appointed governor.

11. English rule was not so mild as the Dutch expected. Nicolls was a petty tyrant, and declared that the people should have "liberty for no thought but how to pay their taxes.' But the people *did* think of something else, and were on the eve of open rebellion, when a Dutch squadron, in July, 1673, sailed into New York bay, and, by the aid of treachery, took the fort and city.[3] By a treaty of peace between England and Holland, then at war, the city and province were restored to the English, and remained in their possession until the Revolution of 1775.

CITY OF NEW YORK IN 1664.

12. In 1683, the duke of York granted to the people of New York a CHARTER OF LIBERTIES,[4] but when he ascended the throne on the death of his brother, in 1685, he withdrew these privileges and devised measures for enslaving the colonists. Again the people were driven to the verge of rebellion, when the Revolution in England, in 1688, caused them to pause. Jacob Leisler, an influential merchant and commander of the militia, then took pos-

1. The royal standard of England is sometimes so called because it bears a red cross, which is called the "cross of St. George," the patron saint of Great Britain. After the union with Scotland, the cross of St. Andrew (in the form of an X) was added, and is now seen on the British flag. In the centre are the royal arms. This *union*, as the figure is called, was borne upon the American flag, sometimes, until after the Declaration of Independence in 1776. It was upon the flag of thirteen stripes, alternately red and white, which Washington caused to be unfurled at Cambridge, on the first day of that year.

2. In honor of the duke of York, its proprietor.

3. The above picture is a correct view of the city of New York two hundred years ago. It is now the largest city on the American continent. On the left of the picture is seen Fort Amsterdam, with the church and governor's house within it, and a windmill.

4. This was the foundation of representative government in New York. The assembly consisted of the governor and ten councilors, and seventeen deputies elected by the freeholders. They adopted a *Declaration of Rights*, and asserted the principle, so nobly fought for a hundred years later, that *taxation* and *representation* are inseparable—in other words, that taxes cannot be levied without the consent of the people, expressed by their representatives. At this time the colony was divided into twelve counties.

QUESTIONS.—11. How were the Dutch disappointed in English rule? What did Governor Nicolls do? What prevented a revolution in New York? Relate how New York changed masters? 12. What was granted to the people of New York? What did King James attempt to do? What occurred in New York after the Revolution in England? What can you tell about Jacob Leisler?

session of the fort, and with the sanction of the people assumed the position of governor. He performed his duties well until the arrival of a new royal governor, when he relinquished power. His enemies caused him to be tried for high treason, and he was hanged on the 26th of May, 1691.

www.ibtool.com.cn

13. Leisler's death created the most violent party spirit. The ruling class—the aristocracy—were his enemies; the great mass of the people—the democracy—were his friends. Fletcher, who became governor in 1691, was the tool of the aristocracy. He was cordially hated by the people; and he was remembered with gratitude for only a few acts. Among these was his wisdom in listening to the advice of Major Schuyler, concerning the French and Indians, who, under Frontenac, governor of Canada, were menacing all Northern New York. Schuyler, with some white soldiers and warriors of the *Five Nations*, beat the foe back to the St. Lawrence, and so desolated his settlements, in 1692, that Frontenac was glad to remain quiet at Montreal.

14. The earl of Bellomont, who succeeded Fletcher in 1698, was a better man. He was laboring for the good of the people when he died, in the spring of 1701, and was succeeded by Edward Hyde, a dissolute knave, who persecuted all Christians but Churchmen, and robbed the people by embezzling the public money. He was recalled in 1708; and from that time until the arrival of William Cosby as governor, in 1732, the royal representatives, unable to resist the will of the people, as expressed by the assembly, allowed democratic principles to grow and bear fruit.

15. Rip Van Dam, a "man of the people," was acting governor when Cosby came. They soon quarreled. Two violent parties were formed. The democratic supported Van Dam; the aristocratic supported the governor. Each controlled a newspaper. When argument failed, the governor endeavored to suppress the democratic paper, by causing the arrest of its editor,

QUESTIONS.—13 What was the effect of Leisler's death? What can you tell about Governor Fletcher? What can you tell about the Indians on the frontier? 14. What can you tell about Governor Bellomont? Who was his successor, and what was his character? What can you tell about the growth of democracy in the colony? 15. What can you tell about Rip Van Dam and Governor Cosby? What can you tell about the newspapers, and the defense of the liberty of the press?

John Peter Zenger, on a charge of libel. He was tried and acquitted by a jury; and the magistrates of the city of New York presented his counsel with a testimonial of their gratitude for his noble defense of the liberty of the press.

16. The trial of Zenger drew the lines of demarkation between the American republicans and royalists, very distinctly, and from that time until the French and Indian war, in 1754, their feuds compose much of the record of the public life of the province of New York. With every contest republicanism gained strength, and achieved complete triumph in the old war for independence, begun in 1775.

SECTION IV.

MARYLAND.

1. Maryland, as we have observed, had its colonial birth when the first popular assembly convened at St. Mary for legislative purposes, on the 8th of March, 1635.[1] Its sturdy growth began when, in 1639, the more convenient form of representative government was established. It was crude, but it possessed the elements of republicanism. The freemen chose as many representatives as they pleased, and others were appointed by the proprietor. These, with the governor and secretary, composed the legislature. At this first session a Declaration of Rights was adopted; the powers of the governor were defined; and all the privileges enjoyed by English subjects were guaranteed to the colonists.

2. From 1642 until 1646, the colony was deeply agitated by an Indian war and an internal rebellion. The former was quelled in 1645. In the same year, Clayborne, already mentioned,[2] returned from England, and fanned the embers of discontent in the

1. Verse 4, page 38. 2. Note 4, page 38.

QUESTIONS.—16. What did the trial of Zenger do? What good did the disputes of the republicans and loyalists effect?—1. What can you say about the beginning and growth of the colony of Maryland? What can you tell about the government of Maryland?

province into a flame of open insurrection. Governor Calvert[1] was compelled to flee to Virginia; and for about a year and a half the rebels held the reins of government, and the horrors of civil war menaced the colony. The insurrection was suppressed in the summer of 1646.

3. An important law, known as the *Toleration Act*, was made by the assembly in 1649; it was intended as an exponent of the charter, which guaranteed freedom of opinion and action to all in religious matters. This guarantee also sanctioned democratic ideas; and these flourished vigorously in the new state, especially for ten years after royalty was abolished [1649] in England.

4. In the mean time the colonial government had been reorganized. The legislative body was divided [1650] into an upper and lower house. The former was composed of the governor and his council; the latter, of representatives of the people. So great had been the influx of Protestants, on account of toleration, that their representatives outnumbered those of the Roman Catholics in the assembly in 1654. They then questioned the rights of the proprietor, and even went so far as to declare, by statute, that Roman Catholics were not entitled to the protection of the laws.

5. Civil war ensued,[2] and for a long time anarchy prevailed. The colony was torn by internal dissensions; and this state of things ended only by an act of the assembly [March 24, 1660], which asserted the supreme authority of the people, dissolved the upper house, and gave to the lower house the whole legislative power of the province. Joseph Fendall, a judicious man, who had been appointed governor by the proprietor in 1656, was commissioned as governor of the people.

6. On the restoration of monarchy in England, in 1660,[3] the

1. Verse 3, page 38.
2. The Roman Catholics adhered to Lord Baltimore, and the Protestants opposed him. An armed force under Stone, a former governor, appointed by the proprietor, seized the public records. Stone assumed the office of governor. In a severe battle, not far from the site of Annapolis, his party was defeated. Stone was made prisoner, but his life was spared. Some of his adherents suffered death as traitors.
3. Verse 10, page 53.

Questions.—2. What can you tell about an Indian war, and a rebellion in Maryland? 3. What can you tell about the Toleration Act? 4. What change was made in the colonial government? What did the Protestant majority do in 1654? 5. What can you tell about civil war in Maryland?

old order of things was reëstablished in Maryland. Lord Baltimore's rights were restored; and, for about thirty years thereafter, the province enjoyed repose. The government was mildly administered, and all was going on well until the Revolution in England in 1688, when a wicked and restless spirit named Coode excited the people against the governor, because the latter was slow to recognize William and Mary.[1] He spread a report that the authorities and Roman Catholics had conspired with the Indians for the destruction of the Protestants.[2] The latter, alarmed, called a convention, deposed Lord Baltimore as proprietor, and reasserted the majesty of the people.

7. In 1691, King William made Maryland a royal province.[3] The Church of England[4] was made the established religion of the colony; and, in a province founded by Roman Catholics,[5] the members of that church were disfranchised by the consent of their sovereign. The proprietary government was reëstablished in 1716, and lasted until the Revolution in 1775, which swept away feudalism and royalty.[6]

SECTION V.

CONNECTICUT.

1. We have observed that the CONNECTICUT colony formed a political constitution in January, 1639.[7] This example was followed by the NEW HAVEN colony[8] in June following. The

1. Verse 16, page 55.
2. The coalition of the Indians and French Jesuits in the east, for the destruction of the New England colonists, gave a coloring of truth to this report, and the old religious feud burned again intensely. A treaty with the Indians had just been renewed, and the customary presents distributed among them. Coode falsely adduced this as evidence of a coalition with the savages.
3. King William had an exalted idea of royal prerogatives, and was as much disposed as the Stuarts (the kings of England from James the First to James the Second) to suppress democracy in the colonies. He repeatedly vetoed (refused his assent to) bills of rights enacted by the colonial assemblies; refused his assent to local laws of the deepest interest to the colonists; and instructed his governors to prohibit printing in the colonies.
4. Note 1, page 35. 5. Verse 2, page 38. 6. Note 2, page 25.
7. Verse 10, page 41. 8. Verse 9, page 41.

QUESTIONS.—6. What was done in Maryland on the restoration of royalty in England? What can you tell about another rebellion in Maryland? 7. When was Maryland made a royal province? What other changes were effected in the colony?

religious element was supreme in the new organization, and the Bible was made the statute book of the colony; and, in imitation of the constitution of the Plymouth and Massachusetts settlers, none but church members were allowed the privileges of freemen.[1] A committee of twelve men was appointed, who selected seven of their members to be "pillars" in the new state. These had power to admit as many others as they pleased to take part with them in legislation. Theophilus Eaton was chosen governor.

www.libtool.com.cn

2. Many of the New Haven settlers were merchants, and they tried to found a commercial colony. Heavy losses at sea caused them to abandon the project and turn to tilling the soil. They worked in harmony with their brethren of the Connecticut valley. Both joined the New England confederacy in 1643. Ten years later, the Dutch, by mutual agreement, left the valley,[2] and a cause for irritation between the Puritans of New England and the Hollanders of New Netherland was removed.

3. After the restoration of Charles the Second, in 1660,[3] the CONNECTICUT colony obtained a charter from the king, dated May 30, 1662.[4] It was more liberal than any yet issued by a royal hand. It included in its boundary the whole NEW HAVEN colony [5] and a part of RHODE ISLAND.[6] The former consented to the union in 1665; but Rhode Island refused, and disputed the boundary question for more than sixty years.

4. Sir Edmund Andros [7] was made governor of New York in 1674. He hated the sturdy republicans of New England, and did what he could to annoy them. He claimed jurisdiction to the

1. Note 2, page 58.
2. Note 1, page 71.
3. Verse 10, page 53.
4. This was obtained by the personal influence of John Winthrop, son of Governor Winthrop of Massachusetts. At first Charles refused his application, because of his known republicanism. Winthrop then presented to his majesty a ring which the king's father had given to Winthrop's father. The heart of the monarch was touched, and a liberal charter was readily granted. Winthrop was chosen governor of Connecticut in 1657, and held the office several years. Such was his station when he appeared in England to ask a charter of the king. Hopkins (who was one of the founders of the New Haven colony) was chosen the first governor of the Connecticut colony, and for several years he and Haynes were alternately chosen chief magistrate.
5. Verse 9, page 41.
6. Verse 4, page 43.
7. Verse 22, page 64.

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell about the New Haven colony? What was their form of government? 2. What kind of colony did the New Haven people attempt to establish? What prevented? What did the Dutch do, and what was the effect? 3. What can you tell about a new charter for the Connecticut colony, and the union with New Haven?

mouth of the Connecticut river, and went to Saybrook in July, 1675, with a small naval force, to assert his authority. When he attempted to declare his power, he was silenced by the people, and he returned in great anger to New York.

5. Twelve years later [1687], Andros again appeared as the

ANDROS AND THE CHARTER OF CONNECTICUT.

disturber of the peace of Connecticut. As governor-general of New England, he demanded the surrender of all the colonial charters. Connecticut alone refused compliance. Andros went

QUESTIONS.—4. What can you tell about Governor Andros in Connecticut? 5. What further can you tell about Governor Andros?

to Hartford with sixty armed men, in November, 1687, to seize the charter. The assembly was in session in the evening. The charter was brought out and laid on the table. When Andros was about to take it, the candles were put out, and the charter was carried away in the dark, and effectually hidden in a hollow tree, which bore the name of *The Charter Oak* until it was blown down, in August, 1856. Andros was soon afterward driven from New England; and in May, 1689, Connecticut resumed her position as an independent colony, under her preserved charter.

THE CHARTER OAK.

6. Governor Fletcher, of New York, also attempted to exercise authority in Connecticut. He went to Hartford for the purpose, in November, 1693, and ordered the assembling of the militia. When he attempted to read his commission, Captain Wadsworth ordered the drums to be beaten. "Silence!" shouted the governor. He was obeyed. "Sir," said Wadsworth, stepping in front of the governor, "if they are again interrupted, I will make the sun shine through you in a moment!" Fletcher believed him, and, with his unread commission, returned to New York in great but impotent anger. From this time, until the French and Indian war, when her people numbered one hundred thousand, Connecticut went hand in hand with her sister colonies in promoting the growth of an independent American nationality.

SECTION VI.

RHODE ISLAND.

1. With the union of the *Providence* and *Rhode Island* plantations in 1644,[1] the independent Commonwealth of Rhode Island

1. Verse 4, page 43.

QUESTIONS.—5. Relate the circumstances concerning the saving of the Connecticut charter. 6. What can you tell about Governor Fletcher in Connecticut? What did Connecticut afterward do?

commenced its career.[1] The royal charter was first confirmed by the Long Parliament in 1652, and then by Cromwell in 1655. By the recognition of the Parliament, the claims of jurisdiction made by Plymouth and Massachusetts were set aside.[2] Internal dissensions, growing out of theological discussions, sometimes disturbed the colony, but did not impede its prosperity.

2. On the restoration of Charles the Second, the people applied for a new charter. One similar to that of Connecticut was granted in July, 1663.[3] It was yielded to Andros in 1687; but when that officer was expelled from New England in 1689,[4] the people resumed their independent government. Their seal bore the device of an *anchor*, and the motto was HOPE. Under that royal charter Rhode Island was governed until 1842, a period of one hundred and fifty-seven years, when the people in convention adopted a constitution.

3. The history of Rhode Island, from *King William's War*, shows its active sympathies with its sister colonies down to the close of the Revolution in 1783, in which its sons took a distinguished part.

SECTION VII.

NEW JERSEY.

1. We have considered the *settlements* in New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and Delaware, in the same section, as forming a series of events having intimate relations.[5] The history of the colonial

1. A general assembly of deputies from the several towns met at Portsmouth on the 29th of May, 1647, and organized the new government by the election of a president and other officers. At that time a code of laws was adopted, which declared the government to be a democracy, and that "all men might walk as their conscience persuaded them." Verse 2, page 42. 2. Note 3, page 60

3. This charter guaranteed free toleration in religious matters, and the legislature of the colony reasserted the principle, so as to give it the popular force of law. The assertion, made by some, that Roman Catholics were excluded from voting, and that Quakers were outlawed, is erroneous. Very warm disputes occurred, but free discussion was allowed.

4. Verse 22, page 64. 5. Page 43.

QUESTIONS.—1. When did Rhode Island, as an independent province, commence its career? What did Parliament and Cromwell do? What was the effect? 2. What can you tell about a new charter for Rhode Island? What can you tell about the duration of that charter? 3. What does the history of Rhode Island, from *King William's War*, show?

organization and progress of the first two is separate and distinct. Delaware was never a separate commonwealth until after the declaration of independence in 1776.

www.lirool.com.cn

2. The time when the colony was permanently founded, was when families from Long Island settled on the site of Elizabethtown in 1664, and Philip Carteret, brother of one of the proprietors, was appointed governor.[1] Settlers were allured thither by a liberal written agreement, on the part of the proprietors, called "concessions," which, among other privileges, exempted the people from the payment of quit-rents for their land for the space of five years.[2]

3. At the first sitting of the assembly under the "concessions," that body perceived opposition to their authority on the part of settlers who had been there long, and had purchased lands of the Indians. And when slight quit-rents were exacted, at the end of the five years, there was a general resistance to the payment of the tax.[3] A revolution ensued. The governor was driven from the province, and another chosen in his place by the people. Preparations were in progress to coerce the people into submission, when New York and New Jersey fell into the hands of the Dutch.[4]

4. When the territory was restored to the English,[5] the dishonest James, trampling upon the rights of the proprietors, made the infamous Andros governor of New Jersey as well as New York, in 1674. Berkeley[6] sold his interest to the Quakers. They were unwilling to maintain a political union with other parties, and in July, 1676, they bargained with Carteret[7] for a division of the province, they receiving the western part. From that time the divisions were known was EAST and WEST JERSEY.

1. Verse 6, page 44.
2. This was a sort of *constitution*, which provided for a government to be composed of a governor and council appointed by the proprietors, and an assembly chosen by the freeholders of the province. The legislative power resided in the assembly; the executive in the governor. The council and the assembly were each restricted to twelve members.
3. The amount of quit-rent was a half-penny for the use of each acre.
4. Verse 11, page 73.
5. Verse 11, page 73.
6. Verse 6, page 44.
7. Verse 6, page 44.

QUESTIONS.—1. What have you to say about the settlements in New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and Delaware? 2. What can you tell about the founding of New Jersey? What was done for the people? 3. What can you tell about discontents in New Jersey? 4. How did King James treat the New Jersey people? What can you tell about a sale to Quakers? What about the division of New Jersey?

5. Four hundred Quakers settled in West Jersey in 1677, and a most liberal form of government was given to them. They mildly but firmly resisted the attempted usurpations of Andros. The matter was settled by law, in England, in favor of the Quakers, and in November, 1681, the first popular assembly in West Jersey met at Salem, and framed a code of laws for the colony.

6. William Penn and other Quakers bought East Jersey in 1682, and Robert Barclay, one of their most eminent preachers, was appointed governor. A large number of his sect from Great Britain, New England, and Long Island came and settled there. They prospered in quiet until that arch-troubler, Andros, again appeared, when his master had become king.[1] They lost their independence; and for twelve years after the petty tyrant was driven from America, in 1689,[2] there was no regular government in the Jerseys.

7. The proprietors of the Jerseys in 1702 gladly resigned the government to the crown. In July of that year East and West Jersey were united as a royal province, and placed under the rule of the infamous governor Hyde, of New York.[3] It remained a dependence of that province until 1738, when the connection was forever severed, and Lewis Morris was appoined the first royal governor. He managed public affairs with ability. From that time until the kindling of the war for independence in 1775, no event of great importance occurred in NEW JERSEY.

SECTION VIII.

PENNSYLVANIA.

1. Soon after the arrival of William Penn in America in 1682,[4] the present State of Delaware (then called *The Territories*) was

1. Verse 15, page 55. 2. Verse 22, page 64.
3. Verse 14, page 74. 4. Verse 10, page 46.

QUESTIONS.—5. What can you tell about the Quakers in West Jersey? When was the first popular assembly held in West Jersey? 6. What can you tell about the Quakers in East Jersey? What can you tell about Andros in New Jersey, and the effects of his bad conduct? 7. What did the proprietors of New Jersey do in 1702? What followed their action? What can you tell of the separation of New Jersey from New York, and its effects?

annexed to his province by consent of the agents of the duke of York.[1] Then commenced the colonial career of Pennsylvania. Penn laid the foundations of the new state upon the broad principles of Right. Under a spreading elm, he made a covenant of friendship with the Indians. He treated them with kindness and justice; and the early history of Pennsylvania is not disfigured by records of oppression on one hand, and the horrors of savage vengeance on the other.[2]

2. In November, 1682, Penn proceeded to lay out a capital for the province, between the Delaware and Schuylkill rivers, on lands purchased from the Swedes. He named it *Philadelphia*, which signifies *brotherly love.* Within a year a hundred houses were erected, and among them a modest one for the proprietor. In March, 1683, he convened a second assembly at Philadelphia, and gave the people a *Charter of Liberties* so ample and just, that the government was really a representative democracy.[4] He surrendered to the people the right of choosing their own local officers; and did everything in his power to promote the happiness of the colonists.

PENN'S HOUSE.[3]

1. Verse 10, page 72.

2. He paid them fairly for their lands. "We meet," he said, "on the broad pathway of good faith and good will; no advantage shall be taken on either side, but all shall be openness and love." The Indians were delighted, and their hearts melted with good feeling. Such treatment was an anomaly in the history of the intercourse of their race with the white people. Even then the fires of a disastrous war were smoldering on the New England frontiers. It was wonderful how the savage heart, so lately the dwelling of deepest hatred toward the white man, became the shrine of the holiest attribute of our nature. "We will live in love with William Penn and his children," they said, "as long as the moon and the sun shall endure." They were true to their promise—not a drop of Quaker blood was ever shed by an Indian. The Penn Society of Philadelphia erected a monument upon the spot where the venerable elm stood. The tree was blown down in 1810, and was found to be two hundred and eighty-three years old. The monument is near the intersection of Hanover and Beach streets, Kensington, Philadelphia.

3. This had been erected in 1682, by William Markham, Penn's agent, for the proprietor's use, when he should arrive. Another and finer house was occupied by him in 1700. It yet remained on the corner of Second street and Norris's alley in 1864.

4. Free religious toleration was established. It was ordained that, to prevent lawsuits, three arbitrators, to be called peace-makers, should be appointed by the county courts, to hear and determine small differences between man and man; that children should be taught some useful rade; that factors wronging their employers should make satisfaction and one-third over; that all causes for irreligion and vulgarity should be repressed, and that no man should be molested for his religious opinions.

QUESTIONS.—1. What occurred on the arrival of William Penn in America? What did Penn do for the people? What can you tell of his treaty with the Indians, and the effect of just dealings with them? 2. What can you tell about the laying out of Philadelphia? What important thing occurred in 1683 for the benefit of the people?

3. Penn returned to England in August, 1684, and became involved in the troubles of the Revolution in 1688. His loyalty to William and Mary was suspected, and his province was taken from his control, and placed in charge of the governor of New York, in 1692. In the mean time *The Territories* (Delaware) had withdrawn from the union,[1] but had been brought back by Governor Fletcher. Penn's rights were restored to him in 1694, and, toward the close of 1699, he made a second visit to America.

4. Penn found the people clamorous for greater political privileges, and in November, 1701, he gave them a new frame of government. The Pennsylvanians accepted it, but the people of Delaware, who had again withdrawn their delegates from the assembly, declined it. They preferred an independent government, and Penn allowed them a distinct assembly. From that time until 1776, Pennsylvania and Delaware had separate legislatures, but were under one governor.

SECTION IX.

THE CAROLINAS.

1. The proprietors of the Carolinas[2] indulged in expectations of seeing a magnificent empire of their own grow up in the New World. They desired a government for that empire, equal to its promised grandeur, and they employed the Earl of Shaftesbury, and John Locke, the philosopher, to frame one. They completed their task in March, 1669, and called the instrument the *Fundamental Constitutions.* It was a huge aristocratic structure, totally unfitted for such aspirants for freedom as were now filling up the beautiful country of the Carolinas.[3]

1. Verse 1, page 83. 2. Verse 2, page 46.

3. It consisted of one hundred and twenty articles, and is supposed to have been the production, chiefly, of the mind of Shaftesbury. There were to be two orders of nobility; the higher to consist of landgraves, or *earls*, the lower of caciques, or *barons.* The territory

QUESTIONS.—3. What can you tell [redacted] Penn on his return to England? What occurred in his American province? What further can you tell about Penn? 4. What can you tell about Penn and his people, in 1701? How did the people of Delaware act? Relate how Delaware came to be independent of Pennsylvania.—1. What can you tell about the expectations and desires of the proprietors of the Carolinas? What did they do? What kind of government was formed?

2. The first attempt to impose this government on the colonists led to open rebellion. The immediate cause of the outbreak was excessive taxation, and the enforcement of the Navigation Act [1] in the Albemarle or Northern colony.[2] Refugee republicans from Virginia, after Bacon's rebellion,[3] fostered the opposition, and, under the lead of John Culpepper, a refugee from the Southern colony, the people seized the governor and the public funds, in December, 1677, called a new assembly, and for two years maintained an independent government.

3. Seth Sothel, one of the proprietors, arrived in the Carolinas as governor, in 1683. He was a shameless plunderer of the people and swindler of his associate grantees.[4] After enduring his miserable rule six years, the people banished him for a year, and declared him forever disqualified to be their governor. He withdrew to the *Carteret Colony*[5] (South Carolina), where we shall meet him again. His successors, Ludwell, Harvey, and Walker, were good men; but above them all in virtue and well-doing was the amiable Quaker, John Archdale, who was sent over in 1695 to govern both Carolinas. The colonies had never known such prosperity and repose as they enjoyed during his administration.

4. The Carteret, or Southern colony, rapidly increased in wealth and numbers. Their first legislature met in 1674, but conflicting religious creeds and jarring interests prevented harmony. Anarchy prevailed. Common danger, when the neighboring Indians threatened war upon them, united them for a while; and, in 1680,

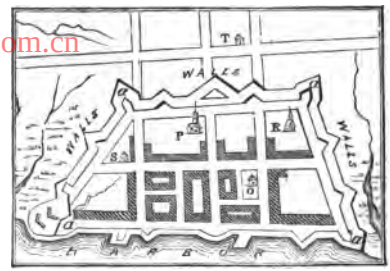
---

was to be divided into counties, each containing 480,000 acres, with one landgrave and two caciques. There were also to be lords of manors, who, like the nobles, might hold courts and exercise judicial functions. Persons holding fifty acres were to be freeholders; the tenants held no political franchise, and could never attain to a higher rank. The four estates of proprietors, earls, barons, and commons, were to sit in one legislative chamber. The proprietors were always to be eight in number, to possess the whole judicial power, and have the supreme control of all tribunals. The commons were to have four members in the legislature to every three of the nobility. But an aristocratic majority was always secured, and the real representatives of the *people* had no power. Every religion was professedly tolerated, but the Church of England only was declared to be orthodox. Such is an outline of the absurd scheme proposed for governing the free colonists of the Carolinas.

1. Verse 13, page 60.
2. Verse 1, page 46.
3. Page 54.
4. Verse 2, page 46.
5. Verse 3, page 47.

QUESTIONS.—2. What can you tell about a revolution in North Carolina? 3. What can you tell about Seth Sothel and his successors in North Carolina? 4. What can you tell about the Carteret colony, or South Carolina? What united the people? What can you tell about Charleston?

Charleston was founded on Oyster Point,[1] and the earlier settlement[2] was abandoned. There another popular legislature assembled in 1682, more harmonious than the first, and some useful laws were framed.



CHARLESTON IN 1680.

5. Immigrants poured into South Carolina in great numbers. Hollanders came and planted settlements on the Santee and Edisto rivers. Hardy men and their families came from Ireland and Scotland;[3] and in 1686 and 1687, a large number of Huguenots[4] arrived from France. English hatred of the French caused the latter to be looked upon with jealousy, and for more ten years the Huguenots were denied the privileges of citizenship.

6. The colonists were discontented with the rule of the proprietors. They finally revolted, seized the public records, called a new assembly, and in 1690 the governor (James Colleton) was banished from the province. In the midst of these commotions, Sothel arrived from North Carolina,[5] and the people allowed him to assume the office of governor. For two years he plundered and oppressed the people, when the assembly impeached and banished him.

1. Note 7, page 133. The above engraving illustrates the manner of fortifying towns, as a defense against foes. It exhibits the walls of Charleston in 1680, and the location of churches in 1704. The points marked *a a a*, etc., are bastions for cannons. P, English church; Q, French church, R, Independent church; S, Anabaptist church; and T, Quaker meeting-house.

2. Verse 3, page 47.

3. In 1684, Lord Cardon, and ten Scotch families, who had suffered persecution, came to South Carolina, and settled at Port Royal. The Spaniards at St. Augustine claimed jurisdiction over Port Royal, and during the absence of Cardon [1686], they attacked and dispersed the settlers, and desolated their plantations.

4. They had escaped from severe troubles which had been revived in France by the revocation of a friendly proclamation made by a former king, which is known as the Edict of Nantes. In that city Henry the Fourth issued an edict in 1598, in favor of the Huguenots, or Protestants, allowing them free toleration. The profligate Louis the Fourteenth, stung with remorse in his old age, sought to gain the favor of heaven by bringing his whole people into the bosom of the Roman Catholic Church. He revoked the famous edict in 1686, and instantly active opposition to the Huguenots was kindled throughout the empire. Many thousand of the Protestants left France and found refuge in other countries.

5. Verse 3, page 86.

QUESTIONS.—5. What immigrants came into South Carolina? What can you tell about Huguenots there? 6. What can you tell of a revolution in South Carolina? What more can you tell of Governor Sothel?

7. Philip Ludwell now came as the representative of the proprietors, but the people had resolved not to submit to the absurd *Fundamental Constitutions*.[1] After a brief and turbulent administration, Ludwell withdrew to Virginia, and in 1693, at the end of a contest with the people of more than twenty years, the scheme of Shaftesbury and Locke was abandoned by the proprietors. The good Quaker, Archdale, was sent in 1695, to administer a more simple and republican form of government for both the Carolinas. His administration was short, but very advantageous. From its close the progress of the two colonies should be considered as separate and distinct, although their political partition did not occur until 1729.[2]

www.libtool.com.cn

NORTH CAROLINA.

8. Under the guidance of the good Archdale, the people of North Carolina turned their attention to the development of the interior of the country, where the soil was more productive and the beaver and otter abounded. Immigration flowed in with an ever-increasing stream; Quakers[3] and Huguenots[4] came; and in 1709 a hundred German families, driven from their homes on the Rhine by persecution, came to North Carolina, and, led by Count Graffenried, made settlements on the head waters of the Neuse river and on the Roanoke river.

9. In 1711 an Indian war broke out. The *Tuscaroras* were the leaders. They fell upon the German settlements with such fury, that during one night (October 2, 1711), one hundred and thirty of the immigrants perished. Along Pamlico and Albemarle sounds the savages swept, murdering the inhabitants and burning property. They ceased only when disabled by fatigue and drunkenness.

10. The North Carolinians called upon their brethren of the Southern colony for help. Colonel Barnwell, with a party of white men

1. Verse 1, page 85.
2. Verse 17, page 91.
3. Verse 7, page 45.
4. Verse 7, page 17.

QUESTIONS.—7. Who succeeded Sothel? What can you tell about the form of government attempted to be imposed upon the people? What can you tell of Archdale and his administration, and the separation of the two colonies? 8. What was done in North Carolina, under Archdale's rule? What new immigrants came? 9. What great calamity did North Carolina suffer in 1711? Describe the Indian depredations?

and friendly savages from beyond the Savannah river, marched to their relief. The Indians were speedily subdued. A treaty with the Tuscaroras was made, but was soon violated by the white people, when the war was renewed by the savages. South Carolinians, with friendly Indians, again hastened (December, 1712) to the aid of their brethren. Eight hundred of the Tuscaroras were captured, and the remainder were driven from the country. They joined their kindred (the *Five Nations*) in New York.[1]

www.libool.com.cn

SOUTH CAROLINA.

11. The Spaniards in Florida[2] were troublesome neighbors, and in 1702 the authorities of South Carolina sent twelve hundred men (one-half Indians), by sea and land, to attack them at St. Augustine.[3] They took and plundered the town, but having no cannon, they could not make an impression on the fortress, into which the Spaniards fled for refuge. The commander of the little South Carolina squadron went to the West Indies for battery cannon, and barely escaped capture by Spanish vessels. The enterprise was abandoned; and the colony was burdened with a debt of more than twenty-six thousand dollars.[4]

12. Another expedition, the following year, was more successful. It was against the *Apalachian* Indians in Georgia, who were in league with the Spaniards. Their villages were desolated. Eight hundred of their warriors were taken prisoners, and their beautiful land was made tributary to the English.

13. Tranquillity had just been established after the war with the Indians, when domestic trouble appeared. Some of the proprietors, failing to learn wisdom from the defeat of their efforts to

1. Note 1, page 66. 2. Verse 1, page 48. 3. Verse 9, page 18.
4. The province issued bills of credit, for the first time, to the amount of $40,000, to defray the expenses of the war. North Carolina adopted a similar measure on a like occasion.

QUESTIONS.—10. What did the North Carolinians do? Who aided them, and how? What caused another war? Tell how it was put down and ended. 11. What can you tell about the troubles of South Carolina with the Spaniards. Describe the war with them, and how it was ended. 12. What can you tell about an expedition against Indians in Georgia?

impose a distasteful form of government upon the colonists,[1] determined to make the Church of England[2] the established religion in South Carolina. A pliant Assembly, with the governor (Johnston), disfranchised the Dissenters; but this violation of chartered rights was disapproved by Parliament, and the act was repealed in November, 1706. The church had gained a foot-hold, and held its exalted position until the Revolution in 1775.

www.lntool.com.cn

14. In May, 1706, a squadron of French and Spanish vessels appeared before Charleston, to avenge the insult offered to the Spaniards at St. Augustine.[3] Troops were landed, but were speedily repulsed by the people, with a loss of about three hundred men. This storm soon passed away, but a more formidable peril brooded over the colony a few years later, when all the Indians, from the Neuse region in North Carolina to Florida, seven thousand strong, confederated for the purpose of exterminating the white people in the Carolinas.

15. Craven, governor of South Carolina, was a man of great energy. He declared martial law, took possession of the arms and ammunition in the province, and at the head of twelve hundred men, white and black, he marched against the approaching Indians. After several bloody encounters, he drove them across the Savannah river in dismay, and they did not halt in their rapid flight until they found refuge under Spanish cannon at St. Augustine.

16. An important step was now taken in the direction of the independence of South Carolina. The people had become heartily wearied of the exactions of the proprietors, who afforded them no benefits of any kind in return. Late in 1719 they met in convention, cast off their allegiance to the proprietary government, and proclaimed Colonel Moore (December 21, 1719) governor of the colony. The English Government sanctioned the action of the colonists, and South Carolina became a royal province.

1. Verse 2, page 86. 2. Note 1, page 35. 3. Verse 11, page 89.

QUESTIONS.—13. What new trouble appeared in South Carolina? What did the proprietors attempt to do? What was the result? 14. What can you tell about an attempted invasion of South Carolina by the Spaniards? What can you tell about an Indian confederacy? 15. What can you tell about a war with the Indians? 16. What did the people of South Carolina do toward gaining their independence? How did South Carolina become a royal province?

A change in North Carolina. Georgia colonists.

17. The people of North Carolina resolved upon a similar change at the same time. After a continual controversy for ten years (1719 to 1729), the proprietors sold all their interests in both provinces to the king. This was in 1729. North and South Carolina[1] were then separated, and from that time until the Revolution the general history of the CAROLINAS presents but few features of great interest, excepting the continual disputes between the people and the royal governors. These were important as demonstrating the growth of democratic principles.

SECTION X.

GEORGIA.

1. Oglethorpe's colony, on the Savannah river,[2] increased rapidly in numbers, but not in wealth. A large proportion of the settlers who arrived previous to 1740 were not accustomed to labor with their own hands, and as slavery was prohibited by the charter, tillage of the land was neglected. They were not allowed to own any land as private property, nor were they allowed to traffic with the Indians; therefore, incentives to effort beyond the providing for daily wants were lacking.

2. The colonists were early called upon to perform military duty, for the Spaniards, who claimed jurisdiction over all Georgia and South Carolina to the latitude of Port Royal,[3] showed a disposition to assert their claim by arms. The vigilant Oglethrope built fortifications as low as the present boundary of Florida and on St. Simon's island,[4] which irritated his Spanish neighbors, and

1. The *Clarendon county* settlers (verse 2, page 46) had nearly all emigrated to the Southern colony, and there being only two colonies remaining, one was called NORTH CAROLINA, and the other SOUTH CAROLINA.
2. Verse 3, page 48. 3. Verse 8, page 18.
4. He went to England and returned in 1736 with one hundred and fifty Highlanders, well trained as soldiers. He built a fort on the site of Augusta, as a defense against the Indians, and he erected fortifications at Darien on Cumberland island, at Frederica on St. Simon's island, and on the north bank of the St. John river, the southern boundary of the English claim.

QUESTIONS.—17. What occurred in North Carolina? What can you tell about the separation of the two colonies? What marked the course of the Carolinas afterward?—1. What can you tell of Oglethorpe's colony in Georgia? What hindered prosperity? 2. How were the colonists called from peaceful pursuits, and why? What did the Spaniards claim? Tell what Oglethorpe did.

they threatened him with war.[1] He did not wait for them to begin it, but with two thousand men besieged St. Augustine in the summer of 1740.[2]

www.libtool.com.cn

3. Want of cannon and the approach of the sickly season caused Oglethorpe to withdraw and return to Savannah. In the summer of 1742 the Spaniards retaliated. They attacked Oglethorpe's strong places in Lower Georgia and on St. Simon's island; but many disasters compelled them to abandon the enterprise. They intended, in the event of their success against the fortifications, to subjugate or desolate all Georgia and the lower part of North Carolina. Oglethorpe's sagacity saved both colonies.

4. Oglethorpe left Georgia forever in 1743, when his mild military rule was succeeded by civil government, administered by a president and council. In 1752 it became a royal province, and remained such until the Revolution in 1775.

5. For the reasons already mentioned in verse 1, page 91, the Georgia colony did not flourish. With a change of government appeared new incentives to industry and thrift. The restraints concerning slavery were relaxed,[3] and Georgia became, through the instrumentality of a great wrong, a flourishing planting state.

SECTION XI.

A RETROSPECT.

1. We have now considered the principal events which occurred within the domain of our Republic from the time of first discoveries (1492) to the commencement of the French and Indian

1. They sent commissioners to protest against these hostile preparations, and to demand the evacuation of the whole of Georgia and of South Carolina to the latitude of Port Royal.
2. Oglethorpe had again visited England, and in the autumn of 1737 brought over six hundred troops. Four hundred of them, volunteers, and a large body of friendly Creek Indians, composed the army that invaded Florida.
3. The law was evaded. Slaves were brought from the Carolinas and hired out to the Georgia planters for one hundred years. This was a practical sale and purchase; and slave-ships were soon seen at Savannah, which had sailed directly from Africa with negroes.

QUESTIONS.—3. Why did Oglethorpe abandon his expedition against St. Augustine? What did the Spaniards do? What did they intend to do? 4. What change in government took place in Georgia? 5. What benefits did Georgia derive from the change?

war,[1] a period of about two hundred and sixty years. During that time, fifteen colonies were planted,[2] thirteen of which were commenced within the space of about fifty-six years [1607 to 1673]. By the union of Plymouth and Massachusetts,[3] and Connecticut and New Haven,[4] the number of colonies was reduced to thirteen, and these were they which went into the Revolutionary contest in 1775.

www.hxhopl.com.cn

2. Several European nations contributed men and women for the founding of these colonies.[5] They were distinguished by differences in language, tastes, habits, and religious faith. England furnished the far greater number, and the settlements came to be known as Anglo-American colonies, governed by English laws. Very soon, common interests produced a unity, and the people of several nations joined heartily in maintaining the integrity of the British realm when it was assailed.[6] They were still more united in opposing British aggressions upon their rights.[7]

3. There were differences in the character of the people of the several colonies. The Virginians and their southern neighbors were mostly from a class of English society in which restraints were not very rigid; and the warm climate produced a tendency toward indolence and ease. Hence slave labor, relieving the white man from toil, was regarded as a great blessing.

4. The New Englanders were chiefly from another class of English society, and included many religious enthusiasts, who sometimes possessed more zeal than wisdom. They were rigid disciplinarians in church and state; and their early legislation exhibits some curious laws respecting the minute details of social and domestic life. Their sterile soil made industry a necessity, and the climate inclined them to activity. Their habits and their

1. Section XII., page 95.
2. Virginia, Plymouth, Massachusetts Bay, New Hampshire, Connecticut, New Haven, Rhode Island, New York, New Jersey, Delaware, Maryland, Pennsylvania, North and South Carolina, and Georgia.
3. Verse 26, page 66.
4. Verse 3, page 78.
5. England, Scotland, Ireland, Germany, Holland, France, Denmark, Sweden, and the Baltic region.
6. Section XII.
7. Chapter V.

Questions.—1. What can you say about the establishment of colonies in America? 2. What materials composed the colonists? What position did England hold? Did unity mark the colonists, and how? 3. What can you say about the Virginians and their southern neighbors? 4. What can you say about the New England people, their laws and habits?

dwellings were simple; and their influence in the erection of our Republic was most salutary.

5. The industry, thrift, honesty, and aversion to change, peculiar to the Dutch, prevailed in New York and New Jersey, and portions of Pennsylvania, for almost a century after the first settlements were made. The Swedes were similar; while the Quakers were marked by a refined simplicity and equanimity which won the esteem of all. Their lives were governed by a religious sentiment without fanaticism, which formed a powerful safeguard against vice and immorality. The people of Maryland exhibited some of the traits of all.

EARLY N. E. HOUSE.[1]

6. Agriculture was the chief pursuit everywhere, yet commerce and navigation were not wholly neglected, notwithstanding the restrictions of the navigation laws. They were compelled, by necessity, to be self-reliant, and what they could not buy from the workshops of England for their simple apparel and furniture, and implements of agriculture, they rudely manufactured, and were content.[2]

7. Their commerce had a feeble infancy. Until their separation from England, in 1776, their interchange of commodities with the rest of the world might not, with propriety, be dignified

1. This is a picture of one of the oldest houses in New England, and is a favorable specimen of the best class of frame dwellings, at that time. It is yet standing [1864], we believe, near Medfield, in Massachusetts.

2. From the beginning of colonization, there were shoemakers, tailors, and blacksmiths in the several colonies; but, manufacturing, in its true sense, was discouraged by rigorous laws, because it was thought it would be detrimental to English interests. It was enacted that all manufactories of iron and steel in the colonies, should be considered a "common nuisance," to be abated within thirty days after notice being given, or the owner should suffer a fine of a thousand dollars. The exportation of hats even from one colony to another was prohibited, and no hatter was allowed to have more than two apprentices at one time. The importation of sugar, rum, and molasses was burdened with exorbitant duties; and the Carolinians were forbidden to cut down the pine trees of their vast forests, and convert their wood into staves, and their juice into turpentine and tar, for commercial purposes. The first Navigation Act [1651] forbade all importations into England, except in English ships, or those belonging to English colonies. In 1660, this act was confirmed, and unjust additions were made to it. The colonies were forbidden to export their chief productions to any country except to England or its dependencies. Similar acts, all bearing heavily upon colonial commerce, were made law, from time to time.

QUESTIONS.—5. What were the peculiarities of the Dutch and Swedes? What marked the character of the Quakers? What can you say about the people of Maryland? 6. What can you tell about the pursuits of the colonists? What made home manufactures a necessity?

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

with the name of *commerce*. English jealousy of the prosperity and independence of the colonies, caused many unwise restrictions upon their industry and enterprise to be imposed; and these were the principal causes which finally led to the great revolt in 1775, and the separation of the colonies from the "mother country," as England was called.

www.libtool.com.cn

8. Education was early fostered among the people, particularly in New England, where the COMMON SCHOOL, the chief glory of our Republic, was early established and tenderly nurtured.[1] Provision was made for the education of all. The rigid laws which discouraged all frivolous amusements, were productive of a habit of reading. The books were devoted chiefly to history and religion, and large numbers were sold. A traveler asserts, as early as 1686, that several booksellers in Boston had "made fortunes by their business." But newspapers, the great educators of the people in our day, were very few and of little worth before the era of the Revolution.

9. Such were the people, and such their political and social condition, at the commencement of the great struggle between the French and English for supreme dominion in America, which we are now to consider.

SECTION XII.

THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

1. We have already noticed three wars between the English colonists in America and the French and Indians.[2] These origi-

1. Schools for the education of both white and Indian children were formed in Virginia as early as 1621; and in 1692, William and Mary College was established at Williamsburg. The Reformed Dutch Church established a school in New Amsterdam, in 1633. Harvard College, at Cambridge, Massachusetts, was founded in 1637. Yale College, in Connecticut, was established at Saybrook in 1701, and removed to its present location, in New Haven, in 1717. It was named in honor of Elihu Yale, president of the East India Company, and one of its most liberal benefactors. The college of New Jersey, at Princeton, called *Nassau Hall*, was incorporated in 1738.

2. *King William's War*, page 65; *Queen Anne's War*, page 67; and *King George's War*, page 68.

QUESTIONS.—7. What can you tell about the commerce of the colonies? What folly did the English Government commit? 8. What can you say about education in the colonies? What encouraged reading? What kind of books were read? What have you to say about books and newspapers?

nated in disputes in Europe. The fourth and last, which resulted in the establishment of England's supremacy in America, originated here in disputes about boundaries and territorial possessions.

2. The English, at the time we are considering (1750), a million strong, occupied the sea-board from Maine to Florida, along a line of a thousand miles. The French, not more than one hundred thousand in number, were seated chiefly in the vicinity of the St. Lawrence, but had military, religious, and commercial stations on the borders of the great lakes,[1] the Mississippi, and the Gulf of Mexico. They were chiefly engaged in traffic with the Indians, and thereby, and with the influence of the Jesuit priests,[2] they acquired great control over the savages.

3. After the loss of Louisburg,[3] the French determined to check the growth of English power in America, by alliances with the savage tribes in the interior, the erection of fortifications, and the desolation of frontier settlements. The English colonies became uneasy, and resolved to meet the danger by pushing boldly into the interior. The king granted six hundred thousand acres of land on the southern side of the Ohio river to English and Virginia speculators, called *The Ohio Company*, in 1749, and they immediately sent surveyors and traders in that direction. Some of these men were seized and imprisoned by the French in 1753.[4] This act led to war.

4. Dinwiddie, acting governor of Virginia, sent a remonstrance to St. Pierre, the French commander, then at a fort in the present Erie county, Pennsylvania.[5] It was carried by George

1. *Ontario, Erie, Huron, Michigan*, and *Superior*.
2. Verse 24, page 65.
3. Verse 34, page 68.
4. While the English and French were disputing about the ownership of the territory, the claims of the real proprietors, by prëemptive right, were overlooked. These were the Indians. When the agent of the *Ohio Company* went into the Indian country, on the borders of the Ohio river, a messenger was sent by two Indian sachems to make the significant inquiry, "Where is the Indians' land? The English," he said, "claim it all on one side of the river, the French on the other; where does the Indians' land lie?"
5. The French had already erected several forts in that direction. Twelve hundred men erected one on the south shore of Lake Erie, at Presque Isle, now Erie; soon afterward, another was built at Le Bœuf, on the Venango (French creek), now the village of Waterford; and a third was erected at Venango, at the junction of French creek and the Alleghany river, now the village of Franklin.

Questions.—1. What can you say about wars between the English, French, and Indians? What about the last one? 2. What was the number of English and French inhabitants in America, in 1750? What territory did they occupy? What gave the French an advantage? 3. What did the French determine to do after the loss of Louisburg? What did the English do? What can you tell about a land company? What outrage did the French commit?

Washington, a young Virginian, twenty-one years of age, who now appeared in public life for the first time.[1] He performed his duty satisfactorily, and bore back to the governor a sealed answer to his remonstrance. Washington placed it in the hands of Dinwiddie on the 16th of January, 1754, and was highly commended for his courage, prudence, and sagacity.

5. St. Pierre, acting, as he said, under orders from Du Quesne, governor of Canada, refused to withdraw his troops from the domain of the *Ohio Company*, as requested by Dinwiddie. The governor and the legislature of Virginia prepared to drive them away. The other colonies were appealed to for aid; and at the close of March, 1754, a body of Virginians, and some North and South Carolina troops, were at Alexandria, on the Potomac, under Colonel Joshua Fry and Major George Washington, ready to march into the wilderness. On the 2d of April they marched toward the Ohio.

6. At this time some men were employed by the *Ohio Company* in the construction of a fort on the site of Pittsburg, Pennsylvania. The French seized and finished it, and called it Fort du Quesne, in honor of the governor of Canada. Washington, with a part of the colonial troops, pushed forward to retake it. He heard of a strong force coming to meet him, and he built a fort, which he named *Necessity*, in which to await the coming up of the remainder of the colonial troops. Some of his men surprised an advance party of the French (May 28, 1754), and slew their leader (Jumonville) and others. This was the first blood shed in the long and distressing war that ensued.

7. Colonel Fry died at the close of May (May 30), and the chief command devolved on Washington. The troops came up, and he pressed forward. Hearing of the approach of a large body of French and Indians, he fell back to *Fort Necessity*, where

1. He started with only three attendants. He was joined by two others at the site of Cumberland in Maryland. Their journey was a perilous one over mountains, across streams, and through morasses, while the country was covered with snow.

Questions.—4. What did the governor of Virginia do? Who bore a message to the French commander? What can you say about Washington and the performance of his duty? 5. What can you tell about the French commander's reply? What preparations were made for war? 6. What can you tell about Fort du Quesne? Relate what Washington and his troops did. 7. How came Washington to be chief commander?

he was besieged by fifteen hundred men on the 3d of July. On the morning of the 4th (1754) he was compelled to surrender, when he and all his troops were allowed to march back to Virginia.

www.tibtool.com.cn

8. During this military campaign, a civil movement[1] of great importance was in progress. The British ministry, perceiving war to be inevitable, advised the colonists to secure the continued friendship of the *Six Nations*,[2] and to unite in measures for general defense. Delegates from seven colonies met at Albany,[3] in the province of New York, for that purpose, on the 19th of June, 1754.[4] They renewed the treaty with the Indians; and on the 4th of July they adopted a plan of confederation, similar, in many respects, to our National Constitution, which had been drawn up by Dr. Benjamin Franklin.[5] When it was submitted to the American assemblies and the authorities of the home government, both rejected it. This was the germ of the union effected a few years later.

9. Soon after the close of this convention, the Indians commenced murderous depredations along the New England frontiers, and French emissaries were busy among the tribes west of the Alleghanies,[6] arousing them to engage in a war of extermination against the English. The imperiled colonists immediately prepared for war.[7]

---

1. The word *civil* is used, in reference to a community and government and laws, as distinguished from *military* doings or rule.

2. Note 1, page 66. 3. Verse 2, page 32.

4. The colonies represented were New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, Pennsylvania, and Maryland. There were twenty-five delegates in all. James Delancey, of New York, was chosen president.

5. Franklin was a delegate from Pennsylvania. This idea of union was not a new one. William Penn suggested the advantage of a union of all the English colonies, as early as 1700; and Coxe, speaker of the New Jersey assembly, advocated it in 1722. Now it first found tangible expression under the sanction of authority. Franklin's plan proposed a general government, to be administered by one chief magistrate, to be appointed by the crown, and a council of forty-eight members, chosen by the several legislatures. This council, answering to our Senate, was to have power to declare war, levy troops, raise money, regulate trade, conclude peace, and do many other things necessary for the general good.

6. A range of mountains which extend nearly the whole length of the United States, on a line almost parallel with the sea-coast.

7. Governor Shirley, of Massachusetts, was very energetic. New York voted $25,000 for military service, and Maryland $30,000 for the same. The English Government sent over $50,000 for the use of the colonists, and with it a commission to Governor Sharpe, of Maryland, appointing him commander-in-chief of all the colonial forces. Soon disputes about military rank and precedence ran high. Washington resigned his commission, and the year [1754] drew to a close without any efficient preparations for a conflict with the French.

QUESTIONS.—7. What did Washington do, and what happened to him and his troops? 8. What important event happened in 1754? What was done at Albany, by a convention? What did Dr. Franklin do? How was his plan of government received? 9. What did the eastern Indians do? What were French emissaries about?

CAMPAIGN OF 1755.

www.libtool.com.cn

10. War had not been declared by the two imperial governments, but England extended its aid to the colonists. In February, 1755, Edward Braddock, a distinguished Irish officer, arrived with two regiments of his countrymen, as commander-in-chief of all the British forces in America. A campaign was immediately planned. General Braddock was to lead one column against Fort du Quesne;[1] Governor Shirley was to lead another against Forts Niagara and Frontenac;[2] and General William Johnson was to lead a third against Crown Point, on Lake Champlain.

11. Shirley had already planned an expedition against the French in the east. This was first put in motion. General Winslow and three thousand men landed at the head of the bay of Fundy in May, when they were joined by three hundred regular troops under Colonel Monckton, who took chief command. They captured Forts Beausejour (June 16) and Gaspereau (June 17). The country was soon taken possession of and terribly desolated. The sufferings of the simple Acadians[3] (who took no part in the war), from the cruelty of the English, form a dismal chapter in history.

12. Braddock marched from Wills's creek (Cumberland), on the 10th of June, 1755, with two thousand men. Washington was his aid, with the commission of colonel. On the 9th of July, when within two miles of Fort du Quesne,[4] marching in fancied security at noon-day, on the south side of the Monongahela river, the vanguard of the little army was assailed by arrows and bullets from

FORT DU QUESNE.

1. Verse 6, page 97.
2. Fort Niagara was a strong work, built by the French at the mouth of the Niagara river; and Fort Frontenac was on the site of the city of Kingston, in Canada, at the foot of Lake Ontario.
3. Verse 17, page 20.
4. Verse 6, page 97.

QUESTIONS.—10. Was war now declared? What did the English Government do? What officer came to America? What was the plan of campaign for 1755? 11. What had Shirley planned? What can you tell about an expedition against the French in the east? What was done? 12. Relate what Braddock's expedition did. What happened?

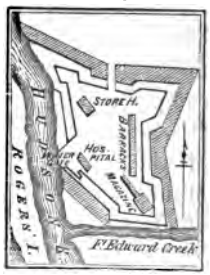
a concealed foe. Washington modestly asked Braddock to allow him to fight his men according to provincial custom. The haughty commander refused, and a terrible defeat followed. Of all the mounted officers, Washington alone remained unhurt.[1] Braddock was mortally wounded,[2] and the command devolved on the Virginia colonel. He gallantly conducted a retreat, and saved the remnant of his army. Thus ended this expedition, in failure. The conflict is known as the battle of the Monongahela.

GENERAL BRADDOCK.

13. Shirley's expedition against Niagara and Frontenac was also a failure. He went no farther than Oswego, on Lake Ontario, when storms, sickness, and desertions of Indians caused him to abandon the enterprise.[3]

SIR WILLIAM JOHNSON.

14. Johnson's expedition was a partial failure. In July (1755), six thousand troops were assembled on the Hudson, fifty miles above Albany, under General Phineas Lyman. They built Fort Edward before the arrival of Johnson in August.[4] In the mean time, Baron Dieskau, with two thousand Canadians and Indians, was making his way from Montreal to the head of Lake Champlain.



FORT EDWARD.

1. Dr. Craik, who was with Washington at this time, and also attended him in his last illness, says that while in the Ohio country with him, fifteen years afterward, an old Indian chief came, as he said, "a long way," to see the Virginia colonel at whom he fired his rifle fifteen times during the battle on the Monongahela, without hitting him. Washington was never wounded in battle.

2. Braddock died at Fort Necessity (verse 6, page 97), and was buried on the 15th of July, by torchlight. Washington read at the grave the impressive funeral service of the Church of England.

3. Shirley had 2,500 men at Oswego, on the first of September. When he gave up the expedition, he garrisoned two forts which he had commenced at Oswego. One, on the east side of the harbor, was called *Fort Ontario*, and the one on the west side, *Fort Pepperell*.

4. The troops, out of respect for General Lyman, named the work *Fort Lyman*, when Johnson, jealous of that excellent commander, changed the name to *Edward*, in honor of one of the royal household of England.

QUESTIONS.—12. How did Washington behave? 13. What have you to say about Shirley's expedition? 14. What can you tell about preparations for Johnson's expedition? What fort was built? What can you tell about the French and Indians?

15. It was now September. Johnson was at the head of Lake George with a part of his troops, when scouts brought word that Dieskau was marching in the direction of Fort Edward. He sent out Colonel Williams [September 8], with twelve hundred men, to intercept him. Two hundred of them were Mohawk Indians, under Hendrick. They fell into an ambush, and both leaders were slain.[1] The remainder of Williams's party fled to Johnson's camp, followed by Dieskau. Johnson had thrown up some defenses. The French and Indians were repulsed. Dieskau was wounded and made prisoner, and his followers fled to Crown Point.[2]

16. Johnson erected some earthworks on the site of his fortified camp, and called them Fort William Henry. He garrisoned this and Fort Edward, and then closed his part of the campaign by retiring to Albany and dispersing the remainder of his troops.

CAMPAIGN OF 1756.

17. In May, 1756, England declared war against France, and, early in June, General Abercrombie arrived, with several regiments of regular troops, as commander-in-chief. The plan of the campaign had already been planned by the colonial governors. It was similar to the one of the previous year,[3] with the addition of the march of two thousand men across the country from Maine, to attack French settlements in Canada in the direction of Quebec.

18. On Abercrombie's arrival, General Winslow[4] was at Albany, with seven thousand men, destined to attack Crown Point. Difficulties about the rank of British and provincial

1. While on his way north, Williams stopped at Albany, made his will, and bequeathed certain property to found a free school for Western Massachusetts. That was the foundation of "Williams College"—his best monument.

2. Upon this tongue of land on Lake Champlain, the French erected a fortification which they called Fort St. Frederic. On the Vermont side of the lake opposite, there was a French settlement as early as 1731. In allusion to the chimneys of their houses, which remained long after the settlement was destroyed, it is still known as Chimney Point.

3. Ten thousand men were of attack Crown Point; six thousand were to proceed against Niagara; and three thousand against Fort du Quesne.

4. Verse 11, page 99.

QUESTIONS.—15. Give an account of the doings and death of Williams and Hendrick. What happened to the French? 16. What did Johnson do? 17. When did England declare war against France? What British general arrived in America? What was the plan of the campaign for 1756?

officers arose, and caused so much delay, that the energetic Montcalm, the successor of Dieskau in command of the French and Indians, obtained important advantages over the English. He crossed Lake Ontario from Frontenac,[1] with thirty pieces of cannon, in August, captured and demolished the forts at Oswego[2] [August 14, 1756], took fourteen hundred prisoners, and returned to Canada with military stores and vessels, a complete victor.

ABERCROMBIE.

19. The whole country of the *Six Nations*[3] was now laid open to the incursions of the French and their savage allies. General alarm prevailed. The various expeditions were abandoned.[4] Troops on their way toward Lake Champlain were recalled. Washington, who commanded an expedition against Fort du Quesne, was ordered to place his troops in stockades[5] and block-houses,[6] for the defense of the frontiers of Pennsylvania and Virginia, and a defensive attitude was assumed.[7]

FORTS AT OSWEGO.

1. Verse 10, page 99.

2 This was to please the Six Nations, who had never felt contented with this supporter of power in their midst. The demolition of these forts induced the Indians to assume an attitude of neutrality, by a solemn treaty with the French.

3. Note 1, page 66.

4. Note 3, page 101.

5. Note 1, page 68.

6. Block houses are fortified buildings, of peculiar construction, well calculated for defence. They were generally built of logs at the time we are considering, in the form represented in the engraving. They were usually two stories, with narrow openings through which they might fire muskets. They were sometimes prepared with openings for cannon.

BLOCK-HOUSE.

7. The most important achievement of the provincials during that year, was the chastisement of the Indians at Kittaning, their chief town, situated on the Alleghany river. During several months they had spread terror and desolation along the western frontiers of Pennsylvania and Virginia, and almost a thousand white people had been murdered or carried into captivity. Colonel John Armstrong, of Pennsylvania, accompanied by Captain Mercer, of Virginia, with about three hundred men, attacked them on the night of the 8th of September [1756], killed their principal chiefs, destroyed their town, and dispersed and completely humbled them.

QUESTIONS.—18. What preparations were made? What caused delays? What did the French do in the mean time? Tell about the capture of Oswego. 19. What were the effects of the capture of Oswego?

CAMPAIGN OF 1757.

www.libtool.com.cn

20. The inefficient Lord Loudon, who came to America in 1756, as governor of Virginia and commander-in-chief of the forces, held a military council at Boston, in January, 1757. Wiser men than he, in that council, yielded their judgment to his, because he was commander-in-chief, and agreed to confine operations on the frontiers to defensive measures. The colonists were disappointed; yet when Loudon called for troops to proceed against Louisburg,[1] then again in possession of the French by treaty, the response was cheerful, and he found himself at the head of six thousand provincials on the first of June. But his tardiness and inefficiency caused the failure of the expedition; and when he returned to New York, at the close of August, he was met with intelligence of the success of the enemy on the northern frontier.

21. The French had built a fort above Crown Point, which they called Ticonderoga. There, in the summer of 1757, Montcalm assembled about nine thousand troops, two thousand of whom were Indians. With these, at the close of July, he besieged Fort William Henry,[2] then commanded by Colonel Monro, a gallant English officer, who considered himself well supported by four thousand troops at Fort Edward,[3] under General Webb.

LAKE GEORGE AND VICINITY.

22. When Montcalm called for a surrender of the fort, Monro refused, and sent to Webb for succor. It was withheld, through cowardice or treachery, and Fort William Henry was surrendered on the 9th of August. A terrible massacre by the Indians ensued when the troops marched out under promise of protection. Montcalm expressed deep sorrow, and de-

1. Verse 33, page 68. 2. Verse 16, page 101. 3. Verse 14, page 100.

QUESTIONS.—20. Who was Lord Loudon, and what did he do? What did a council agree to do? How did the colonists act? What caused the failure of an important expedition? 21. What had the French been doing? What did Montcalm do? 22. What can you tell about the surrender of Fort William Henry, and a massacre?

clared that it was impossible for him to restrain the savages. The fort was destroyed, and was never rebuilt. Thus ended the campaign of 1757.

FORT WILLIAM HENRY.

23. The arrogance of English military commanders, and the haughty exactions of the royal governors, disgusted the Americans. They felt themselves fully competent to maintain their territorial rights, and regarded the method of the interference of the home government as detrimental to their welfare. They fairly attributed the disasters and humiliations to which they had been subjected, during the first two years of the war, to that interference. A weak and corrupt ministry were sending their incompetent friends to America to fill the public offices, civil and military.

24. It was a cause for great rejoicing in the colonies, when William Pitt, by far the ablest statesman in England, was called to the control of public affairs in the summer of 1757. Energy and good judgment marked all his actions in reference to the war in America. He recalled Loudon, put Abercrombie in his place, and prepared to prosecute the war with vigor.[1] He made such liberal offers to the colonists, that an excess of troops soon appeared.[2] New England alone raised fifteen thousand men;[3] and when Abercrombie took command of the American forces in May, 1758, he found fifty thousand men at his disposal.

1. He caused a strong naval armament to be prepared and placed under the command of Admiral Boscawen; and 12,000 additional English troops were allotted to serve in America. He had organized such an admirable military system for home defense, that this large number of the soldiers of the standing army could be spared for foreign service.

2. Pitt addressed a circular to the several colonies, asking them to raise and clothe twenty thousand men. He promised in the name of Parliament, to furnish arms and provisions for them; and also to reimburse the several colonies all the money they should expend in raising and clothing the levies.

3. New York furnished almost twenty-seven hundred, New Jersey one thousand, Pennsylvania almost three thousand, and Virginia over two thousand. Some came from other colonies. Public and private advances during 1758, in Massachusetts alone, amounted to more than a million of dollars. The taxes on real estate, in order to raise money, were enormous; in many cases equal to two-thirds of the income of the tax-payers. Yet it was levied *by their own representatives*, and they did not murmur. A few years later, an almost nominal tax, in the form of duty upon an article of luxury, levied *without their consent*, excited the people of that colony to rebellion.

QUESTIONS.—23. What displeased the Americans? What can you say about their self-reliance? How did the Americans regard the home government? 24. What can you tell about William Pitt? What did he do? What did the colonies do?

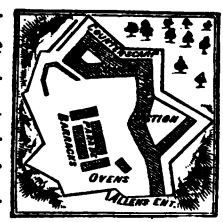
CAMPAIGN OF 1758.

www.libtool.com.cn

25. Boscawen arrived at Halifax, in May, 1758, with about forty armed vessels, bearing twelve thousand troops, under General Amherst as chief, and General Wolfe as his lieutenant. On the 8th of June the troops landed, without much opposition, on the shore of Gabarus bay, near the city of Louisburg.[1] The French almost immediately deserted their outposts, and retired within the town and fortress. After a vigorous resistance for almost fifty days, and when all their shipping in the harbor was destroyed, the French surrendered [July 26, 1758] the town and fort, together with the island of Cape Breton and that of St. John (now Prince Edward), and their dependencies, by capitulation. The spoils of victory were more than five thousand prisoners, and a large quantity of munitions of war. By this victory, the English became masters of the coast almost to the mouth of the St. Lawrence. From that time the decline of French power in America was continual and rapid.

LORD AMHERST.

26. While Amherst and Wolfe were conquering in the east, Abercrombie and the young Lord Howe were leading seven thousand regulars, nine thousand provincials, and a heavy train of artillery, against Ticonderoga, occupied by Montcalm with about four thousand men. Abercrombie's army had rendezvoused at the head of Lake George, and at the close of a calm Sabbath evening [July, 1758] they went down



TICONDEROGA.[2]

1. Verse 34, page 68.

2. This diagram shows the general form of the principal works. The ground on which Ticonderoga stood is about one hundred feet above the level of the lake. Water is upon three sides, and a deep morass extends almost across the fourth, forming a narrow neck, where the French had erected a strong line of breastworks with batteries. This line was about a mile north-west of the fortress, which occupied the point of the peninsula. The ruins of the fort are yet [1864] quite picturesque. See page 114.

QUESTIONS.—25. What can you tell about the opening of the campaign of 1758, and the capture of Louisburg? What did the English gain by that capture? 26. What were Abercrombie and Lord Howe doing? Tell of the movements of their army.

that beautiful sheet of water in flat-boats, and at dawn [July 6] landed at its northern extremity.

LORD HOWE.

27. From thence to Ticonderoga, the whole country was covered with a dense forest, in which were tangled morasses. The troops became bewildered, and in that condition were attacked [July 6, 1758], by a French scouting party. The enemy were repulsed, but Lord Howe, who was considered the "soul of the expedition," was slain.

28. Abercrombie was now informed that reënforcements for Montcalm were approaching Ticonderoga, and he pressed forward to attack the fortress without waiting for his artillery to be brought forward. After a bloody conflict of four hours [July 8, 1758], he was repulsed. He hastened back to his old encampment at the head of Lake George, and immediately despatched Colonel Bradstreet, with three thousand men, to attack Fort Frontenac.[1] He captured it without much opposition, on the 27th of August, with the garrison and shipping.

29. Bradstreet lost only three or four men in the fight, but a fearful camp-sickness laid five hundred of them in the grave. With the remainder he returned to Albany by the Mohawk valley, stopping on the way to build Fort Stanwix on the site of the present village of Rome. Abercrombie, in the mean while, after garrisoning Fort George, returned with the remainder of his troops to Albany.

30. In July, General John Forbes was at Wills's creek (Cumberland) with about nine thousand men, ready to march to Fort du Quesne. His perverse will and defective judgment caused almost fatal delays. Instead of following Braddock's road over

1. Verse 10, page 99.

QUESTIONS.—27. What was the condition of the country? What happened to the English? 28. What did Abercrombie now do? What happened to him and his army, and what did they do? What can you tell of an expedition against Fort Frontenac? 29. How did Bradstreet lose a part of his army? What did he do with the remainder? What did Abercrombie do?

the Alleghanies,[1] he constructed a new one. In November he was yet fifty miles from Fort du Quesne. Already a part of the troops had been attacked [September 21] and defeated.[2] Winter was at hand, and his troops complained loudly. A council of war decided to abandon the enterprise, when three prisoners were brought in, and gave assurance that the garrison at Fort du Quesne was very weak.

31. Washington was now sent forward with his Virginians. They marched rapidly, and came in sight of the fort on the 24th of November. The garrison set it on fire, and fled down the river in boats, leaving everything behind them. The flames were extinguished, and the name of the fortress was changed to *Fort Pitt*, in honor of the great statesman. The campaign of 1758 resulted in great gains to the English.[3]

CAMPAIGN OF 1759.

32. The final struggle was now at hand. Encouraged by the success of the campaigns just closed, Pitt conceived the magnificent scheme of conquering all Canada, and destroying, at one blow, the French dominion in America. That dominion was really confined to the region of the St. Lawrence. Pitt had the rare fortune to possess the entire confidence and esteem of the Parliament and the colonists. The former was dazzled by his greatness; the latter were deeply impressed by his justice. He had promptly reimbursed all the expenses incurred by the provincial assemblies during the campaign,[4] amounting to almost a million of dollars, and they as promptly seconded his scheme of

1. Note 6, page 98.

2. Major Grant, with a scouting party of Boquet's advance corps, was attacked on the 21st of September, and defeated. The major was made a prisoner.

3. They had effectually humbled the French, by capturing three of their most important posts (Louisburg, Frontenac, and Du Quesne), and by weakening the attachment of their Indian allies. Many of the Indians had not only deserted the French, but at a great council held at Easton, on the Delaware, during the summer [1758], had, with the Six Nations, made treaties of friendship or neutrality with the English.

4. Note 2, page 104.

QUESTIONS.—30. What can you tell about an expedition against Fort du Quesne? How was it delayed? What caused a quicker movement? 31. Relate how Washington pressed forward and took possession of Fort du Quesne. What name was given to it? 32. What great scheme did Pitt conceive? Wherein lay his strength? How had he treated the colonies?

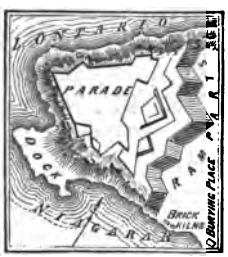
conquest, which had been communicated to them under an oath of secrecy.

33. General Amherst succeeded General Abercrombie in the spring of 1759, and entered upon the campaign with promises of great success. The plan was similar to that of Phipps and Winthrop in 1690.[1] Amherst was to drive the French from Northern New York, whilst Wolfe was to ascend the St. Lawrence and attack Quebec. General Prideaux, meanwhile, was to capture Fort Niagara, and hasten to join Amherst at Montreal or Quebec.

34. Amherst, with eleven thousand men, captured Ticonderoga[2] on the 22d of July. The garrison had fled to Crown Point.[3] Amherst followed them, and they went in great haste down the lake. He again pursued, as soon as he could prepare a sufficient number of boats, but storms drove him back [October 11, 1759], and his army wintered at Crown Point. They employed the time in constructing that strong fortress whose ruins are now so picturesque.[4]

CROWN POINT.

35. General Prideaux, accompanied by Sir William Johnson[5] as his lieutenant, besieged Fort Niagara on the 1st of July [1759]. On the 15th he was killed by the bursting of a coehorn,[6] and the command devolved on Johnson. The siege went on for three months, when about twelve hundred French and Indians came to the relief of the garrison. They were driven away, after a severe battle, and *Fort Niagara* was surrendered to Johnson on the 25th of July.



FORT NIAGARA.

1. Verse 25, page 65.
2. Verse 26, page 105.
3. Verse 15, page 101.
4. The above diagram shows the general form of the military works at Crown Point. There, like the ruins at Ticonderoga, are quite picturesque remains of the post. A A A show the position of the strong stone barracks, portions of which are yet standing. W shows the place of a very deep well, dug through the solid rock.
5. Verse 14, page 100.
6. A 24-pounder brass mortar, weighing about one hundred and sixty-four pounds.

QUESTIONS.—33. What change of officers occurred? What was the plan of the campaign of 1759? 34. What did Amherst do? Tell how he drove the French from Lake Champlain? What did he then do? 35. What did Prideaux do? What caused his death? Who took command? Tell of the repulse of the French and Indians, and capture of Fort Niagara.

36. General Wolfe ascended the St. Lawrence with eight thousand troops, in a large fleet commanded by Admirals Holmes and Sanders. He landed on the island of Orleans, below Quebec, on the 27th of June. A few days afterward, a considerable force, under Generals Townshend and Murray, formed a camp on the main, below the Montmorenci river, while others took possession of Point Levi, opposite Quebec, on the 30th of July. From that point hot shot were thrown into the city, which destroyed most of the lower town.[1]

37. At the close of July the English met with a sad disaster. General Monckton crossed the river from Point Levi, landed at the base of the high bank just above the Montmorenci, and proceeded to attack the left of the French lines. They were driven back to the beach, just as a tremendous thunder shower burst upon them. The night, that came soon, was intensely dark, and the roar of the rapidly rising tide warned the English to escape to their boats. Before they could do so, five hundred of their number perished. This is known as the battle of Montmorenci.

GENERAL WOLFE.[2]

38. For about two months, Wolfe lay before Quebec without obtaining any important advantage. Anxiety, exposure, and fatigue produced a fever that prostrated him. He called a council of officers at his bedside, when it was determined to scale the heights of Abraham,[3] and attack the

1. Quebec, then, as now, consisted of an upper and lower town, the former within fortified walls, upon the top and declivities of a high peninsula; the latter lying upon a narrow beach at the edge of the water. Upon the heights, three hundred feet above the water, was a level plateau called the *Plains of Abraham*. At the mouth of the St. Charles, which here enters the St. Lawrence, the French had moored several floating batteries. The town was strongly garrisoned by French regulars; and along the north bank of the St. Lawrence, from the St. Charles to the Montmorenci river, was the main French army, under Montcalm, in a fortified camp extending eastward from Beaufort along the bank of the St. Lawrence. It was composed chiefly of Canadian militia and Indians.

2. James Wolfe was son of a British general, and was born in Kent, England, in 1726. Before he was twenty years of age, he was distinguished in battle. He was now only thirty-three years old.

3. The declivity from Cape Diamond, on which the chief fortress at Quebec stands, along the St. Lawrence to the cove below Sillery, was called by the general name of the *Heights of Abraham*, the plains of that name being on the top. See the map on page 110.

QUESTIONS.—36. What can you tell of General Wolfe's expedition up the St. Lawrence? What disposition was made of troops near Quebec? What was done at Point Levi? 37. What sad disaster happened to the English? How? 38. What can you tell about delay? What was determined on in council?

city in the rear. Preparations for the enterprise were made with vigor, and so secretly that the French had no suspicions of the designs of the English.

39. Wolfe arose from a sickbed to lead the expedition in person. On the night of the 12th [September, 1759], the English went some distance up the river in their ships, and then, in boats with muffled oars, they returned to a cove and ravine in rear of the heights. In the face of a sharp fire from a guard above, they ascended the acclivity, and, at sunrise on the 13th, stood in battle array on the Plains of Abraham.[1]

MILITARY OPERATIONS AT QUEBEC.

40. Montcalm, surprised and astonished, perceiving the peril of the city, marched his entire army to oppose the English. A fierce battle ensued. Wolfe, at the head of his column, fell, mortally wounded, but lived long enough to hear the shouts of his victorious army. Montcalm, too, was mortally wounded; and in the city of Quebec stands a monument commemorative of the two gallant leaders.[2] On the 18th of September the city was surrendered to the English, and five thousand troops, under General Murray, immediately occupied it.

MONUMENT TO WOLFE AND MONTCALM.

CAMPAIGN OF 1760.

41. The French made an effort to recover Quebec in the spring of 1760. Six frigates and a strong land force, under M. Levi, Montcalm's successor,

1. Note 1, page 109.
2. This monument stands in the governor's garden. It is granite

QUESTIONS.—38. What was done? 39. What did Wolfe do? Tell how the English gained the rear of Quebec, on the Plains of Abraham. 40. Was Montcalm surprised? What did he do? What was the result of the battle? What can you tell of honors to Wolfe and Montcalm?

went down the St. Lawrence for this purpose, in April. They were met by Murray, from Quebec, at Sillery, three miles above the city, on the 28th, where one of the bloodiest battles of the war was fought. The English were driven back to Quebec, and there besieged; but on the 9th of May, Levi, alarmed by the appearance of what he supposed to be the advance of an English fleet, fled to Montreal. He lost most of his shipping.

42. Montreal, the last stronghold of the French, was doomed. Early in September, three English armies, eighteen thousand strong,[1] were before it. Vaudreuil, the governor, perceived the folly of resistance, and surrendered the city on the 8th. General Gage was appointed military governor. The prostration of French power in America was now complete, and the colonists were joyful. The people everywhere assembled to utter public thanksgivings to God.[2]

43. The war between the English and French nations did not cease upon the ocean and among the West India islands until 1763, when a treaty of peace was concluded at Paris [Februrary 10], by which France ceded to Great Britain all her claimed possessions in America, eastward of the Mississippi, north of the latitude of

1. Ten thousand under Amherst, and one thousand Indians under Johnson, arrived at Montreal on the 6th of September. On the same day General Murray and four thousand troops arrived from Quebec, and on the following day Colonel Haviland joined them with three thousand troops from Crown Point.

2. The following is a list of the battles, with their dates, of the French and Indian war:

Name.	Date.	Page.
1754.		
Great Meadows,	May 28.	97
Fort Necessity,	July 4.	97
1755.		
Fort Beausejour,	June 16.	99
Fort Gasperau,	June 17.	99
Monongahela,	July 9.	99
Near Lake George,	Sept. 8.	101
Head of Lake George,	Sept. 8.	101
1756.		
Oswego,	Aug. 14.	102
1757.		
Fort William Henry,	July 9.	103
1758.		
Near Ticonderoga,	July 6.	106
Ticonderoga,	July 8.	106
Louisburg,	July 26.	105
Fort Frontenac,	Aug. 27.	106
Alleghany Mountains,	Sept. 21.	107
1759.		
Fort Niagara,	July 25.	108
Montmorenci,	July 31.	109
Plains of Abraham,	Sept. 13.	110
1760.		
Sillery,	April 28.	111

Questions.—41. What did the French attempt? What can you tell about it, and a battle? Who were victorious? Why did the French flee from Quebec? What did they lose? 42. Where was the last stronghold of the French? How was it threatened? Tell about its surrender to the English? What was the effect on the colonists? 43. What can you tell about the continuing of war between the English and French, and a treaty? What had England gained?

Iberville river.[1] At the same time, Spain, with whom the English had been at war for a year previously, ceded [February 10, 1763] East and West Florida to the British crown. And now England held undisputed possession (except by the Indians) of the whole continent, from the shores of the Gulf of Mexico to the frozen north, and from ocean to ocean.[2]

44. While there was war in the north, the frontier settlements of the Carolinas suffered terribly from the Indians, set on by French emissaries among them. An expedition under Colonel Grant severely punished them in 1761, and ever afterward they remained quiet.

45. In 1763, Pontiac, a sagacious *Ottawa* chief, and a former ally of the French, was seen upon the war-path. He had secretly effected a confederation of several of the north-western tribes of Indians, for the purpose of expelling the English from the country west of the Alleghanies.[3] Within a fortnight, in the summer of that year, he seized all the English posts west of Oswego, excepting Niagara, Fort Pitt and Detroit. The Indians were soon subdued, and "Pontiac's War" was brought to an end. He was murdered by an Illinois Indian on the Mississippi river.

46. We have now arrived at a point in the history of the United States, of great interest and importance. We have traced the growth of the colonies through infancy and youth, their interests and destinies gradually commingling, until they really formed one people,[4] strong and lusty, like the mature man, pre-

1. France and England, Spain and Portugal were parties to the treaty. New Orleans, with the whole of Louisiana west of the Mississippi, was ceded by France to Spain at the same time, and she relinquished her entire possessions in North America. In 1800, Spain, by a secret treaty, retroceded Louisiana to France; and in 1803, Napoleon sold it to the United States for $15,000,000.

2. The cost to England of this *Seven Years' War*, as the conflict was called in Europe, was five hundred and sixty millions of dollars.

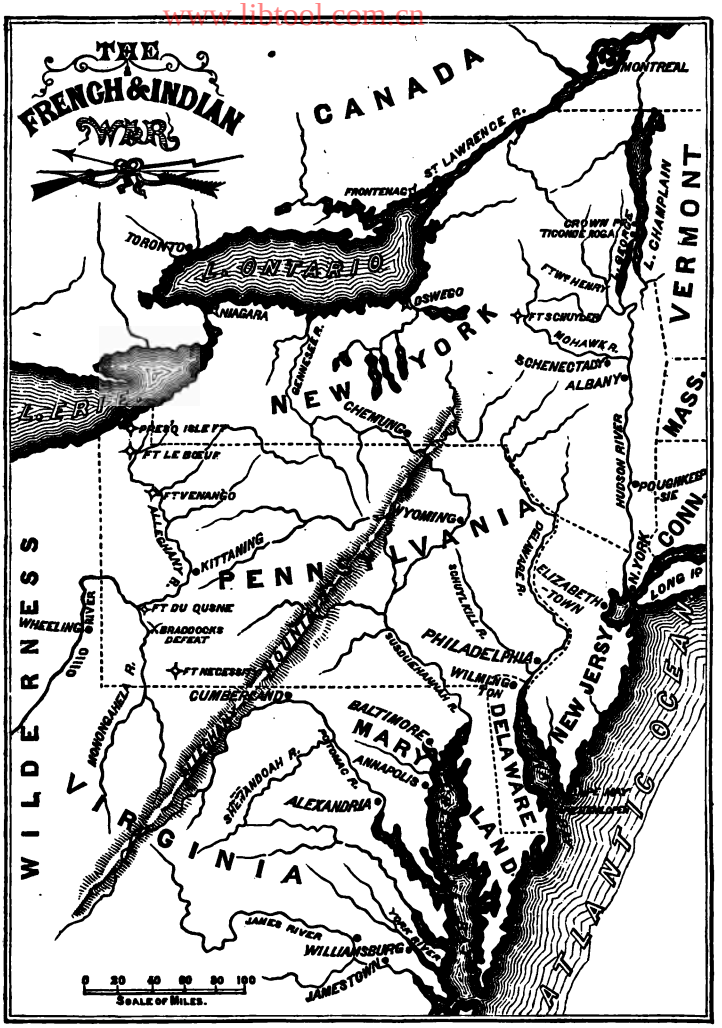
3. Note 6, page 98.

4. It must not be understood that there was yet a perfect unity of feeling among the various colonists. Sectional interests produced sectional jealousies, and these worked much mischief, even while soldiers from almost every colony were fighting shoulder to shoulder in the Continental army. Burnaby, who traveled in America at this period, expressed the opinion, that sectional jealousy and dissimilarity would prevent a permanent union; yet he avers that the people were imbued with ideas of independence, and that it was frequently remarked among them, that "the tide of dominion was running westward, and that America was destined to be the mistress of the world."

QUESTIONS.—44. What can you tell about difficulties with the Indians in the south? How were they chastised? 45. What can you tell about the conspiracy of Pontiac? What did he do? What followed? 46. What have we now accomplished? What have we observed? How must we now regard the colonies?

pared to vindicate natural rights, and to fashion political and social systems adapted to their position and wants. We view them now,

www.libtool.com.cn



MAP OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

conscious of their physical and moral strength, possessing clear views of right and justice, and prepared to demand and defend both. This is the point, in the progress of the new and growing nation, to which our observation is now directed, when the great question was to be decided, whether independent self-control should be enjoyed, or continued vassalage to an ungenerous parent should be endured. Our next topic will be the events connected with the settlement of that question.

www.liberal.org.cn

RUINS OF TICONDEROGA.

www.libtool.com.cn

CHAPTER V.

THE REVOLUTION.

SECTION I.

1. We have observed, in the course of our studies thus far, the slow but continual and solid growth of democratic ideas, from the time of the first planting of settlements in America which became colonies,[1] and with that growth a corresponding desire for independence of Great Britain, and the founding of a nation.[2] This desire was fostered by unjust and unwise legislation on the part of the mother country, by which the colonists were oppressed. That oppression finally became so severe that the people found it necessary first to complain, then to remonstrate, then to petition for redress, and finally to revolt, take up arms, and fight for their rights.

2. The colonists could not complain of the willful exercise of actual tyranny by the rulers of Great Britain. There was no motive for such conduct. They complained of an illiberal policy toward them, rigidly enforced, concerning manufactures and commerce;[3] the exactions and haughtiness of the royal governors sent to rule them without their leave; and above all, the exercise, by the home government, of the asserted right to tax the colonists without their consent, and without allowing them representatives in the British

1. Verse 2, page 50.
2. Three forms of government had existed, namely *charter*, *proprietary*, and *royal*. The New England governments were based on royal charters; New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Maryland, and the Carolinas were owned and governed by individuals or companies; and the remainder were immediately subject to the crown. Notwithstanding this diversity in the source of government, the anti-monarchical spirit pervaded the people of all, from the beginning, and gave birth to popular legislative assemblies.
3. Note 2, page 94.

Questions.—1. What have we observed? What desire was felt? What happened? 2. Of what did the colonists complain? What did they declare? What did they do?

Parliament. The colonists declared that TAXATION WITHOUT REPRESENTION IS TYRANNY. In defense of that position, established on the firm foundation of the rights of man, they finally revolted, and fought seven years for their independence. A history of that Revolution we will now consider.

www.jbtool.com.cn

PRELIMINARY EVENTS.

3. When the treaty of Paris [1763] closed the French and Indian war,[1] the colonists looked forward to long years of prosperity and repose. A young monarch,[2] virtuous and of upright intentions, was just seated [1761] upon the British throne. Having confidence in his integrity, and having recently felt the justice of the Government under the direction of Pitt, they were disposed to forget their grievances. But their hopes of happiness were soon destroyed. War had exhausted the British treasury, and the ministers were seeking various means for filling it. The late war had revealed to them the resources of the American colonies, and they determined to get money from them by taxation, direct or indirect. They might have obtained it easily, by asking it as a *favor*, but they demanded it as a *right*, and the colonists were offended.

4. The first attempt to exercise this so-called *right* was the issuing of search-warrants to persons appointed by the king to collect the import duties authorized by the navigation laws.[3] These warrants, which were called *Writs of Assistance*, empowered the King's officers to enter, peaceably or forcibly, any man's store or dwelling, in search of goods on which the duty had not been paid. It was a common saying and feeling that "every English-

1. Verse 43, page 111.

2. George the Third. He was crowned in 1761, at the age of twenty-one years. He reigned about sixty years, and died in 1820. During the latter years of his life, he was an imbecile, and his son (afterward George the Fourth) was appointed regent, or temporary ruler.

3. If a merchant receives from a foreign country goods valued in that country at $1,000, and is required to pay to his Government $100 on the receipt of them, he pays what is called a tariff, or import duty, of ten per cent. on the original cost. He is thus taxed $100 for the support of his Government. This is called, in commercial language, *ad valorem* duty. When he is required to pay a specified sum on every yard of cloth imported, whatever its cost abroad, it is called *specific duty*.

QUESTIONS.—3. What hopes did the colonists indulge? Why? How were they disappointed? What did the British Government do? 4. What can you tell about a method of taxation? What about Writs of Assistance?

man's house is his castle." These proceedings violated that sovereignty; and in this form the taxation of the American colonists was first attempted, in the reign of George the Third.

5. The people resisted this violation of their rights. The matter was brought before a general court held in Boston, and there James Otis, then advocate-general of the provinces, came out boldly on the side of the people. He denied the right of the British Government to tax them without their consent, and with his clear, trumpet-like voice, he exclaimed: "To my dying day I will oppose, with all the power and faculties God has given me, all such instruments of slavery on one hand and villany on the other!" "Then and there," said John Adams, who was present, "the trumpet of the Revolution was sounded—the independence of the colonies was proclaimed."

JAMES OTIS.

6. Had the young king listened to the counsels of wise men like Pitt,[1] the Americans might have been loyal subjects during his long reign. He listened to the counsels of weak and corrupt men like Bute, whom he placed at the head of his cabinet. Under his counsels a measure was adopted which no former British ministry dare attempt. It was the taxation of the American colonies by the means of a stamp duty.[2] The Stamp Act, as it was called, required the colonists to purchase, for specified sums, and place on all written

A STAMP.

1. Verse 24, page 104.

2. During Walpole's administration [1732], a stamp duty was proposed. He said, "I will leave the taxation of America to some of my successors, who have more courage than I have." Sir William Keith, governor of Pennsylvania, proposed such a tax in 1739. Franklin thought it just, when a delegate in the Colonial Congress at Albany, in 1754 (verse 8, page 98). But when it was proposed to Pitt in 1759, he said, "I will never burn my fingers with an American Stamp Act."

QUESTIONS.—5. What did the people do? Who was their champion? What did Otis say? What did John Adams declare? 6. What should the king have done? What did he do? What measure was adopted?

Passage of the stamp act. Opposition to it.

documents, stamps furnished by the British Government.[1] It was a wrong, unwise, and most mischievous measure.

7. The passage of the Stamp Act [1765] created the most intense indignation in America. Otis, in Massachusetts,[2] and Patrick

PATRICK HENRY ADDRESSING THE VIRGINIA ASSEMBLY.

Henry, in Virginia, vehemently denounced it.[3] Their words found a ready response in the breasts of the people. Associations were

1. The stamps were upon blue paper, in the form seen in the engraving on page 117, and were to be attached to every piece of paper or parchment on which a legal instrument was written. For these stamps, Government charged specific prices: for example, for a common property deed, one shilling and sixpence; for a diploma or a certificate of a college degree, two pounds, etc., etc.

2. Verse 5, page 117.

3. Henry was a member of the Virginia assembly. He introduced a series of resolutions, highly tinctured with rebellious doctrines. He asserted the general rights of all the colonies; then the exclusive right of the Virginia assembly to tax the people of that province, and boldly declared that the people were not bound to obey any law relative to taxation which did not proceed from their representatives. The last resolution declared that whoever should dissent from the doctrines inculcated in the others, should be considered an "enemy of the colonists." The introduction of these resolutions produced great excitement and alarm. Henry supported them with all the power of his wonderful eloquence. Some rose from their seats, and others sat in breathless silence. At length, when, alluding to tyrants, he exclaimed, "Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles the First his Cromwell, and George the Third —" there was a cry of "Treason! treason!" He paused a moment, and said—"may profit by their example. If that be treason, make the most of it." A part of his resolutions were adopted, and these formed the first gauntlet of defiance cast at the feet of the British monarch. Their power was felt throughout the land. The head of the speaker in the above picture is a correct likeness of Patrick Henry.

formed of those who were called Sons of Liberty, and pledges were made to resist the law. The stamps were seized and destroyed when they reached the seaboard towns; and the agents, called "stamp distributors," appointed to sell them, were so much despised and insulted that they quickly relinquished the business.

8. The first day of November, 1765, was the appointed time for the Stamp Act to go into effect. Already a convention of delegates from several colonies had assembled in New York city [October 7], and in three well-written papers they ably set forth the grievances and rights of the colonies, and petitioned the king and Parliament for redress of the former and acknowledgment of the latter. This convention, or congress, was in session fourteen days, and was followed by firm action, in opposition to the law, on the part of the people. All business was suspended on the 1st of November. Bells tolled funeral knells, flags were hoisted at half-mast, the courts were closed, and there was deep silence in the land. Then followed an outburst of honest indignation and defiance. The Sons of Liberty put forth new efforts. Mobs assailed the houses of British officials in the cities, and burned loyalists in effigy;[1] and the people leagued against British commerce. They agreed to import nothing from Great Britain, to the dismay of her merchants and manufacturers.[2]

9. England was touched in a tender point—her commerce; and her merchants and manufacturers joined with the Americans in a demand for the repeal of the Stamp Act.[3] The Government was compelled to listen; and on the 6th of March, 1766, the obnoxious

1. Public indignation is thus sometimes manifested. A figure of a man, intended to represent the obnoxious individual, is paraded, and then hung upon a scaffold, or burned at a stake, as an intimation of the deserved fate of the person thus represented. It was a common practice in England at the time in question, and has been often done in our own country since.

2. The newspapers of the day contain many laudatory notices of the conformity of wealthy people to these agreements. On one occasion, forty or fifty young ladies, who called themselves "Daughters of Liberty," met at the house of Rev. Mr. Morehead, in Boston, with their spinning wheels, and spun two hundred and thirty-two skeins of yarn, during the day, and presented them to the pastor. It is said "there were upward of one hundred spinners in Mr. Morehead's Society." "Within eighteen months," wrote a gentleman at Newport, R. I., "four hundred and eighty-seven yards of cloth, and thirty-six pairs of stockings, have been spun and knit in the family of James Nixon, of this town." That wool might not become scarce, the use of sheep-flesh for food was discontinued.

3. Half a million of dollars were due to them by the colonists, at that time, not a dollar of which could be collected under the existing state of things.

Questions.—7. What were the effects of the Stamp Act? 8. What can you tell of a convention in New York? What followed? 9. How was England touched by the Stamp Act? What was done?

act was repealed. Pitt was then in the Parliament, and, with Burke, Barré, and others, was chiefly instrumental in accomplishing that result. The repeal gave joy in England and America.

WILLIAM PITT.

www.lbtool.com.cn

10. New trouble soon appeared. While Pitt applauded the Americans for resisting the stamp tax, he appended to the repeal bill a declaration that the British Parliament had the *right* "to bind the colonies in any manner whatsoever." Without this concession to British pride, it was said, the repeal bill could not have become law. But Pitt's expedient was hurtful; for under the sanction of that Declaratory Act, as it was called, the British ministry planned and executed measures for taxing the Americans quite as odious in principle as the stamp tax. To overcome expected opposition, British troops were sent to America [June, 1766], and a Mutiny Act was passed, which provided for their partial subsistence by the colonists.

11. This palpable attempt to enslave the Americans filled them with burning indignation. The most determined opposition everywhere appeared; yet the ministry persevered in their schemes. In June [1767] a tax was levied on several articles imported into the colonies. In July an act was passed establishing a board of trade and commissioners of customs in the colonies, who should be independent of the colonial legislatures. A few days afterward [July, 1767], Parliament passed an act forbidding the assembly of New York performing any legislative act whatsoever, because that body had formally refused to comply with the requirements of the Mutiny Act.

12. The colonists were now thoroughly aroused to a sense of danger, and the bond of union between them grew stronger every day. A nation was rapidly germinating. The colonial assemblies first protested. New non-importation associations were formed.[1]

1. Verse 8, page 119.

QUESTIONS.—10. What can you tell about the repeal of the Stamp Act? What did the British ministry now do? 11. What new measures did the ministry attempt? 12. What were the effects?

Pamphlets and newspapers boldly instigated the people to resistance by passionate appeals to their feelings and judgment, and defining their rights. The assembly of Massachusetts went a step farther. They issued a Circular Letter [February, 1768] to the other colonial assemblies, asking them to coöperate in efforts to obtain a redress of grievances. The latter made a cordial response; and early in 1768 almost every colonial assembly had boldly expressed the conviction that Parliament had no right to tax the colonies without their consent.

13. The bold act of Massachusetts was resented by the ministry. They ordered the assembly, in the name of the king, to rescind the Circular Letter. That body, by an almost unanimous vote [June 30, 1769], voted *not* to rescind, and declared that order from the British ministry to be another evidence of the determination of the Government to enslave the colonists by restricting the freedom of speech and action of their representatives.[1]

SAMUEL ADAMS.

14. The ministry and the colonists were now fairly at issue. The former, having resolved to use coercive measures, became more regardless than ever of even the forms of justice, and they began to treat the colonists as rebellious subjects. They warned the several colonial assemblies not to imitate the disobedience of Massachusetts;[2] and the royal governors were instructed to use all the means at their command to enforce the submission of the people.

15. A crisis was soon reached. The new commissioners of customs[3] arrived at Boston in May, 1768. The people held them in detestation, and very soon gave a signal illustration of it. The

1. James Otis and Samuel Adams were the principal speakers on this occasion. "When Lord Hillsborough [colonial secretary] knows," said the former, "that we will not rescind *our* acts, he should apply to Parliament to rescind *theirs*. Let Britons rescind their measures, or the colonies are lost to them forever."

2. Verse 12, page 120.

3. Verse 11, page 120.

QUESTIONS.—12. What did the Massachusetts and other colonial assemblies do? 13. What did the ministry require? What did the Massachusetts assembly do? 14. What course did the ministry pursue?

commissioners seized a sloop [June, 1768] laden with wine, which belonged to John Hancock, one of the leaders of the popular sentiment in Massachusetts, because that gentleman refused to pay the duty on the cargo on her arrival. The commissioners were personally assailed by a mob; their houses were injured; and they were compelled to seek safety in *Castle William*, a small fort on an island in the harbor.

16. The royal governor, Bernard, now called troops to Boston to overawe the people. General Gage[1] came with them late in September. They were seven hundred in number. They entered the city on the quiet Sabbath, with drums beating and colors flying, and with all the insolence of conquerors taking possession of a captured city. The inhabitants felt deeply outraged, but were compelled to see their beautiful Commons converted into a camp-ground for mercenaries, without power to repel the indignity. But the assembly of Massachusetts refused to afford food or shelter for these royal troops, because they came as instruments of oppression.[2]

17. The home government proceeded to punish Massachusetts for its obstinacy. An old law of Henry the Eighth was revived, by which the governor of the refractory colony should be required to arrest and send to England for trial, on a charge of treason, the ringleaders in the recent tumults in Boston.[3] The assembly boldly denied the right of the king to take an offender from the country for trial, and reasserted the chartered privileges of the people. A minority in the British House of Commons took the same position. Burke denounced the revival of the old statute, and said: "Can you not trust the juries of that country? If you have not a party among two millions of people, you must either change your plan of government or renounce the colonies forever."

18. It soon became apparent to the colonists that to preserve

1. Verse 42, page 111.
2. As the people refused to supply the troops with quarters, they were placed, some in the State House, some in Faneuil Hall, and others in tents on the Common. Cannon were planted at different points; sentinels challenged the citizens as they passed; and the whole city had the appearance of a camp.
3. Verse 15, page 121.

QUESTIONS.—15. What happened in Boston? What can you tell of a mob there? 16. What did the governor of Massachusetts do? What can you tell of royal troops in Boston? 17. How was Boston punished? What law was revived? What did Burke say?

their liberties they must oppose armed resistance to armed oppression.[1] In Boston the indignation of the inhabitants was with difficulty restrained. The soldiers and the citizens had almost daily quarrels. At length [March 2, 1770] they came to blows, and citizens were badly beaten. The vengeance of the most excitable portion of the inhabitants was aroused, and a few evenings afterward [March 5] several hundred of them assembled in the streets for the avowed purpose of attacking the troops and driving them from the city. A fight ensued, when three citizens were killed, and two were severely wounded.[2] The mob retreated. The city bells rang an alarum; and within an hour several thousands of the inhabitants were in the streets. The governor (Hutchinson) appeared and allayed the excitement by assuring the citizens that their wishes should be respected.

19. The people demanded the instant withdrawal of the troops and the trial of Captain Preston, the commander of the guard of eight men who fired on the mob, for murder. The governor complied. The troops were sent to *Castle William*[3] on the 12th [March, 1770], and the soldiers were arraigned. John Adams and Josiah Quincy, popular leaders of the people, defended them. The commander and six of his men were acquitted. The other two were found guilty of manslaughter. The people acquiesced in the verdict, for they loved justice and reverenced the law.[4] The victims of the riot were regarded as martyrs for the sake of liberty; and for many years the memory of the "Boston Massacre," as it was called, was kept alive by anniversary orations in the city and vicinity.

20. The events in America and the clamors of British mer-

1. There were, at that time, full two hundred thousand men in the colonies capable of bearing arms.

2. The leader of the mob was a powerful mulatto, named Attucks. He and Samuel Gray and James Caldwell were killed instantly; two others received mortal wounds.

3. Verse 15, page 121.

4. This trial and its results were highly favorable to the character of the Americans. It showed that they were alive to the importance of obedience to laws and the sanctity of justice. The event was a most opportune and pertinent commentary on the folly and wickedness of the ministry in reviving the old statute of Henry the Eighth, by which Americans might be taken to England for trial. It was so regarded in England, and gave the opposition in Parliament a powerful weapon for a defence of the Americans.

QUESTIONS.—18. What did the colonists perceive? What can you tell of disturbances in Boston? 19. What did the people demand? How were they answered? What can you say about a trial of royal soldiers in Boston?

chants who were injured by the non-importation associations,[1] caused the British ministry to recommend the repeal of all the obnoxious tax laws, and the imposition of a duty only on TEA. This was retained for the twofold purpose of aiding the East India Company,[2] and the continued assertion of the *right* of Parliament to tax the colonies. Lord North, the prime minister, mistaking the character of the Americans, believed that they would not complain of a very small tax on a single article of luxury. He could not comprehend the fact that they were contending for a great *principle* which lay at the foundation of their liberties. They regarded the imposition of a duty on one article as much a violation of their rights as if ten were included. So they continued their non-importation league against the purchase and use of tea.

21. In 1771 there were popular outbreaks in the interior of North Carolina, caused by the exactions of government officers. Men banded in open rebellion, with the avowed purpose of redressing the grievances of the people. They called themselves *Regulators*. Local magistrates were powerless, and in May, Governor Tryon marched against them with troops. A bloody skirmish ensued near the banks of the Alamance creek [May 16, 1771]. The *Regulators* were subdued, and six of their number were hanged. But the spirit of the people was not subdued. The affair created intense hatred of British rule, which was soon manifested in patriotic deeds.

22. In June, the following year [1772], the British schooner *Gaspé* was cruising in Narraganset bay for the purpose of enforcing the revenue laws. While chasing a vessel that was trying to elude her, she ran aground; and that night [June 9, 1772] a party went

1. Verse 8, page 119.

2. The English East India Company was formed and chartered in 1600, for the purpose of carrying on a trade by sea between England and the countries lying east of the Cape of Good Hope. It continued prosperous; and about the middle of the last century, the governor of its stations in India, under the pretense of obtaining security for their trade, subdued small territories, and thus planted the foundation of that great British empire in the East, which now comprises the whole of Hindostan, from Cape Comorin to the Himalaya mountains, with a population of more than one hundred and twenty millions of people.

QUESTIONS.—20. What can you tell of feeling in England? What did Lord North do? What can you say about the principle for which the Americans were contending? 21. What can you tell of disturbances in North Carolina? 22. What important event occurred in Narraganset Bay?

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

down from Providence,[1] and set her on fire.[2] This act exasperated the British ministry; and so the breach between England and her colonies continually widened.

www.hbook.com.cn

23. The East India Company[3] lost the best customer for their tea by the operation of the non-importation leagues,[4] and their warehouses were crowded with the plant. They offered to pay an export duty, greater in amount than the tax imposed on the Americans by the import duty,[5] if the latter should be withdrawn. Lord North would not consent to thus relinquish even the appearance of the *right* to tax the colonists, but, still mistaking the character of the Americans, he consented to allow the company to send their tea over on terms which would make it cheaper in America than in England. Both the Government and the company believed that the Americans might be bribed into submission by cheap tea; and very soon ships laden with the article were making their way across the Atlantic.

LORD NORTH.

24. This concession to a commercial monopoly, while spurning the appeals of a great principle, only created contempt and indignation throughout the colonies, and not a cargo was allowed to be landed, excepting one or two, which were seized and not permitted to be sold. Governor Hutchinson, of Massachusetts, defied the popular will, and ordered the landing of two cargoes which arrived at Boston in December,

FANEUIL HALL.

1. Verse 1, page 42.
2. One of the leaders was Abraham Whipple, a naval commander during the Revolution. Several others were afterward distinguished for bravery during that struggle. Four years afterward, when Sir James Wallace, a British commander, was in the vicinity of Newport, Whipple became known as the leader of the attack on the *Gaspé*. Wallace sent him the following letter: "You, Abraham Whipple, on the 9th of June, 1772, burned his majesty's vessel, the *Gaspé*, and I will hang you at the yard-arm." To this Whipple replied: "To Sir James Wallace. Sir: Always catch a man before you hang him. ABRAHAM WHIPPLE."
3. Note 2, page 124. 4. Verse 12, page 120. 5. Note 3, page 116.

QUESTIONS.—23. What can you tell about the East India Company and their tea? How were the Americans misunderstood? 24. How did the Americans regard the acts of the British Government concerning a tax on tea? What did they do?

1773. The people held meetings in Faneuil Hall, and resolved that no tea should be landed; and on a cold, moonlit night, a party of about sixty men, mostly disguised as Indians, went on board the two vessels, broke open the tea chests, and cast their contents into the waters of the harbor.

25. This event exasperated the British ministry, and they resolved on retaliatory measures. On the 7th of March, 1774, Parliament, by law, ordered the port of Boston to be closed against all commerce. Another act was passed, on the 28th, for depriving the people of Massachusetts of some of their dearest rights given them by their charter.[1] This was followed by another on the 21st of April, which provided for the trial, in England, of any person who should commit murder in the colonies in support of the British Government: in other words, to encourage military insolence. A fourth act provided for the quartering of troops on the people of the colonies; and a fifth made great concessions to the Roman Catholics in Canada.

26. These measures created universal indignation throughout the colonies, which was heightened when General Gage[2] was appointed governor of Massachusetts, and went to Boston, with troops, to enforce the obnoxious acts of Parliament. Under his direction the port of Boston was closed on the first of June [1774]. Business was prostrated and distress ensued. The inhabitants of the doomed town were considered martyrs; and sympathizing friends throughout the colonies, and in Great Britain, sent them all the relief in their power,[3] and counseled them to continue to resist. The American people saw that the time had

1. It empowered sheriffs, appointed by the crown, to select juries, instead of leaving that power with the selectmen of the towns, who were chosen by the people. It also prohibited all town meetings and other gatherings. It provided for the appointment of the councils, judges, justices of the peace, etc., by the crown or its representative.

2. Verse 16, page 122.

3. The "Boston Port Bill" not only ordered the harbor to be closed against the entrance and departure of vessels, but also directed the custom house, the courts of justice, and other public offices to be removed to Salem. The Salem people refused the offered advantage, and those of Marblehead offered the merchants of Boston the free use of their wharves. Food, clothing, and money were sent to Boston from different colonies, and sympathizers in London subscribed one hundred and fifty thousand dollars for the poor of Boston.

QUESTIONS.—25. How were ministers affected, and what did they do? What new measures were adopted? 26. Describe the state of public feeling in America. What occurred at Boston? What can you tell about sympathy for the Bostonians? What did the American people perceive?

come for them to decide which to choose, slavish submission or armed resistance.

27. Committees of correspondence had been formed in the several colonies the previous year.[1] These were now busy in creating a strong bond of union between the colonies, by a continual interchange of opinions and intelligence. Party lines were distinctly drawn. The friends of British rule were called TORIES, and the friends of the American people were called WHIGS.[2]

28. The inhabitants of Massachusetts defied their oppressors, while suffering greatly. Their representatives met at Salem, soon after the closing of the port of Boston,[3] and sent forth an invitation to all the colonies to send delegates to Philadelphia, early in September following, who should meet there in a continental congress, to consult on public affairs. This invitation was cheerfully accepted. The idea of a national union took powerful hold on the public mind, and a snake device, like the one seen annexed, was placed at the head of several newspapers. Before the close of August [1774], twelve of the thirteen colonies had appointed delegates to the proposed general congress.

SNAKE DEVICE.

29. The FIRST CONTINENTAL CONGRESS assembled in Carpenter's Hall, Philadelphia, on the 5th of September, 1774. All of the colonies were represented, excepting Georgia. Peyton Randolph, of Virginia, was appointed president, and Charles Thomson, of Pennsylvania, was chosen secretary. The regular business of the Congress was opened on the morning of the 7th, after a

1. At a consultation of leading members of the Virginia House of Assembly in March, 1773, held in the old Raleigh tavern at Williamsburg, at which Patrick Henry, Thomas Jefferson, Richard Henry Lee, and others were present, it was agreed to submit a resolution in the house the following day, appointing a committee of vigilance and correspondence, and recommending the same to the other colonies. The measure was carried, and these committees formed one of the most powerful engines in carrying on the work of the Revolution. Similar committees had already been formed in several towns in Massachusetts.

2. The terms WHIG and TORY had been long used in England as titles of political parties. The former denoted the opposers of royalty; the latter indicated its supporters. These terms were introduced into America two or three years before the Revolution broke out, and became the distinctive titles of the *patriots* and *loyalists*.

3. Verse 26, page 126.

QUESTIONS.—27. What can you tell about committees of correspondence? What about party names? 28. How did the Massachusetts people act? What can you tell about preparations for a Continental Congress? 29. What can you tell of the assembling of that Congress? What did they do?

prayer from the Rev. Jacob Duché, of Philadelphia. They remained in session until the 26th of October, during which time they matured plans for future action, and prepared and put forth several state papers which challenged the admiration of the statesmen of Europe, and received the approval of their countrymen. They expressed a firm loyalty to the king, and adjourned to meet on the 10th of May succeeding [1775], unless the grievances complained of should, in the mean time, be redressed. Then was formed the first great bond of the American Union.

CARPENTER'S HALL.

CHARLES THOMSON.

SECTION II.

FIRST YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE [1775.]

1. While preparations were making for the Continental Congress, in the summer of 1774, the people were arming and drilling. In Massachusetts, in particular, the patriotic spirit was very zealous. The people enrolled themselves into companies, chose leaders, and prepared to take up arms at a minute's warning. From this circumstance they were called *Minute-men.* During the session of the Congress in autumn,[1] and also throughout the ensuing winter, these warlike preparations continued, and public speakers everywhere, as well as the newspapers, boldly proclaimed the *right of the people to resist oppression.* General

1. Verse 29, page 127.

QUESTIONS.—1. What were the people doing in the summer and autumn of 1774? How did their actions affect General Gage? What did he do?

Gage[1] was alarmed, and commenced fortifying Boston Neck.[2] He seized all the ammunition that he could find in the vicinity of Boston, and, in many ways, so exasperated the people, that it was with difficulty that prudent counselors kept them from attacking the troops.[3]

www.libtool.com.cn

2. The spirit of New England was manifested early in September. A rumor went abroad that British ships were cannonading Boston. Within two days, full thirty thousand armed *Minute-men* were on their way to that city. It was a false report, but the effect gave Gage a useful lesson. He lowered his haughty tone, and sought to soothe the people by calling an assembly of delegates to meet at Salem. Then, dreading their presence, he revoked the order. Ninety delegates met [October 5, 1774], appointed John Hancock their president, and proceeding to Cambridge, formed a Provincial Congress, almost within cannon-shot of Gage's headquarters. They made provisions for an army, and boldly declared General Gage to be an "inveterate enemy" of the people.

3. Such was the state of affairs in America at the beginning of 1775. It was an absorbing topic in Great Britain, for Dr. Franklin, the agent there for several of the colonies, had given wide circulation to the proceedings of the first Continental Congress.[4] The subject received the early attention of Parliament, and Pitt proposed [January 7, 1775] conciliatory measures. They were rejected, and in their stead Parliament struck another severe blow at the prosperity of New England[5] [March], by prohibiting fishing on the banks of Newfoundland.[6] The colonists now lost

1. Verse 26, page 126.
2. The peninsula of Boston was originally connected with the main land by a narrow isthmus called the Neck. It has been greatly widened by filling in the marginal morasses; and over it now passes the fine avenue which connects the city with Roxbury, on the main.
3. Many hundreds of armed men assembled at Cambridge. At Charlestown, the people took possession of the arsenal, after Gage had carried off the powder. At Portsmouth, N. H., they captured the fort, and carried off the ammunition. At Newport, R. I., the people seized the powder, and took possession of forty pieces of cannon at the entrance to the harbor. In New York, Philadelphia, Annapolis, Williamsburg, Charleston, and Savannah, the people took active defensive measures, and the whole country was in a blaze of indignation.
4. Verse 29, page 127. 5. Verse 25, page 126.
6. Verse 3, page 16. At that time there were employed by the Americans, in the British Newfoundland fisheries, about 400 ships, 2,000 fishing shallops, and 20,000 men. On account

Questions.—2. What can you tell about a war rumor, and its effects? What can you tell about the Massachusetts assembly and a Provincial Congress? 3. What can you tell about the impression made by American affairs in England? What did Parliament do? What did the colonists resolve to do?

all hopes of reconciliation, and, with reliance upon the justice of their cause and the aid of the Lord God Omnipotent, they resolved to defy the fleets and armies of Great Britain.

www.lptool.com.cn

4. On the 1st of April, 1775, there were three thousand British troops in Boston; yet Gage was uneasy. He was told that the people were gathering ammunition and stores at Concord, sixteen miles from the city. He sent Lieutenant-Colonel Smith and Major Pitcairn, with some troops, at near midnight on the 18th, to destroy them. The movement was made secretly, but vigilant men, like Dr. Joseph Warren and Paul Revere, were watching unceasingly. The latter hastened toward Concord to arouse the inhabitants and the Minute-men, and when, at dawn [April 19, 1775], Pitcairn approached Lexington, he found eighty armed men prepared to meet him. "Disperse, you rebels! lay down your arms!" he shouted. They stood firm. A severe skirmish ensued, in which eight citizens were killed and wounded. Then and there the FIRST BLOOD was shed in the great REVOLUTION.

5. The British pushed on to Concord, and, after a skirmish with the Minute-men there, destroyed the stores, and then moved hastily toward Boston. They were terribly harassed by the militia concealed behind trees, stone fences, and buildings; and nothing saved the eight hundred men from destruction or capture but the arrival of reënforcements under Lord Percy. The whole body fled to Charlestown, pursued by the Americans, who killed or wounded two hundred and seventy-three of them. The Americans lost one hundred and three.

6. The whole country was soon aroused to action by this invasion. Before the close of April, full twenty thousand Americans were engaged in building a line of fortifications from Roxbury to the Mystic river, for the purpose of confining the foe to the narrow peninsula on which Boston stood.[1] The Provincial Congress, with Joseph Warren at its head, was in perpetual session

of this blow to the fishing trade, a great many inhabitants of Nantucket and vicinity, chiefly Quakers, went to North Carolina, and in Orange and Guilford counties became planters. Their descendants were yet numerous there when the civil war broke out in 1861.

1. Verse 6, page 58.

QUESTIONS.—4. What can you tell of British troops in Boston? What did Gage do? What scenes ensued at Lexington? 5. What happened at Concord? What can you tell of the retreat of British troops toward Boston? 6. What were the effects of this armed invasion?

at Watertown, working day and night for the public good.[1] The same zeal was manifested in other colonies, in which provincial congresses were formed, arms and ammunition seized, and royal governors defied. Before the close of summer, the power of every one of these magistrates, from Massachusetts to Georgia, was utterly destroyed.

7. The Americans did not confine themselves to the task of imprisoning the British in Boston. They struck an aggressive blow early in May, which opened the way to an invasion of Canada. Some Connecticut and Vermont militia, led by Colonels Ethan Allen and Benedict Arnold, seized Ticonderoga[2] on the 10th of May; and two days afterward a detachment, under Colonel Seth Warner, took possession of Crown Point.[3] The spoils of victory were one hundred and forty pieces of cannon and a large amount of ammunition and stores.

8. Meanwhile the Provincial Congress of Massachusetts had appointed a Committee of Safety, and clothed them with full power to regulate the operations of the army. They sat at Cambridge and worked faithfully. Artemas Ward was appointed commander-in-chief of the troops, and Richard Gridley chief engineer. Putnam, Stark, and other veterans of the French and Indian war[4] were appointed to important commands.

9. On the 25th of May large reënforcements for Gage arrived at Boston, under the command of the three experienced generals, Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne, making the whole British force there about twelve thousand men. Admiral Graves was also there with several vessels of war. Thus strengthened, Gage prepared to break through the American lines that hemmed him in, and penetrate the country. He issued a proclamation declaring all Americans in arms to be rebels and traitors, and offering a free pardon to all who should return to their allegiance, excepting

1. They appointed military officers; organized a system of supplies; issued bills of credit to the amount of $375,000, for the payment of which the province was pledged; and declared General Gage to be an "inveterate enemy" of the people.
2. Verse 26, page 105. 3. Verse 34, page 108. 4. Page 95.

QUESTIONS.—7. What aggressive movements did the Americans make? What can you tell about Ticonderoga and Crown Point? 8. What did the Provincial Congress of Massachusetts do? 9. What can you tell of the arrival of fresh British troops in Boston? What did Gage prepare to do? What was done?

John Hancock[1] and Samuel Adams,[2] whom he intended to seize and send to England to be hanged.

10. The watchful patriots, aware of Gage's intentions, strengthened their intrenchments on Boston Neck;[3] and on the evening of the 16th of June, Colonel Prescott was sent, with a detachment, to take possession of and fortify Bunker's Hill, which commanded Boston and the surrounding waters. They ascended Breed's Hill, nearer the city, by mistake, and before morning they had thrown up a strong redoubt,[4] which greatly astonished the British officers.

11. Gage and his associates perceived the necessity for driving the Americans from this strong position before they should plant heavy cannon there, and, before sunrise on the morning of the 17th, they opened a cannonade upon the redoubt from Copp's Hill in Boston, and from the shipping in the harbor. The effect was small; and hour after hour the patriots labored on. At noon they rested, for their work was done. They exchanged their implements for guns and knapsacks, and prepared for battle.

12. General Howe, with General Pigot and three thousand men, crossed the Charles river to Morton's Point, at the foot of the eastern slopes of Breed's Hill, where he formed his troops into two columns, and marched slowly to attack the redoubt. Although the British commenced firing cannon soon after they had begun to ascend the hill, and the great guns of the ships, and the battery on Copp's Hill, poured out an incessant storm upon the redoubt, the Americans kept perfect silence until the enemy had approached within close musket-shot. Hardly an American could be seen by the invaders, yet behind those rude mounds of earth lay fifteen hundred determined men.

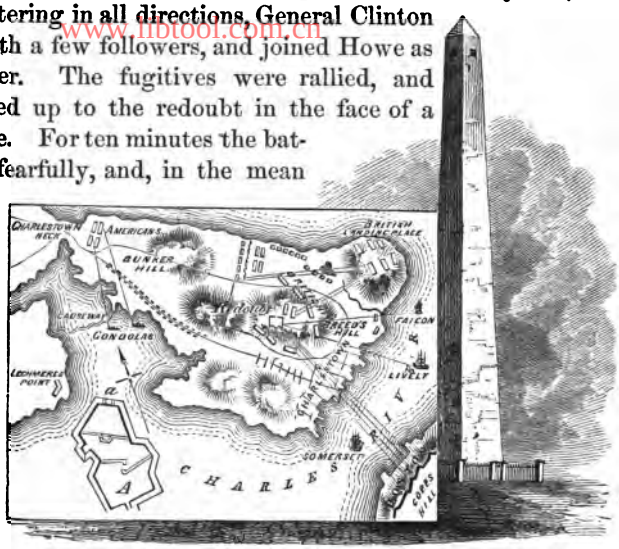
13. When the British column was within ten rods of the redoubt, Prescott shouted *Fire!* and instantly whole platoons of the assailants were prostrated by well-aimed bullets. The sur-

1. Verse 15, page 121. 2. Page 121. 3. Note 2, page 129.
4. A redoubt is a small fortification, generally composed of earth, and having very few features of a regular fort, except its arrangement for the use of cannons and muskets. They are often temporary structures, cast up in the progress of a siege, or a protracted battle. The diagram *A*, on the map, page 133, shows the form of the redoubt; *a* is the entrance.

Questions.—10. What can you tell about the movements of the Americans? 11. How did the British regard and treat the redoubt on Breed's Hill? What did the Americans do? 12. What can you tell of the attack of the British on the Americans in their redoubt?

vivors fell back in great confusion, but were soon rallied for a second attack. They were again repulsed, with heavy loss, and while scattering in all directions, General Clinton arrived with a few followers, and joined Howe as a volunteer. The fugitives were rallied, and they rushed up to the redoubt in the face of a galling fire. For ten minutes the battle raged fearfully, and, in the mean while, Charlestown, at the foot of the eminence, having been set on fire by a carcass[1] from one of the hills,[2] sent up a column of dense smoke, which completely enveloped the combatants.

www.ibtool.com.cn



BUNKER'S HILL BATTLE. MONUMENT.

14. The firing in the redoubt soon grew weaker, for the ammunition of the Americans became exhausted. It ceased, and then the British scaled the banks and compelled the Americans to retreat, while they fought fiercely with clubbed muskets. They fled across Charlestown Neck,[3] gallantly covered by Putnam and a few brave men, and under that commander took position on Prospect Hill, and fortified it. The British took possession of

1. A *carcass* is a hollow case, formed of ribs of iron, covered with cloth or metal, with holes in it. Being filled with combustibles, and set on fire, it is thrown from a mortar, like a bombshell, upon the roofs of buildings, and ignites them. A bombshell is a hollow ball with an orifice, filled with powder, which is ignited by a slow match when fired, explodes, and its fragments produce terrible destruction.

2. Copp's Hill. Verse 12, page 132.

3. Charlestown, like Boston, is on a peninsula, almost surrounded by water and a marsh. The Neck was a narrow causeway connecting it with the main. Charlestown was a flourishing rival of Boston at the time of the battle. It was then completely destroyed. Six hundred buildings perished in the flames. Burgoyne, speaking of the battle and conflagration, said it was the most awful and sublime sight he had ever witnessed.

QUESTIONS.—13. Relate the incidents of the battle of "Bunker's Hill." 14. Tell about the final result.

Bunker's Hill [1] and erected a fortification there. There was absolutely no victory in the case. The Americans had lost, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, about four hundred and fifty men. The loss of the British, from like causes, was almost eleven hundred.[2] This was the first real *battle* of the Revolution, and lasted almost two hours.[3]

15. While these events were occurring in New England, the Revolution was making rapid progress elsewhere. Patrick Henry's eloquence had again aroused the Virginians, and his burning words in the assembly at Richmond, "Give me liberty, or give me death!"[4] became the war-cry of the people. When Lord Dunmore, the governor of Virginia, sent on board a British war vessel powder belonging to the colony, that bold patriot demanded and received full indemnity from him; and, before the battle of Bunker's Hill, that detested magistrate was driven from the soil of Virginia to the shelter of a British man-of-war in the York river. In North Carolina a still bolder step had been taken. A convention of delegates, chosen by the people of Mecklenburg county, virtually declared [May, 1775], by a series of resolutions, the people absolved from all allegiance to the British crown. In South Carolina and Georgia arms and ammunition were seized by the people, and royal authority was spurned.

16. In the midst of these excitements, the SECOND CONTINEN-

1 As the battle took place on *Breed's*, and not on *Bunker's* Hill, the former name should have been given to it, but the name of *Bunker's Hill* is too sacred in the records of patriotism to be changed.

JOSEPH WARREN.

2. The Provincial Congress estimated the loss at about 1,500; General Gage reported 1,054. Of the Americans, only 115 were killed; the remainder were wounded or made prisoners.

3. Among the Americans who were killed was Dr. Joseph Warren, who had just received the commission of major-general. He crossed Charlestown Neck in the midst of flying balls from the British shipping, and reached the redoubt on Breed's Hill at the moment when the enemy had scaled its banks. He was killed by a musket ball, while retreating, and was buried near where he fell. The Bunker Hill monument commemorates his death as well as the patriotism of his countrymen.

4. In that assembly there was doubt, and hesitation, and a timid desire to postpone action. The fervent Henry exclaimed, in the spirit of Joshua, "I know not what course others may take, but as for me, *give me liberty, or give me death!*"

QUESTIONS.—15. What can you tell of the Revolution elsewhere? What did Patrick Henry do? What occurred in North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia?

Washington commander-in-chief. He takes command of the army. The Canadians.

TAL CONGRESS assembled [May 10, 1775] at Philadelphia. With commendable prudence and moderation, that body offered to Great Britain the hand of reconciliation, at the same time saying, with firmness, "We have counted the cost of this contest, and find nothing so dreadful as voluntary slavery." They voted to raise an army of twenty thousand men; and, on the 15th of June [1775], they chose George Washington, a delegate from Virginia, commander-in-chief of all the forces raised, or to be raised, for the defense of the colonies. They adopted the troops at Boston as a CONTINENTAL army, and appointed general officers to assist Washington in its organization and future operations.[1]

17. Washington took command of the army, at Cambridge, on the 3d of July. It was fourteen thousand strong, and partially intrenched. He gave the command of the right wing, at Roxbury, to General Ward,[2] and the left wing, at Prospect Hill, two miles northwest of Breed's Hill, to General Lee. The centre, at Cambridge, he commanded himself. He then prepared to commence a regular siege of Boston, with as much vigor as his limited means would allow.

18. The Canadians, having refused to join the other colonies in their movement toward free government, were considered positive supporters of the royal cause. To prevent their giving aid to the enemy, whose armies for invasion and their supplies might ascend the St. Lawrence, it was resolved to take possession of the country, and, for this purpose, a considerable force, composed of New England and New York troops, were sent down Lake Champlain, in the summer of 1775, under

GENERAL SCHUYLER.

1. Artemas Ward, Charles Lee, Philip Schuyler, and Israel Putnam, *major-generals;* Horatio Gates, *adjutant-general;* and Seth Pomeroy, Richard Montgomery, David Wooster, William Heath, Joseph Spencer, John Thomas, John Sullivan, and Nathaniel Greene (all but Montgomery New England men), *brigadier-generals.*

2. A soldier of the French and Indian war.

QUESTIONS.—16. What can you tell about the Second Continental Congress? Give an account of the appointment of commander-in-chief, and the creation of a Continental army. 17. Tell about Washington taking command. Describe the position of the army around Boston. 18. What can you tell about the attitude of the Canadians? What did the Americans do? What can you tell about an invasion of Canada?

the command of General Schuyler. On account of illness, that officer was compelled to give the command to General Montgomery, who, toward the close of September, laid siege to St. John's, on the Sorel, the outlet of Lake Champlain. It was the first post within the Canadian border. After a siege of more than a month, it was surrendered on the 3d of November.

19. While Montgomery was before St. John's, Colonel Ethan Allen and eighty men crossed the St. Lawrence, to attack Montreal [September 25, 1775], but promised assistance having been withheld, they were captured, and the leader sent to England in irons. Another expedition, under Colonel Bedell, captured Chambly, at the rapids of the Sorel; and Colonel Warner[1] prevented Sir Guy Carleton, the governor of Canada, reënforcing the garrison at St. John's. These events hastened the surrender of that post.

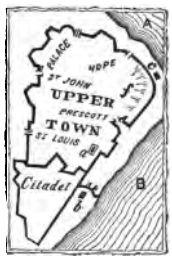
20. Montgomery pushed on and captured Montreal[2] on the 13th of November, and then hastened down the river toward Quebec. Twenty miles above that city[3] he was joined by Colonel Arnold,[4] who had reached the St. Lawrence after one of the most wonderful marches on record. He left Cambridge in September, followed the Kennebec river deep into the wilderness, and, among lakes and morasses filled with ice and snow, made his way to the Canadian settlements in the valley of the Chaudiere. He suddenly appeared, with seven hundred and fifty followers, before Quebec [November 13], and demanded its surrender. It was refused, and biting, wintry winds, on the Plains of Abraham,[5] compelled him to withdraw to the place where he joined Montgomery.

21. With less than a thousand effective men,[6] Montgomery and Arnold appeared upon the Plains of Abraham, before

1. Verse 7, page 131. 2. Verse 6, page 17. 3. At *Point au Trembles.*
4. Verse 7, page 131. 5. Note 1, page 109.
6. Not much more than half of Arnold's seven hundred and fifty men were fit for duty, they had been so much weakened by hardships. They were half naked until woolen clothes furnished by Montgomery covered them. They had not more than four hundred muskets, and no artillery.

Questions.—19. What can you tell about Colonels Ethan Allen, Bedell, and Warner? 20. What can you tell about Montgomery's movements? What can you tell about Arnold's expedition?

Quebec, on the evening of the 5th of December. On the following morning, Montgomery made a demand for its surrender. His flag was fired upon.[1] He had no heavy cannon, and for three weeks he besieged the city, in vain. Then he prepared to take it by assault. He divided his little army into four columns. He was to lead one down to Wolfe's cove[2] and along the St. Lawrence, while Arnold should lead another through the Lower Town, along the St. Charles, and join him in an attack upon Prescott gate,[3] for the purpose of forcing a passage into the city. At the same time two other columns, under Majors Livingston and Brown, were to make a feigned attack upon the Upper Town, from the Plains.



WALLS OF QUEBEC.

22. The assault ended in a disastrous failure. It was attempted just before dawn, on the 31st of December. A blinding snow-storm was raging. As Montgomery was moving along the St. Lawrence, at the foot of Cape Diamond,[4] a masked battery opened upon him. He was slain, and his troops were driven back. At about the same time, Arnold was wounded, and Captain Morgan took command. His troops were taken prisoners, and Arnold, with the remnant of the little army, abandoned the siege, and took a post a short distance up the river. In April, General Wooster came down from Montreal with some fresh troops, when another attempt was made to take Quebec. It

GENERAL MONTGOMERY.

1 Messengers are sent from army to army with a white flag, indicating a desire for a peaceful interview. These flags, by common consent, are respected, and it is considered an outrage to fire on the bearer of one. The Americans were regarded as rebels, and undeserving the usual courtesy.

2. Verse 39, page 110.

3. Prescott gate is on the St. Lawrence side of the town, and there bars Mountain street in its sinuous way from the water up into the walled city. The above diagram shows the plan of the city walls, and relative positions of the several gates mentioned. A is the St. Charles river, B the St. Lawrence, *a* Wolfe and Montcalm's monument (verse 40, page 110), *b* place where Montgomery fell, *c* place where Arnold was wounded.

4. A high, rocky promontory, on which the citadel stands.

QUESTIONS.—21. Relate the circumstances of the siege of Quebec. 22. What was the result? What can you tell of the attempt to take the place by storm? What was the final result?

failed; and, by the middle of June, the American patriots were driven out of Canada.

23. While the Americans in the north were suffering defeats and misfortunes, their Virginia brethren were engaged zealously in the good work of revolution. After his escape to the British man-of-war,[1] Governor Dunmore collected a force of Tories and negroes, and commenced depredations in Lower Virginia. He attacked Hampton [October 24, 1775], and was repulsed. He then declared open war. The Virginia militia flew to arms,[2] and, in a severe battle, at the Great Bridge, near the Dismal Swamp, twelve miles from Norfolk, he was defeated and driven to the British shipping in Norfolk harbor. In revenge, he burned that city on the 1st of January,[3] and committed other atrocities on the seaboard, when he was driven away, and returned to England.

CULPEPPER FLAG.

SECTION III.

SECOND YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE [1776].

1. On the 1st of January, 1776, the *Union flag*,[4] composed of thirteen stripes, alternate red and white, was first raised at Washington's headquarters at Cambridge, and was greeted with shouts by the army. That army was then less than ten thousand

1. Verse 15, page 134.

2. Among the various flags borne by the military companies, that of the men of Culpepper county was the most notable. It bore the significant device of a rattlesnake, and the injunction, *Don't tread on me!* It said to the opposer, Don't tread on me, I have dangerous fangs. It also bore the words of Patrick Henry (verse 15, page 134), *Liberty or Death!*

3. Norfolk then contained a population of about 6,000. The actual loss by the conflagration was estimated at more than $1,500,000, chiefly private property. Many slaves were carried off.

4. This was a flag composed of thirteen stripes, alternate red and white, symbolizing the thirteen revolted colonies. In one corner was the device on the British *Union flag*, namely, the cross of St. George, composed of a horizontal and perpendicular bar, and the cross of St. Andrew (representing Scotland), which is in the form of an X. This flag is represented in the sketch. On the 14th of June, 1777, Congress ordered "thirteen stars, white, in a blue field," to be put in the place of the British Union device. Such is the design of our flag at the present day. A star has been added for every new State admitted into the Union.

QUESTIONS.—23. What can you say about the Virginians? What can you tell about events in Lower Virginia?

strong, in effective men, and these were poorly fed, clothed, and disciplined. But they were sufficient to hold the British, prisoners in Boston,[1] with a firm grasp, while the *Continental Congress*[2] prepared measures for the great struggle at hand. They issued bills of credit, known as *Continental money*;[3] agreed to articles of war; declared the causes for taking up arms; commenced a naval establishment; appointed a board of war and finance; issued commissions to privateers, and sent an agent to Europe.

UNION FLAG.

A BILL OF CREDIT, OR CONTINENTAL MONEY.

2. The British Parliament, in the mean time, convinced of the earnestness of the Americans, made extensive arrangements for crushing the revolt. In November, 1775, that body declared the revolted colonists to be *rebels*; forbade all intercourse with them; authorized the destruction of their property on the high seas, and

1. Verse 17, page 135. 2. Verse 29, page 127.

3. At the beginning of 1780, Congress had issued two hundred millions of dollars in paper money. After the second year, these bills began to depreciate; and in 1780, forty paper dollars were worth only one in specie. At the close of 1781, they were worthless. They had performed a temporary good, but were finally productive of great public evil, and much individual suffering.

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell about the Union flag near Boston? What can you tell about the Continental army there? What did the Congress do? 2. What did the British Parliament believe and do?

placed the colonies under martial law.[1] Soldiers and seamen, to the number of fifty-five thousand men, were voted for service in America; and, in addition to these, seventeen thousand troops were hired by the British Government of the Prince of Hesse Cassel, and other petty German rulers, to assist in putting down the great insurrection.[2] This last-named act was properly denounced in Parliament, as "disgraceful to the British name."

3. The Americans now felt the necessity of striking an immediate and effective blow for their liberties. The Congress urged Washington to attack the British in Boston immediately. Having fourteen thousand troops on the 1st of March, he felt able to do so. On the evening of the 2d he opened a heavy cannonade upon the city, and on the night of the 4th, when it ceased, he sent General Thomas secretly, with a fatigue party, to cast up intrenchments on Dorchester Heights, south of Boston. The British were amazed, on the morning of the 5th, on seeing heavy cannon planted on that hill, commanding the town. They vainly endeavored to dislodge the Americans; and on the 17th, under an arrangement made with Washington, General Howe and his troops left the city by water. They sailed to Halifax, with the families of fifteen hundred Tories. The Congress gave Washington a gold medal for driving the British from Boston.

4. Early in January, Washington was informed that Sir Henry Clinton had sailed from Boston with troops. Rightly suspecting that he was going to attack New York, the commander-in-chief sent General Charles Lee thither, with orders to gather troops in Connecticut. Lee was able to encamp with twelve hundred men a short distance from the city, six weeks before the evacuation of Boston; and when Clinton appeared off New York, Lee was there

1. It places the military above the civil power for the time.
2. The landgrave (or petty prince) of Hesse Cassel, having furnished the most considerable portion of these troops, they were called by the general name of *Hessians*. Ignorant, brutal, and bloodthirsty, they were hated by the patriots, and despised even by the regular English army. They were always employed in posts of greatest danger, or in expeditions least creditable. These troops cost the British Government almost eight hundred thousand dollars, besides the necessity, according to the contract, of defending the little principalities thus stripped, against their foes.

QUESTIONS.—3. What necessity was imposed on the Americans? Relate the incidents of the siege of Boston. 4. What information did Washington receive? What did he do? Tell about Generals Lee and Clinton at New York.

Washington goes to New York. Clinton and Lee moving southward.

to meet him. The British general prudently withdrew and sailed southward.[1]

5. Washington suspected Howe had sailed for New York. After making Boston secure, he marched for the Hudson with the main body of his army, and reached New York at the middle of April. Lee, in the mean time, had been appointed to the command of the troops in the south, and was hastening toward the Carolinas, leaving the troops in New York [March 7] in command of Lord Stirling.[2] Washington proceeded at once to fortify the city, and cast up military works on the Hudson at the passes of the Highlands.

GENERAL LEE.

6. Clinton went down the southern coasts, closely watched by Lee, who was making his way by land. At the Cape Fear river[3] the former was joined by a fleet under Sir Peter Parker, just from England, and all sailed for Charleston. They arrived off the bar on the 4th of June, and Clinton landed with many troops on Long island, for the purpose of crossing a shallow strait to Sullivan's island, and attacking a small fort there.

GENERAL MOULTRIE.

7. The South Carolinians were ready to meet the invader. They had been cheered by a victory over armed Tories in North Carolina, and had pretty thoroughly fortified Charleston and its vicinity. On Sullivan's island, which commanded its harbor, they had erected a fort of palmetto logs and earth, and placed five hundred men in it, under the command of Colonel William Moul-

1. Before Lee's arrival, the *Sons of Liberty* (verse 7, page 118) in New York had seized the cannon at Fort George (on the site of the present Battery), and driven Tryon, the royal governor, on board a British armed vessel in the harbor.

2. William Alexander.

3. Verse 2, page 46.

QUESTIONS.—5. What can you tell about the movements of Washington? What did Lee do? 6. What can you tell of Clinton and Lee on the southern coast? What of the British fleet and army off Charleston? 7. What can you tell about the South Carolinians and their preparations?

trie. On the same day when Clinton landed on Long island, General Lee arrived at Charleston and assumed the chief command.

8. On the morning of the 28th of June, the British proceeded to make a combined attack, by land and water, upon the fort on Sullivan's island. It failed. Clinton's troops were kept from passing the shallow strait by a battery; and the fleet, which crossed the bar and commenced a furious attack on the fort,[1] was so terribly shattered by Moultrie's balls that, after a conflict of ten hours, and enduring dreadful slaughter,[2] the vessels that were able to do so withdrew, were repaired, and with the land troops sailed for New York toward the close of July. There was no more war below the Roanoke river[3] for two years.

9. A few days after the repulse of the British at Charleston, the CONTINENTAL CONGRESS, sitting in the State House in Philadelphia, performed a most important act. They had been for some time debating a proposition to declare the colonies free and independent of Great Britain. This grand idea had occupied the minds of the people for several months; and on the 7th of June, 1776, Richard Henry Lee, a delegate from Virginia, offered the following resolution: "*Resolved*, That these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved."

STATE HOUSE.

1. During the action, the staff, bearing a large flag, was cut down by a cannon-ball from the fleet. The colors fell outside the fort. A sergeant named Jasper leaped down from one of the bastions, and in the midst of the iron hail that was pouring from the fort, coolly picked up the flag, ascended to the bastion, and calling for a sponge-staff, tied the colors to it, stuck it in the sand, and then took his place among his companions in the fort. A few days afterward, Governor Rutledge took his own sword from his side, and presented it to the brave Jasper.

2. At one time every man but Admiral Parker was swept from the deck of his vessel. Among those who were badly wounded, was Lord William Campbell, the royal governor of South Carolina. He afterward died of his wounds.

QUESTIONS.—8. Give an account of the attack of the British on the defenses of Charleston, and the result. 9. What did the Continental Congress now do?

10. Lee's resolution was opposed by some because it seemed premature, and by others who trembled at its aspect of treason. After some debate it was postponed until the 2d of July, and a committee were appointed [June 11] to draw up a Declaration of Independence in accordance with the resolution. It was written by Thomas Jefferson, the chairman of the committee; and, after slight amendments by Adams and Franklin, was reported on the 2d of July. On that day the resolution was passed, and the Declaration was adopted on the 4th, when it was signed by John Hancock, the president of Congress, only, and thus sent out to the world.[1] Then the colonies, prepared for a permanent union, assumed the title, as a nation, of THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA. Each was independent, but not sovereign, for all acknowledged allegiance to the general government vested in the Continental Congress.

JOHN HANCOCK.

11. When the Declaration of Independence was proclaimed, a formidable display of British power, intended for the subjugation of the colonies, was seen near New York. General Howe arrived there with troops from Halifax[2] at the close of June, and on the 2d of July took possession of Staten island.[3] There he was joined on the 12th by his brother, Admiral Lord Howe, with a fleet and troops directly from England; and on the first of August by Sir Henry Clinton from the south.[4] Some of the Hessians[5]

1. This document, containing the autographs of those venerated fathers of our republic, is carefully preserved in a glass case, in the rooms of the *National Institute* at Washington city. That band of patriots long ago departed. Charles Carroll was the last to leave us. He died in 1832, at the age of ninety years. It is worthy of remembrance that *not one* of all those signers of the Declaration of Independence died with a tarnished reputation. The memory of *all* is sweet. Washington caused it to be read at the head of each brigade of the army, then in New York city, on the 9th of July. That night citizens and soldiers pulled down the leaden equestrian statue of George III.; which stood in the Bowling Green, and it was soon afterward converted into bullets for the use of the Continental army. The statue was gilded.

2. Verse 3, page 140.

3. This large island, embracing the whole county of Richmond, forms the lower boundary of the bay of New York. Between it and Long island is the chief southern entrance to the bay from the ocean, called the Narrows.

4. Verse 8, page 142.

5. Note 2, page 140.

QUESTIONS.—10. What can you tell about the Declaration of Independence? 11. What was the position of the British at that time? Tell about their gathering near New York. What was their object?

had also arrived; and early in August, not less than thirty thousand troops, many of them veterans, were menacing New York, then defended by seventeen thousand men, mostly militia.[1] The object of the foe was to secure New York and the line of the Hudson river, and separate the New England from the other colonies.

12. Admiral and General Howe were jointly commissioned to treat for peace with the Americans, on the terms of the absolute submission of the colonies. Of course these were rejected, and the invaders prepared to fight. On the 22d of August [1776] the British landed ten thousand troops and forty pieces of cannon on the west end of Long island. General Sullivan[2] was then with a few troops in a fortified camp at Brooklyn, opposite New York, and was immediately reënforced by a considerable body of soldiers under the veteran General Putnam, who took the chief command. The whole number of American troops on Long island was then about five thousand.

GENERAL PUTNAM.

13. The British marched to attack the Americans at Brooklyn, in three columns. The right, under General Grant, took the road along the shore from the Narrows. The left, under Generals Clinton and Cornwallis[3] marched well in the interior; and the centre, composed chiefly of Hessians,[4] under De Heister, proceeded just beyond the hills which extend from the Narrows to Jamaica, and halted at Flatbush.

14. Early in the morning of the 27th [August], Clinton, by a

1. There were about 27,000 men enrolled, but not more than 17,000 men were fit for duty. A great many were sick, and a large number were without arms. Many of the British ships passed through the Narrows, and anchored in the bay. Howe's flag-ship, the *Eagle*, lay near Governor's island. While in that position, a bold soldier went in a submarine vessel, with a machine for blowing up a ship, and endeavored to fasten it to the bottom of the *Eagle*, but failed. He was discovered, and barely escaped. An explosion took place near the *Eagle*, and she was hastily moved farther down the bay. This machine was called a *torpedo*.
2. Note 1, page 135.
3. Verse 9, page 131.
4. Note 2, page 140.

QUESTIONS.—12. What can you tell of peace commissioners? Tell about the movements of the British on Long island. What was the position of the Americans at Brooklyn? 13. What was the order of the British march against the Americans?

quick movement, gained a pass in the hills toward Jamaica, and at the same time Grant and De Heister advanced. The former met Lord Stirling with the American right, at the site of Greenwood Cemetery, and the latter was confronted by Sullivan on the left, near the Flatbush pass. A bloody conflict ensued, which ended in the total defeat of the Americans. Clinton had pressed forward by way of Bedford, and falling upon Sullivan, cut off his retreat to his camp, and compelled him to surrender.[1]

BATTLE OF LONG ISLAND.

At the same time Cornwallis swept down upon Stirling's flank at Gowanus, and he, too, was compelled to surrender, after a desperate conflict. The loss of the Americans, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, was about sixteen hundred. That of the British was three hundred and sixty-seven.[2]

15. During the action near Brooklyn, Washington was in New York, with troops too few to allow him to send aid to their suffering brethren. Early the following morning, General Mifflin came from Harlem with a thousand soldiers, and with these the commander-in-chief crossed to the Brooklyn camp, where a remnant of the army lay, utterly helpless against the victorious foe. But Howe was exceedingly cautious, and dared not attack these lines without the cooperation of his ships. While waiting for them to come up, his intended prey escaped.

16. Washington had penetrated Howe's design, and instantly conceived a plan for the withdrawal of his army. Toward midnight they were moved silently to the water's edge, and crossed over, under cover of the darkness and a thick fog in the morning, carrying everything with them excepting their heavy cannon.[3]

1. Some of the American troops fought their way through and gained their camp, but a large portion were made prisoners.

2. The Americans had five hundred killed and wounded, and eleven hundred made prisoners. The latter were soon suffering dreadful horrors in prisons and prison-ships in and around New York.

3. During the night, a woman living near the present Fulton ferry, where the Americans

QUESTIONS.—14. Give an account of the attack of British and Hessians, and the result. What did Cornwallis do? What was the result of the battle? 15. What can you tell of Washington and his movements? What was the position of affairs at Brooklyn after the battle? 16. Give an account of the retreat of the Americans from Brooklyn.

The British commander was greatly astonished and chagrined, when the fog rolled away on the morning of the 29th, to find the camp before him deserted, and the little American army safely in New York. He at once prepared to cross and attack them before they should be reënforced or escape from the island.

17. Washington's army, after the retreat from Long island, was little better than a half-organized mob. Troops from different sections[1] quarreled, and insubordination was the rule. Disheartened by disaster, hundreds deserted; and the hopeful mind of Washington was clouded with gloomy forebodings during much of the month of September. At a council of war, on the 12th, it was determined to send the military stores in New York to a secure place on the Hudson at Dobb's Ferry,[2] and to withdraw to and fortify Harlem Heights, on the upper end of York or Manhattan island. When, on the 15th, a strong detachment of the British crossed the East river at the present Thirty-fourth street, a greater portion of the Americans were on Harlem Heights.

18. On the following day the British moved forward to attack Washington in his new camp. They were met on Harlem Plains, and a severe skirmish ensued. The Americans were victorious; and before the British could recover from the check, the lines on Harlem Heights were strong enough to defy the whole British army.[3] Howe therefore determined to make a flank movement, and gain Washington's rear. He sent vessels up the Hudson, to cut off communication with New Jersey, and with a greater part of his army (now reënforced from England) he went up the East river, and landed on the main in Westchester county.

---

embarked, sent her negro servant to inform the British of the movement. The negro fell into the hands of the Hessians. They could not understand a word of his language, and detained him until so late in the morning that his information was of no avail.

1. The army, which at first consisted chiefly of New England people, had been reënforced by others from New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, and Virginia, all of them jealous of their respective claims to precedence, etc.

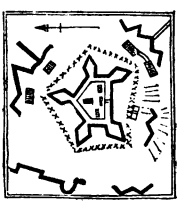
2. Twenty-two miles from New York.

3. Wishing to ascertain the exact condition of the British army, Washington engaged Captain Nathan Hale, of Knowlton's regiment, to visit their camps on Long island. He was caught, taken to Howe's headquarters at New York, and executed as a spy by the brutal provost-marshal, Cunningham. He was not allowed to have a Bible nor clergyman during his last hours, nor to send letters to friends. His fate and André's have been compared.

Questions.—16. How was the British commander affected? What did he do? 17. What have you to say concerning Washington's army after the retreat from Long island? What was done? 18. What can you tell of movements near Harlem? Where were the Americans strongly encamped? What did General Howe do?

19. When Washington was informed of Howe's movements, he placed a strong garrison in Fort Washington, under Colonel Magaw, and with the remainder of his army hastened across the Harlem river to confront Howe. They met and fought severely at White Plains on the 28th of October. The Americans were driven to the hills of North Castle, five miles farther north, whither the British dared not follow, and from which, on the 4th of November, Washington made a safe passage of the Hudson with a greater part of his army, and joined General Greene at Fort Lee, on the New Jersey shore.

20. This movement was made by Washington to prevent an invasion of New Jersey by the foe, and his march upon Philadelphia, the seat of the infant national government.[1] It invited Howe back to York island. He sent General Knyphausen, just arrived with fresh Hessian troops,[2] to attack Fort Washington. He captured it after a loss of one thousand men. More than two thousand Americans were made prisoners; and with their fellow captives taken on Long island,[3] they suffered the horrors of the loathsome prisons and prison-ships.[4]

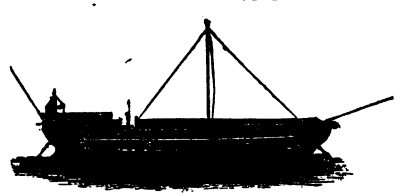


FORT WASHINGTON.

21. Two days after the fall of Fort Washington [November 18, 1776], Cornwallis,[5] with six thousand British troops, crossed

1. Verse 9, page 142. 2. Note 2, page 140. 3. Verse 14, page 145.

4. Nothing could exceed the horrors of these crowded prisons, as described by an eye-witness. The sugar-houses of New York, being large, were used for the purpose, and therein scores suffered and died. But the most terrible scenes occurred on board several old hulks, which were anchored in the waters around New York, and used for prisoners. Of these, the *Jersey*, was the most famous for the sufferings it contained, and the brutality of its officers. From these vessels, anchored near the present Navy Yard at Brooklyn, almost eleven thousand victims were carried ashore during the war, and buried in shallow graves in the sand. Their remains were gathered in 1808, and put in a vault situated near the termination of Front street, at Hudson avenue, Brooklyn.



THE JERSEY PRISON-SHIP.

5. Verse 9, page 131.

QUESTIONS.—19. What movement did Washington make? What can you tell of a battle at White Plains? What can you tell of Washington's retreat and passage of the Hudson? 20. What was the object of Washington's movement? Relate the circumstances of the capture of Fort Washington. What can you tell about prisons and prison-ships?

the Hudson at Dobb's Ferry,[1] and took possession of Fort Lee, which the Americans abandoned on his approach, leaving behind them their baggage and stores. For three weeks afterward, Washington and his shattered army were flying before the victors across New Jersey, in the direction of Philadelphia; and when, on the 8th of December, he reached the Delaware and crossed it, he had less than three thousand effective men, most of whom were ill fed and ill clothed.

www.libtool.com.cn

22. Howe, in the mean time, was moving slowly and cautiously. He was alarmed at the impetuosity of Cornwallis; and when that officer asked permission to construct boats, cross the Delaware, annihilate the Continental army, and seize Philadelphia, his timid chief refused, and bade him wait until the river should be sufficiently frozen over for the passage of his army. Troops were posted at Trenton and other places on the Delaware, and Cornwallis impatiently awaited at Princeton and New Brunswick the coming of the dilatory frost.

23. Washington profited by this delay. The arrival of fresh troops and the enlistment of recruits placed an army of almost five thousand men at his disposal on Christmas day.[2] He had planned an aggressive movement, and on Christmas night he performed it. In the darkness and a storm of sleet he crossed the river among floating ice, with twenty-four hundred men, accompanied by Generals Greene and Sullivan. Early the next morning [December 26, 1776] he fell suddenly upon the foe at Trenton, capturing a thousand Hessians,[3] with arms and stores.[4] Thinking it imprudent to remain on the New Jersey shore, Washington immediately recrossed the Delaware with his prisoners and spoils.

1. Note 2, page 146.
2. Recruits were obtained by the offer of liberal bounties, as well as appeals to patriotism. Each soldier was to have a bounty of twenty dollars, besides an allotment of land at the close of the war. A common soldier was to have one hundred acres, and a colonel five hundred. These were given to those only who enlisted to serve "during the war."
3. Colonel Ralle, the Hessian commander, was killed.
4. Five hundred British cavalry at Trenton barely escaped, and fled to Burlington.

QUESTIONS.—21. What can you tell about the British crossing the Hudson? What can you tell of Washington's flight across New Jersey? 22. What can you tell about Howe's caution? What was the disposition of British troops in New Jersey? 23. How did Washington profit by General Howe's delay? What can you tell about the recruiting of his army? What measure did he plan? Can you give an account of the crossing of the Delaware and the capture of Trenton?

Effects of the battle of Trenton. Movements of the Americans. Position of the armies.

24. This victory elated the Americans and alarmed the British. Fourteen hundred soldiers, whose terms of enlistment would expire with the year, cheerfully agreed to remain six months longer. The gloom was lifted from the public heart, and hope filled every patriot's soul. The British were atonished. Their dream of the speedy end of the rebellion, was broken.[1] Their contempt for "rebels" was changed to respect and fear. The Congress, who had fled from Philadelphia to Baltimore [December 12] on the approach of the enemy,[2] perceiving the necessity of giving the commander-in-chief greater powers, wisely clothed [December 27] Washington with the strength and independence of a *dictator*, for six months.

BATTLE AT TRENTON.

25. Encouraged by his success at Trenton, Washington resolved to continue his aggressive movements. He ordered General Heath to march most of his troops at Peekskill[3] into New Jersey, and directed the new recruits to keep up an annoying warfare against the British outposts. In the mean time, Washington crossed the Delaware with his main army, and took post at Trenton, while the British and Hessians were gathering in large numbers at Princeton, only two miles distant, under Cornwallis. Such was the position and condition of the two main armies at the close of the second year of the war.

SECTION IV.

THIRD YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE [1777].

1. During a greater part of the year 1776, the British Government, failing, apparently, to comprehend the depths of the move-

1. When Washington fled across the Delaware, the British commanders believed the rebellion was at an end, and Cornwallis returned to New York to embark for England. Washington's sudden blow at Trenton caused Howe to order Cornwallis back with reënforcements, to regain what had been lost.
2. A committee to represent Congress was left in Philadelphia, who coöperated with Washington. Congress assembled at Baltimore on the 20th of December.
3. A village at the lower entrance to the Hudson Highlands.

QUESTIONS.—24. What were the effects of this victory? What did the Continental Congress do? 25. What did Washington now do? What was the relative position of the two armies at the close of 1776?

ment in America, showed very little concern. Troops had been sent to crush the rebellion, and they were satisfied that the work would be done. When the Parliament assembled in October, the king congratulated them on the success of the royal arms; and when they had voted more troops and supplies, they adjourned to keep the Christmas holidays, satisfied that when they should reassemble in January, they would be informed of the complete submission of the American colonies. At that very time Washington was planning his brilliant achievement on the Delaware.[1]

2. The members of the American Congress, on the contrary, were hard workers, and fully conscious of the great interests at stake in the struggle. Their perpetual session was marked by perpetual labor. As early as March, 1776, they sent Silas Deane, of Connecticut, to France, as agent of the Congress, to solicit coöperation, well knowing that France, Spain, and Holland would gladly see the pride of haughty Britain humbled. Deane was successful. He obtained from France arms and money, and cordial sympathy from all. After the Declaration of Independence, a regular embassy to France was appointed [September 22], and agents were sent to other courts. They took measures for the establishment of a National League, which, after more than two years' consideration, was adopted by the Congress as a form of government, under the title of *Articles of Confederation*.[2]

SILAS DEANE.

1. Verse 23, page 148.

2. In July, 1775, Dr. Franklin submitted a plan of union to Congress. On the 11th of June, 1776, a committee was appointed to draw up a plan. Their report was laid aside, and not called up until April, 1777. From that time until the 15th of November following, the subject was debated two or three times a week, when thirteen *Articles of Confederation* were adopted. The substance was that the thirteen confederated States should be known as the *United States of America*; that all engage in a reciprocal treaty of alliance and friendship, for mutual advantage, each to assist the other when help should be needed; that each State should have the right to regulate its own internal affairs; that no State should separately send or receive embassies, begin any negotiations, contract engagements or alliances, or conclude treaties with any foreign power, without the consent of the general Congress; that no public officer should be allowed to accept any presents, emoluments, office, or title from any foreign power; and that neither Congress nor State Governments should possess the power to confer any title of nobility; that none of the States should have the right to form alliances among themselves, without the consent of Congress; that they should not have the power to

Questions.—1. What can you say of the unconcern of the British Government? What was Washington then doing? 2. What can you tell of the doings of the American Congress? What steps did they take for the friendship of foreign Governments, and the establishment of a National League?

3. We left Washington at Trenton, clothed with the powers of a dictator.[1] There, on the night of the first of January, 1777, he was joined by some troops under Generals Mifflin and Cadwallader; and yet his effective force did not exceed five thousand men. Toward evening the next day, Cornwallis approached from Princeton with a strong force, and the two armies encamped on opposite sides of a small stream, in Trenton, within pistol-shot of each other.

DR. FRANKLIN.

4. Cornwallis went to sleep feeling certain of the capture of Washington and his army in the morning. At dawn [January 3, 1777], the British commander found the American camp deserted; and at sunrise he heard what seemed like the rumbling of thunder in the direction of Princeton. Washington, fully aware of his perilous situation, had silently left his camp at midnight, and it was the thunder of his cannon, in an attack on the British reserves at Princeton, that Cornwallis heard. These were just moving forward toward Trenton when Washington fell upon them.

BATTLE AT PRINCETON.

5. The fight at Princeton was severe. The British turned fiercely upon the Americans with a shout that frightened the militia and caused them to flee. The British pursued, expecting a complete rout of Washington's army, when they were

levy duties contrary to the enactments of Congress; that no State should keep up a standing army or ships of war, in time of peace, beyond the amount stipulated by Congress; that when any of the States should raise troops for the common defense, all the officers of the rank of colonel and under, should be appointed by the legislature of the State, and the superior officers by Congress; that all the expenses of the war should be paid out of the public treasury; that Congress alone should have power to coin money, and that Canada might at any time be admitted to the confederacy when she felt disposed. The last clauses were explanatory of the power of certain governmental operations, and contained details of the same. Such was the form of government which existed as the basis of our Republic for almost twelve years.

1. Verse 24, page 149.

QUESTIONS.—3. Relate what occurred at Trenton at the beginning of 1777. 4. What were Cornwallis's expectations? How did Washington disappoint him? Give an account of Washington's withdrawal to Princeton?

met by a select corps of veterans, led by the commander-in-chief in person. The fugitives were soon rallied, the pursuers were assailed, and a decided victory was won by the Americans. General Hugh Mercer was slain while fighting at the head of his troops; and other beloved officers fell. The battle had just ended, when Cornwallis, who had hastened back from Trenton,[1] appeared. Washington's soldiers had not slept, and had scarcely tasted food, for thirty-six hours. They were unable to fight again so soon; so the chief led them away, and took post among the hills of East Jersey.[2]

6. Washington established his headquarters at Morristown, and placed cantonments[3] at different points from Princeton to the Hudson Highlands. He sent out detachments to harass the British continually; and so successful was this kind of guerilla warfare, that by the 1st of March [1777], there was not an armed foe to be found in New Jersey, excepting at New Brunswick and Amboy. This result revived the drooping spirits of the Americans; caused hundreds in New Jersey, who had been deceived by a proclamation by Howe, to openly espouse the Whig[4] cause; and inspired the Congress with sufficient confidence in the future to cause them to resume their sittings in Philadelphia.[5]

7. The summer campaign of 1777 was not fairly opened before June. Both parties set small detachments in motion in the mean time. One went up from the British camp at New York to destroy the American stores at Peekskill[6] in charge of General McDougall. That officer could not defend them, so he burned them [March 23, 1777], and fled to the hills. At the middle of April, Cornwallis went up the Raritan and fell upon General Lincoln, at Boundbrook, in New Jersey, but with little effect; and toward the close of the month, Governor Tryon, at the head of two thousand British and Tories, went up Long Island sound to desolate the Connecticut coast.

1. Verse 8, page 151.
2. Verse 4, page 82.
3. Permanent stations for small bodies of troops.
4. Note 2, page 127.
5. Verse 24, page 149.
6. Note 3, page 149.

QUESTIONS.—5. What can you tell of the battle of Princeton? What did Washington then do, and why? 6. How did Washington dispose of his army? What did his troops do? What effect did the successes of the Americans have? 7. What can you tell of the opening of the summer campaign? What can you tell of operations on the Hudson, and in New Jersey?

8. Tryon landed near Norwalk, and marched to Danbury and destroyed it. This outrage roused the neighboring militia, and the British retreated with great haste the next morning [April 27, 1777], by way of Ridgefield, when they were attacked by the yeomanry under Generals Wooster, Arnold, and Silliman. Wooster was killed, Arnold narrowly escaped capture, while Silliman harassed the enemy all the way back to his shipping. During this marauding expedition, Tryon lost almost three hundred men, and killed or wounded about half that number of Americans.

9. The British were not always the aggressors. At two o'clock in the morning of the 23d of May [1777], one hundred and seventy men, under Colonel Meigs, who had crossed Long Island sound from Connecticut, attacked a British provision post at Sag Harbor, on the eastern extremity of Long island. They burned a dozen vessels, the store-houses and their contents, and returned with ninety prisoners, without losing a man. An equally bold exploit was performed on Rhode Island soon afterward. On the night of the 10th of July, Colonel William Barton, with some men in whale-boats, crossed Narraganset bay, went silently to the quarters of General Prescott, the British commander there, took him from his bed, and carried him away a prisoner.

10. Washington remained at Morristown until the close of May, preparing his army for the campaign.[1] Recruits had come in freely; and he found himself in command of about ten thousand men. He refrained from moving, for some time, because he was perplexed by the operations of the enemy. He knew that Burgoyne was preparing to invade the valley of the Hudson from Canada, but whether Howe intended to coöperate with him, or make another attempt to seize Philadelphia, he could not determine. He disposed his army so as to be prepared to oppose either movement, by placing a strong force on the Hudson, and

1. He had caused a greater part of his army to be inoculated with the small-pox. The common practice of vaccination at the present day, was then unknown in the country. Indeed, the attention of Jenner, the father of the practice, had then just been turned to the subject. It was practiced here a year after the close of the war.

Questions.—8. What did troops under Tryon do in Connecticut? Tell about the battle at Ridgefield. What were Tryon's losses? 9. What can you tell of Colonel Meigs's expedition to Long island, and of Colonel Barton's capture of General Prescott? 10. How long did Washington remain at Morristown, and for what purpose? What was the strength of his army? How was he perplexed? What did he do?

moving his main body to Middlebrook, within ten miles of the British at New Brunswick.

11. Howe's plans were developed toward the middle of June. He led his main army from New York to New Brunswick, and, by a feigned movement, on the 14th [June, 1777], he tried to draw Washington into battle, but failed. Then he suddenly retreated, and Washington pursued. Howe as suddenly turned and became the aggressor. A sharp skirmish ensued on the 26th between Cornwallis and Lord Stirling; and a few days afterward [June 30], the British all left New Jersey.

12. Washington's vigilance never slept. When, at the middle of July, information reached him that Burgoyne was in possession of Crown Point and Ticonderoga,[1] he saw indications of an ascent of the Hudson by a land and naval force, to coöperate with him; but ten days afterward he ascertained that Howe, with a large force, had sailed with his brother's fleet[2] for the Delaware. Washington at once set his main army in motion toward the Delaware, and was soon in Philadelphia, where he was joined by the marquis de Lafayette, a wealthy French nobleman, less than twenty years of age, who had come to assist the Americans struggling for freedom.

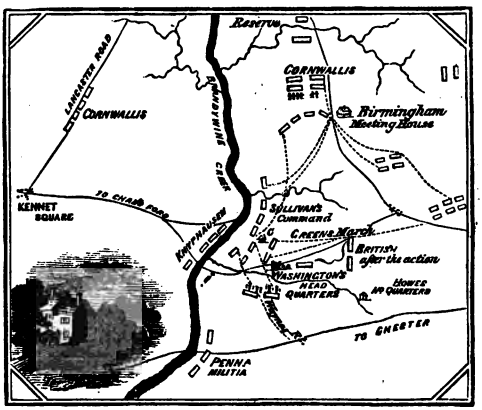
GENERAL LAFAYETTE.

13. Howe did not go up the Delaware, but ascended Chesapeake bay, debarked at its head, and pushed on toward Philadelphia. Washington marched to meet him, and had advanced beyond the Brandywine creek, when Howe's superior forces compelled him to fall back to the east side of it. There, at Chad's Ford, he made a stand and fought a severe battle. Knyphausen and his Hessians attacked the American left wing, commanded by Washington in person, while Howe and Cornwallis crossed the

1. Burgoyne's army consisted of about seven thousand British and German troops, and a large body of Canadians and Indians.
2. Verse 11, page 143.

QUESTIONS.—11. What can you tell of Howe's movements? 12. What can you tell of Washington's vigilance and observation? What did he do? Who joined him at Philadelphia? 13. What can you tell of Howe's expedition against Philadelphia, and of Washington's movements to meet him? Give an account of the battle on the Brandywine, and retreat of the Americans.

stream several miles above, and fell upon the American right, commanded by Sullivan, near the Birmingham meeting-house. The battle continued until evening; and that night the shattered and defeated American army retreated to Chester, and the following day to Philadelphia. The patriots lost full twelve hundred men, killed, wounded, and made prisoners.



BATTLE AT THE BRANDYWINE.

14. Washington remained in Philadelphia only long enough for his troops to rest, when he crossed the Schuylkill to meet Howe, who was advancing upon that city. They had a skirmish twenty miles west of Philadelphia, but a heavy rain prevented a general battle, and Washington fell back to Reading. General Wayne, in the mean time, was hanging upon the enemy's rear, with fifteen hundred men. He was surprised on the night of the 20th by a party under General Grey, and lost about three hundred men.[1]

15. After various maneuvers, Howe crossed the Schuylkill, and took possession of Philadelphia on the 26th of September [1777]. He encamped his army at Germantown, and prepared to make the federal city[2] the winter quarters for his troops. The

1. The bodies of fifty-three Americans, found on the field the next morning, were interred in one broad grave; and forty years afterward, the "Republican Artillerists" of Chester county erected a neat marble monument over them.

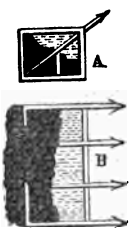
2. While the States formed a simple league in carrying on the war and battling for their individual and aggregate independence, and during the period when the *Articles of Confederation* (note 2, page 150) were the organic law of the land, the term federal city, or capital of the confederated States, was a proper one. After the league was abandoned, and a Nation was formed under the new Constitution in 1789, the term was no longer correct. Then it became the seat of a National Government—the national city. Philadelphia, New York, and Washington have been, respectively, national cities, where the Congress of the United States have held their sessions.

QUESTIONS.—14. What did Washington do at Philadelphia? What befell troops under General Wayne? 15. Give an account of Howe's taking Philadelphia. Where did he encamp his army? What did Congress do?

Congress had fled, first to Lancaster, and then to York, where they assembled on the 30th, and continued their sittings until the following summer.

www.libtool.com.cn

16. While Howe was making his way to Philadelphia, by land, the British fleet sailed round to the Delaware, and appeared before the obstructions in and on the banks of that river, a few miles below Philadelphia. Fort Mercer was on the New Jersey shore, Fort Mifflin on the Pennsylvania shore, and heavy *chevaux-de-frise*[1] were in the channel of the river. Howe sent land troops to coöperate with the fleet in an attack. The obstructions were overcome at the middle of November, and the ships sailed [November 18, 1777] up to Philadelphia.



CHEVAUX-DE-FRISE.

17. Washington did not allow Howe to rest long at Germantown and Philadelphia. On the evening of the 3d of October he moved secretly against the British camp, and fell upon its outposts near Chestnut Hill,[2] at daylight. The battle soon became general, and after a struggle of several hours, partly in the gloom of a thick fog, the Americans were repulsed with a loss in killed, wounded, and prisoners, of about twelve hundred.[3] The British lost about half that number. Washington retired to his camp on Skippack creek, and soon prepared to go into winter quarters at White Marsh, fourteen miles from Philadelphia. Howe took his

BATTLE AT GERMANTOWN.

1. *Chevaux-de-frise* are obstructions placed in river channels to prevent the passage of vessels. They are generally made of a series of heavy timbers, pointed with iron, and secured at an angle in a strong frame filled with stones, as seen in the engraving. The upper figure shows the position under water—the lower one shows how the timbers are arranged, and the stones placed in them.

2. About three miles beyond Germantown, on the road from Philadelphia.

3. Washington felt certain of victory at the beginning of the battle. Just as it commenced, a dense fog overspread the country; and through the inexperience of some of his troops, great confusion in their movements was produced. A false rumor caused a panic among the Americans, just as the British were about to fall back, and a general retreat and loss of victory were the result. In Germantown, a strong stone house is yet [1864] standing, which belonged to Judge Chew. This a part of the enemy occupied, and from the windows fired with deadly effect upon the Americans.

QUESTIONS.—16. What can you tell of the movements of the British fleet? Can you give an account of the obstructions in the Delaware, and the capture of Forts Mifflin and Mercer? 17. What can you tell of a battle at Germantown, and its results?

army into that city, and there he remained until the following spring.

18. While the Americans were suffering disasters near the Delaware, important events were occurring on the Hudson river and Lake Champlain. With more than ten thousand men under his command, Burgoyne[1] drove General St. Clair from Ticonderoga [July 2, 1777], over Mount Independence opposite, and through the hill-country in the direction of Fort Edward,[2] the headquarters of General Schuyler,[3] the commander of the Northern Department. The British pursued by land and water. At Hubbardton, in Vermont, the rear division of St. Clair's army were defeated with considerable loss, and on the same day a British flotilla destroyed boat-loads of ammunition and stores, which St. Clair had sent up the lake; and soldiers went ashore and set fire to other supplies at Skenesborough.[4]

19. The fragments of St. Clair's army reached Fort Edward on the 12th of July. Within a week the Americans had lost almost two hundred pieces of artillery and a large amount of provisions and stores. Even with St. Clair's reënforcements, Schuyler could not muster more than four thousand effective men. He could not hope, with these, to confront the victorious Burgoyne successfully; so, after felling trees in the invader's path, and destroying all the bridges, he slowly retreated down the Hudson valley to the mouth of the Mohawk river, and there established a fortified camp.[5] There he was joined by a large body of New England militia, under

KOSCIUSZKO.

1. Verse 12, page 154. 2. Verse 14, page 100. 3. Verse 18, page 135.

4. Now Whitehall. It was named after Philip Skene, who settled there in 1764. The narrow part of Lake Champlain, from Ticonderoga to Whitehall, was formerly called *Wood Creek* (the name of the stream that enters the lake at Whitehall), and also *South River*.

5. Thaddeus Kosciuszko, a Polish refugee, who came with Lafayette (verse 12, page 154), was now attached to Schuyler's army, as engineer. Under his direction, the intrenchments at the mouth of the Mohawk river were constructed; also those at Stillwater and Saratoga. The camp at the mouth of the Mohawk was upon islands just below the Great, or Cohoes Falls.

QUESTIONS.—18. What can you tell about movements on the Hudson river and Lake Champlain? What can you tell of Burgoyne's invasion? 19. Where did the remains of St. Clair's army retreat to? What had the Americans lost? What was the condition of the army? What can you tell of its retreat, and Burgoyne's pursuit? Give an account of affairs at the mouth of the Mohawk.

General Lincoln, and other recruits; and when General Gates arrived to take command of the department, he found an army of thirteen thousand men ready to move.

20. Burgoyne reached Fort Edward on the 30th of July [1777], with a wearied army and a light supply of provisions. He sent a foraging expedition eastward, with special instructions to seize American stores at Bennington, in Vermont. Colonel John Stark and New Hampshire militia met them [August 16, 1777] five miles from Bennington, and drove them back after a sharp fight; and on the same day Colonel Seth Warner,[1] and some Continental troops, defeated another invading party. That night Burgoyne had about one thousand less men to feed.[2] This defeat was fatal to his future operations, for it dispirited his troops and caused great delay.

21. While Burgoyne was sweeping down from the north, some Canadians, Tories,[3] and Indians, under Colonel St. Leger, assisted by Brant, John Johnson,[4] and John Butler, threatened the Mohawk valley. They invested Fort Schuyler (now Rome) on the 3d of August. General Herkimer hastened to its relief with some militia, and at Oriskany, on his way, fell into an Indian ambuscade. He was mortally wounded, and his troops defeated. A part of the garrison, under Colonel Willett, fought their way through the assailants, and the timely arrival of Arnold, with troops, saved the post, and dispersed [August 22] the besiegers.

JOSEPH BRANT.

1. Verse 7, page 131.
2. The American loss was about two hundred. For his gallantry on that occasion, Stark, who had been a captain in the French and Indian war, was made a brigadier-general.
3. Note 2, page 127.
4. Son of Sir William Johnson (verse 14, page 100), then dead. Johnson's family were the worst enemies of the Americans during the war, in that region. His son, John, raised a regiment of Tories, called the *Johnson Greens* (those who joined St. Leger); and John Butler, a cruel leader, was at the head of another band, called *Butler's Rangers*. These cooperated with Brant, the great Mohawk sachem, and for years they made the Mohawk valley and vicinity a scene of terror. These men were the allies of St. Leger on the occasion in question.

QUESTIONS.—20. What can you tell of the British at Fort Edward, and a foraging expedition? Can you give an account of the defeat of the British near Bennington? What were Burgoyne's losses? 21. What can you tell of an attack on Fort Schuyler? How was it relieved?

22. The expulsion of St. Leger increased Burgoyne's perplexities. He could not advance, retreat, nor remain inactive, in safety. He formed a fortified camp on the hills at Saratoga, while Gates did the same thing on Bemis's Heights, near Stillwater, to which he had advanced. Burgoyne came forward and gave battle on the 19th of September. He was repulsed, and fell back to Saratoga.[1] Gates soon advanced, and they had another severe conflict at Saratoga on the 7th of October. Ten days afterward [October 17, 1777] Burgoyne and his whole army were compelled to surrender themselves prisoners of war.[2]

www.libtool.com.cn

GENERAL BURGOYNE.

BEMIS'S HEIGHTS.

23. This victory produced great joy in America. The highest hopes of the British ministry rested on this campaign of Burgoyne, and their disappointment was intense. The opposition in Parliament were furnished with keen weapons. Pitt eloquently denounced [December 1777] the employment of German hirelings and brutal savages. "If I were an American, as I am an Englishman," he exclaimed, "while a foreign troop was landed in my country, I never would lay down my arms—never, never, never!" In the Lower House, Burke, Fox, and Barrè were equally severe

1. It was an indecisive battle. Both parties claimed a victory. Burgoyne had been expecting a triumphant passage up the Hudson, by Sir Henry Clinton, in aid of his invasion, and now resolved to wait. But the disaffection of his Indians and Canadians, scarcity of provisions, and the rapidly increasing army of Gates, taught him that he must speedily fight or flee. The Indians had been disappointed in their expectations of blood and plunder; and now was their hunting season, when provisions must be secured for winter use. The Canadians saw nothing but defeat in the future, and left the army in whole companies.

2. The whole number surrendered was 5,791, of whom 2,412 were Germans or *Hessians* (note 2, page 140), under the chief command of the Baron Reidesel, whose wife accompanied him, and afterward wrote a very interesting account of her experience in America. Burgoyne had boasted that he would eat his Christmas dinner in Albany. He ate dinner there before Christmas, not as conqueror, but as prisoner. He was a guest at the table of General Schuyler. His troops were marched to Cambridge, with the view of sending them to Europe, but Congress thought it proper to retain them, and they were marched to the interior of Virginia.

QUESTIONS.—22. How were Burgoyne's perplexities increased? Give an account of the battles at Bemis's Heights and Saratoga. 23. What were the effects at home and abroad?

upon the Government. The victory also weighed heavily in favor of the Americans at the French court; and in less than three months after the surrender of Burgoyne, France formed an alliance with the United States [February 6, 1778], and publicly avowed it.

24. We have referred to Burgoyne's expectation of aid from General Clinton.[1] That commander tried to give it. He ascended the Hudson with a strong force, captured the Highland forts [October 6, 1776], and sent a marauding expedition above these mountain barriers, to devastate the country [October 13], and endeavor to draw off some of the patriot troops from Saratoga. They burned Kingston, and penetrated as far as Livingston's manor, in Columbia county. Informed of the surrender of Burgoyne, they hastily retreated, and Clinton and his army returned to New York. Some of Gates's troops now joined Washington at Whitemarsh. Howe made several attempts to entice the chief from his encampment, but without success. Finally Washington moved from that position [December 11], and went into winter quarters at the Valley Forge, where he might more easily afford protection to Congress at York,[2] and his stores at Reading. The events of that encampment at Valley Forge afford some of the gloomiest, as well as some of the most brilliant scenes in the records of American patriotism.

SECTION V.

FOURTH YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE [1778.]

1. The Valley Forge[3] was in the bosom of a rugged gorge on the banks of the Schuylkill, twenty miles north-west from Philadelphia. There the American army encamped during the severe

1. Note 1, page 159. 2. Verse 15, page 155.
3. There was a *forge* on a little stream that came down through a mountain gorge and emptied into the Schuylkill river. It was quite celebrated, and was called the Valley Forge. The village there bears that name.

Questions.—24. What can you tell of Clinton's efforts to aid Burgoyne? What outrages did the British commit? What can you tell of the armies of Washington and Howe, not far from Philadelphia? What can you say about the army at the Valley Forge?

winter of 1777 and 1778. The soldiers suffered from insufficient food, clothing, and shelter, yet, like their hopeful commander-in-chief, they never despaired of success in the good cause, nor murmured because of their hardships.[1] The intrigues of ambitious men did not disturb the serenity of Washington's mind,[2] nor did suffering and temptation cause a soldier's departure from duty. Both relied upon the Lord of Hosts.[3]

www.libtool.com.cn

2. It was not all gloom at the Valley Forge. Early in the spring, news came of the alliance with France,[4] and the camp was a scene of great joy. Mrs. Washington and the wives of a few other officers spent most of the winter at Valley Forge, and gave pleasure by their presence; and finally the troops were cheered by news that the British ministry had appointed commissioners to come to America and offer terms of reconciliation. The hopes inspired by the latter measure were soon dispelled, for when the conciliatory bills of Parliament reached the Congress, it was perceived that the commissioners had no authority to treat for the *independence* of the colonies. The overture was therefore rejected, and the war went on.

ENCAMPMENT AT VALLEY FORE.

3. Immediately after making the treaty with the United States,[5] the French Government sent a fleet, under the count

1. They were so ill-shod, that in their march from Whitemarsh to the Valley Forge, many of them left bloody foot-prints in the snow. At this time the British army were indulging in every comfort in Philadelphia. Yet that indulgence greatly weakened them. Profligacy begat disease, crime, and insubordination. The evil effects produced upon the army led Dr. Franklin to say, "Howe did not take Philadelphia—Philadelphia took Howe."

2. During this season a scheme was formed among a few officers of the army, and members of Congress, for depriving Washington of his command, and giving it to Gates or Lee. One of the chief actors in the plot was General Conway, an Irishman, who belonged to the Continental army. The plot was discovered and defeated, and Conway was led to make a most humble apology to Washington for his conduct.

3. On one occasion, Isaac Potts, whose house was Washington's headquarters at the Valley Forge, discovered the chief in a retired place, pouring out his soul in prayer to his God. Potts went to his wife and said, "If there is any one on this earth to whom the Lord will listen, it is George Washington."

4. Verse 23, page 159.

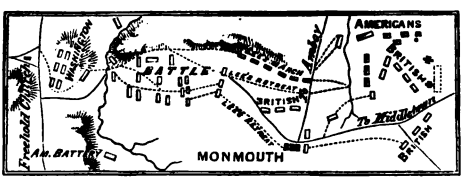
5. Verse 23, page 159.

QUESTIONS.—1. Where is Valley Forge? What events occurred there in the winter of 1777–'78? 2. What enlivened the camp? What can you tell of a proposed reconciliation?

D'Estaing, to aid the patriots.[1] This was officially made known to the British ministry on the 17th of March [1778]. It created alarm; and a dispatch vessel was sent with orders for the British army and navy to leave Philadelphia and the Delaware, and return to New York. Lord Howe had just obeyed the order, when D'Estaing appeared [July 8, 1778] in Delaware bay. The British fleet found safety in Amboy bay, into which the heavier French vessels could not enter.

4. Sir Henry Clinton succeeded Howe in chief command, in the spring of 1778, and on the 18th of June he crossed the Delaware with his whole army, and moved through New Jersey for New York. Washington left the Valley Forge at the same time, and pursued him vigorously with about twelve thousand men.[2] He overtook him near Monmouth Court House, and there, on a sultry Sabbath morning [June 28, 1778], a severe battle was fought. It was begun by the treacherous Charles Lee,[3] who had lately rejoined the army; and it was almost lost by his bad conduct. He and his troops were flying in a panic from the field, without reason, when Washington, advancing with the main army, checked them, and led them back to battle and honor.

GENERAL CLINTON.



BATTLE OF MONMOUTH.

5. The contest now became general, and raged during all of that long, hot summer's day. It ceased at night, and both parties lay upon their arms. After midnight, when the moon had set, Clinton and

1. It consisted of twelve ships of the line and four large frigates.
2. General Arnold, who was wounded in the leg at Bemis's Heights (verse 22, page 159), was, at his own solicitation, left in command at Philadelphia, as military governor.
3. Verse 5, page 141. There are proofs of his treason.

QUESTIONS.—3. What did the French Government do? How did their act affect the British? What can you tell about the escape of the British fleet from capture by that of the French? 4. What change was made in British commanders? What movement did Clinton make? What can you tell of Washington's movements? Can you give an account of the battle of Monmouth?

his army stole away in silence, escaped to the British fleet, and found rest and safety in New York. Washington marched his troops slowly to the Hudson river, crossed it, and lay in camp at White Plains[1] until late in autumn, when he passed into New Jersey, and went into winter quarters at Middlebrook, on the Raritan river.

6. When D'Estaing found it impossible to reach the British fleet,[2] he sailed eastward, at the request of Washington, to coöperate with General Sullivan in an attempt to drive the British from Rhode Island. On the 9th of August [1778], Sullivan, accompanied by Lafayette,[3] and by John Hancock[4] with Massachusetts militia, crossed the channel at Tiverton, and landed on the north end of Rhode Island. On the same day, Howe's fleet, which had been reënforced, appeared off the island, and D'Estaing went out to fight him. Both vessels were disabled by a terrible storm [August 12], and sought port for repairs.[5]

7. D'Estaing returned to Newport on the 20th, when Sullivan was very near the town. He had promised the American general four thousand troops from his fleet. These were not only withheld at this critical moment, but D'Estaing sailed away for Boston, for repairs to his vessels.[6] Sullivan was compelled to retreat. He was pursued; and on Quaker Hill, near the northern end of the island, a severe engagement took place on the 29th. The British were repulsed, and that night the Americans withdrew to the main, near Bristol. The movement was

COUNT D'ESTAING.

1 Verse 19, page 147.
2. Verse 3, page 161.
3. Verse 12, page 154.
4. Verse 10, page 143.
5. This was remembered as the "great storm," and was spoken of as such by very old people who experienced it, when I visited Rhode Island in 1848.
6. This conduct was warmly censured by the American commanders, because it had no valid excuse. It deprived them of a victory just within their grasp. Congress, however, unwilling to offend the French, uttered not a word of blame. The matter was passed over, but not forgotten. Once again [at Savannah, in 1779] the same admiral abandoned the Americans.

QUESTIONS.—5. Give a further account of the battle of Monmouth? How did the British escape? What did Washington then do? 6. What have you to say about an attack on Rhode Island? What did the French fleet do? What happened to it? 7. How did the French admiral behave? How did his conduct affect the Americans? What can you tell of a battle on Rhode Island, and retreat of the Americans?

timely, for the British had just received a reënforcement of four thousand men under General Clinton.

8. During the summer of 1778, Indians and Tories combined in making murderous raids among settlements in the Mohawk, Schoharie, and Cherry valleys, in New York, and the Wyoming valley, in Pennsylvania. At the beginning of July, eleven hundred of these white and dusky savages, under Colonel John Butler, entered the beautiful valley of Wyoming [July 2], when the strong men were away. Only a very few trained soldiers, aged men, youths, and resolute women were left to defend the homes. Four hundred of these, under Colonel Zebulon Butler, resolved to meet the invaders, but were utterly routed [July 4, 1778]. Many fled for safety into a fort near Wilkesbarre, and on the following day were compelled to surrender.[1]

9. A terrible tragedy now ensued. The Indians, thirsting for blood and plunder, could not be restrained. They swept over the valley, and spread death and desolation everywhere. The blaze of more than twenty dwellings lighted the scene on that eventful night; and when the moon arose, the terrified people fled to the mountains and morasses eastward, where many women and children perished.[2] That dreary mountain region has ever since been called *The Shades of Death.*

10. Brant, in the mean time, was sending out or leading war-parties of savages over the country south of the Mohawk river,[3]

1. All our histories contain horrible statements of the fiend-like character of John Butler, and his unmitigated wickedness on this occasion. They also speak of the "monster Brant," as the leader of the Indians, and the instigator of the crimes of which they were guilty. Both of these men were bad enough; but recent investigations clearly demonstrate that Brant was not there at all; and the treaty for surrender, which is still in existence, granted most humane terms to the besieged, instead of the terrible one represented in our histories, as "*The Hatchet.*"

2. A greater portion of the settlers in the Wyoming valley were from Connecticut, and they fled in the direction of their early homes. Many of them crossed the Hudson river at Poughkeepsie, where they told their terrible stories, the facts of which were greatly exaggerated by their fears. These were published in *Holt's Journal*, and formed a text for a tale of the direst woe for the future historian.

3. A party of Tories, under Walter Butler, a son of Colonel John Butler, accompanied by Indians under Brant, fell upon the settlement of Cherry Valley on the 11th of November, 1778, killed many people, or carried them into captivity; and for months no eye, in all that region, was closed in security. Among the captives carried off was the now [1864] venerable judge, James S. Campbell, of Cherry Valley village. He was carried first to Niagara (verse 35, page 108), and then to Caughnawaga, near Montreal. He was gone two years. Judge Campbell enjoys remarkable vigor of mind and body, though more than ninety years of age.

Questions.—8. What can you tell of Indian and Tory raids? Give an account of a battle in the Wyoming valley. 9. What can you tell of dreadful events in the Wyoming valley?

while the Johnsons and their Tory adherents[1] allied with the Indians in scourging the Mohawk valley. For four years the people in that region of New York suffered such untold horrors that it was called "the dark and bloody ground." This conduct brought fearful retaliation upon the Indians, in 1779.

www.libtool.com.cn

11. Late in the autumn of 1778, the seat of actual war was transferred to Georgia. D'Estaing had gone to the West Indies [November 3, 1778], to attack the British possessions there, and the British fleet left the American coast and went there to defend them. Thus deprived of naval coöperation, Clinton could not hope to carry on aggressive warfare against the populous north; so he sent [November 27] two thousand troops, under Colonel Campbell, to invade Georgia. They were met at Savannah[2] [December 29] by a thousand Americans, under Colonel Robert Howe, who, after a spirited defense of the town, fled up the Savannah river, and took shelter in South Carolina. The British thus gained a foothold at Savannah, which they kept until almost the close of the war.

BARON STEUBEN.

12. The fourth year of the war now closed, and the relative position of the contending armies, as to advantage, was very little changed from that at the close of 1776. The Americans had gained strength by experience in military tactics, the aid of good foreign officers,[3] a treaty with France,[4] and the sympathies of other powerful nations. But their finances were in a wretched condition. One hundred millions of dollars of Continental money, rapidly depreciating in value, were afloat, and the public credit

1. Verse 21, page 158. 2. Verse 3, page 48.

3. Among the foreign officers who came to America in 1777, was the Baron Steuben, who joined the Continental army at Valley Forge (verse 1, page 160). He was a veteran from the armies of Frederic the Great of Prussia, and a skillful disciplinarian. He was made inspector-general of the army; and the vast advantages of his military instruction were seen on the field of Monmouth (verse 4, page 162), and in other subsequent conflicts.

4. Verse 23, page 159.

QUESTIONS.—10. What did Brant and the Johnsons do? 11. Where was the seat of actual war transferred to late in 1778? Where was the French fleet? Why did the British go to the south? How did they gain possession of Savannah? 12. What have you to say of the position of the contending armies at the close of the fourth year of the war? What can you say of the strength and finances of the Americans?

was daily sinking.[1] Only small loans had been obtained in Europe; and the Congress were powerless in attempts to procure money from general taxation in the different States. The French had not fairly fulfilled the stipulations of the treaty, for no French army was in America, and their navy had sailed away to the West Indies.[2]

www.libool.com.cn

SECTION VI.

FIFTH YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE [1779].

1. At the beginning of 1779, the Congress and Washington carefully considered plans for the year's campaign. It was resolved to act on the defensive, excepting in the chastisement of the Indians and Tories in the interior. The chief effort was to be for the confinement of the British to the sea-board,[3] and preventing their obtaining any advantages. A wild scheme for the conquest of Canada and the eastern British provinces, matured by Congress and the Board of War, was abandoned, and thoughtful men applauded the resolution to adopt the safe and less expensive mode of warfare.

2. The campaign was opened, as we have seen, by Campbell, at Savannah.[4] Soon after the fall of that place, General Prevost marched from Florida, captured the American fort at Sunbury, in Georgia [January 9, 1779], and assumed the chief command of the British forces in the South. In the mean time, General Lincoln had been sent to take command of the American armies in the

1. Robert Morris, of Philadelphia, who was the chief financial agent of the Government during the Revolution, was a wealthy merchant, with almost unlimited credit. At the period in question, when Congress could not borrow a dollar on its own credit, Robert Morris found no difficulty in raising millions upon his. For a long time he alone furnished the "hard money" which Government used.
2. Verse 11, page 165.
3. At this time their chief forces were hemmed in on York or Manhattan island, and Rhode Island.
4. Verse 11, page 165.

QUESTIONS.—12. Had the French kept their promises?—1. What can you tell about plans for the campaign of 1779? What was to be the chief effort? What have you to say of a scheme to conquer Canada? 2. How and where was the campaign opened? What can you tell of General Lincoln in the south?

south [September, 1778], and on the 6th of January [1779] made his headquarters at Perrysburg, twenty-five miles above Savannah. There, with the broken forces of General Howe,[1] he commenced the formation of an army.

www.libtool.com.cn

3. While Lincoln was making these preparations on the Carolina bank of the Savannah, Campbell marched up the Georgia side to Augusta, to encourage the Tories and open a communication with the Creek Indians. At the same time a band of Tories, under Colonel Boyd, was desolating the Carolina frontiers, but these were utterly broken up by Colonel Pickens, in a battle on Kettle creek, on the 14th of February.[2] This disaster alarmed Campbell, and on the approach of General Ashe and about two thousand men, sent toward Augusta by Lincoln, Campbell fled toward the sea [February 13, 1779].

GENERAL LINCOLN.

4. Ashe pursued Campbell forty miles, when he halted and formed a camp at Brier creek. There he was surprised and defeated [March 3, 1779] by General Prevost, and lost nearly his whole army by death, capture, or dispersion. This disaster deprived Lincoln of one fourth of his military strength, and so emboldened Prevost that he crossed the Savannah river with about two thousand regulars, and a large body of Tories and Indians, and marched directly for Charleston.[3] Lincoln was then just ready, with about five thousand men, to attempt the recovery of Georgia, but, perceiving the danger to Charleston, he pursued Prevost. When that general appeared before Charleston on the

1. Verse 11, page 165.

2. They were on their march to join the royal troops. Boyd and seventy of his men were killed, and seventy-five were made prisoners. Pickens lost thirty-eight. Seventy of the Tories were found guilty of treason, and condemned to be hung, but only five were executed.

3. The destruction of Ashe's army caused a temporary reëstablishment of royal authority in Georgia, which had been extinguished at the beginning of 1776 by the bold Whigs (Note 2, page 127), who had made Governor Sir James Wright a prisoner in his own house; and the provincial assembly, assuming governmental powers, made provisions for military defense, issued bills of credit, etc. [February, 1776]. Wright escaped and went to England. He returned in July, 1779, and resumed his office as governor of the "colony."

QUESTIONS.—3. What account can you give of events on the Georgia side of the Savannah river? 4. What can you tell of a battle at Brier creek, and its effect? Give an account of the movements of the British and Americans toward Charleston.

11th of May, he found the inhabitants well prepared to defend their city.

5. Prevost demanded the immediate surrender of Charleston. He was promptly refused. Then he prepared to take it by assault. At evening he heard of the near approach of the pursuing Lincoln; and at midnight he commenced a retreat toward Savannah, along the famous Sea islands between the two cities, to avoid his dreaded foe. For more than a month a detachment of his army lingered on John's island, near Charleston; and on the 20th of June Lincoln sent a force to drive them off. A severe battle occurred at Stono Ferry, when the Americans were repulsed with a loss of over three hundred men. The British suffered severely. The hot season now produced a suspension of hostilities in the south.

6. Unable to make any extension of military movements at the north, Sir Henry Clinton contented himself with sending out marauding expeditions, to plunder and harass the people on the sea-coast. Tryon[1] was sent on a plundering expedition toward Connecticut, with fifteen hundred British regulars and Hessians.[2] He attacked and dispersed some troops at Greenwich, under General Putnam. That officer escaped with difficulty, but soon rallying his troops, he pursued the British toward New York, recaptured some plunder, and took thirty prisoners.

STONY POINT.

7. In May [1779], Sir George Collier, with a small squadron, took General Mathews and some land troops to Hampton Roads. They ravaged the country on both sides of the water, all the way to Norfolk. Returning to New York, Collier went up the Hudson and assisted General Clinton in the capture of Stony Point [May 31], and Verplanck's Point, opposite [June 1], after small resistance. A month later [July 4], Collier conveyed

1. Verse 7, page 152.

2. Note 2, page 140.

QUESTIONS.—5. What did the British do before Charleston? Give an account of their retreat, and a battle at Stono Ferry. 6. What did Sir Henry Clinton at New York do? Give an account of Tryon's expedition toward Connecticut. 7. What did Collier and Mathews do in the vicinity of Hampton and Norfolk? What can you tell of an expedition up the Hudson river? Of a marauding expedition to the Connecticut coast?

Tryon, with twenty-five hundred troops, to Connecticut, where the marauder plundered New Haven [July 5] and laid East Haven [July 6], Fairfield [July 8], and Norwalk [July 12] in ashes, and then boasted of his clemency in leaving a single house standing on the New England coast.

8. The bold and dashing General Wayne struck the British a severe blow in retaliation. He led a small force secretly to the vicinity of Stony Point [July 15, 1779], and at midnight attacked the fortress there, in two columns. The garrison were surprised and confounded; and at two o'clock in the morning [July 16], Wayne wrote to Washington: "The fort and garrison, with Colonel Johnson, are ours." This was a brilliant achievement. The British lost, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, about six hundred men.[1] Three days afterward [July 19], Major Henry Lee surprised a British post at Paulus' Hook (now Jersey City), opposite New York, killed thirty-six of the garrison, and captured one hundred and sixty. These, and similar successes, greatly inspirited the Americans; but a reverse in Maine, a month later, saddened them. Forty vessels, with troops, were sent from Massachusetts to capture a British post at Castine, on the east side of Penobscot bay. A British fleet entered the bay, destroyed the flotilla, captured many soldiers and sailors, and dispersed the remainder in the wilderness.

GENERAL WAYNE.

9. The vast solitudes west of the Alleghany mountains, in which Boone[2] and other pioneers had battled with the savages for several years, now resounded with the din of arms. The British and Indians came from beyond the Ohio to ravage the settlements

1. The Americans lost fifteen killed and eighty-three wounded. The spoils were a large amount of military stores.

2. Boone was one of the boldest pioneers of the great West. He went over the mountains as early as 1769, and took his family there in 1773. He built a fort on the site of the present Boonesborough, in 1775, and his wife and daughters were the first white women ever seen on the banks of the *Kain-tuck-ee*.

QUESTIONS.—8. Give an account of Wayne's capture of Stony Point on the Hudson. What can you tell of Major Henry Lee's exploits? What misfortune occurred in Maine?

in what is now Kentucky. At length, Major Clarke[1] led an expedition which captured several British posts north of the Ohio. One of them (Vincennes) was recaptured [January, 1779], but Clarke, after a fatiguing and perilous march, again wrested it from the British in February.[2]

DANIEL BOONE.

10. In the summer of 1779, General Sullivan was sent to chastise the savages who were engaged in the devastation of the Wyoming valley.[3] He led about three thousand troops. At Tioga Point[4] he was joined [August 22, 1779] by sixteen hundred men, under General James Clinton, from the Mohawk valley; and in the course of three weeks, the combined forces destroyed forty Indian villages and a vast amount of food.[5] They penetrated the heart of the country of the SIX NATIONS, to the Genesee valley. The retribution was terrible, and was long remembered by the Indians.

GENERAL SULLIVAN.

11. D'Estaing came from the West Indies with a powerful fleet to the coast of Georgia early in September [1779], prepared to coöperate with General Lincoln in an attack upon Savannah. He landed troops and battery guns; and the combined

1. George Rogers Clarke was a native of Virginia, and was born in 1752. He was the most accomplished and useful, in a military point of view, of all the western pioneers during the Revolution. He was then a young man. He died near Louisville, Kentucky, in 1818.

2. With a few men, Clarke traversed the dreadful wilderness of a hundred miles from the Ohio. Over what was known as the "drowned lands" of Illinois, through ice and snow, they traveled for a whole week; and just before reaching Vincennes, they waded through the cold flood that covered the country, more than five miles, the water sometimes so deep as to leave only their breasts and heads above it. They planted the American flag on the fort on the 20th of February.

3. Verse 8, page 164.

4. At the junction of the Susquehanna and Tioga rivers, near the border between Pennsylvania and New York.

5. The *Seneca* Indians were beginning to cultivate rich openings in the forests, known as the "Genesee Flats," quite extensively. They raised large quantities of corn, and cultivated gardens and orchards. The dwellings were of the rudest character, and their villages consisted of a small collection of these miserable huts, of no value except for winter shelter.

QUESTIONS.—9. What can you tell of military movements westward of the Alleghany mountains? 10. Can you give an account of Sullivan's campaign against the Indians in Western New York? 11. What can you tell of an attack by the Americans and French on Savannah in 1779? How came the siege to be abandoned?

armies commenced a siege of the British works on the 23d. They finally attempted to carry the works by storm [October 9]. After five hours' hard fighting, there was a truce to bury the dead, when D'Estaing proposed to abandon the siege.[1] Lincoln was compelled to agree to it; and ten days afterward he was in full retreat for Charleston, and the French fleet was at sea. This was a second time that D'Estaing had deprived the Americans of victory. Thus closed the campaign in the south.

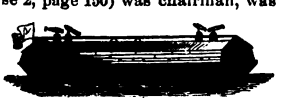
SIEGE OF SAVANNAH. 1779.

12. Immense difficulties beset Great Britain during the year 1779. Spain declared war against her, in June, and a powerful French and Spanish armament attempted an invasion of England, in August. Lafayette had persuaded the French Government to send another fleet and several thousand soldiers to America; and American and French cruisers were destroying British merchant vessels in their own waters.[2] In September, John Paul Jones,

1. Already nearly one thousand of the assailants had been killed and wounded. Among the mortally wounded was Count Pulaski, a brave Pole who was met in the battle on the Brandywine (verse 13, page 154). He died on board a vessel bound for Charleston, a few days after the siege. Ser-Jeant Jasper, whose bravery at Fort Moultrie we have noticed (note 1, page 142), was also killed, while nobly holding aloft, upon a bastion of the British works which he had mounted, one of the beautiful colors which had been presented to Moultrie's regiment by ladies of Charleston. Savannah honors both these heroes, by having parks bearing their names.

2. The naval operations during the war for independence do not occupy a conspicuous place in history, yet they were by no means insignificant. The Continental Congress took action on the subject of an armed marine in the autumn of 1775. Already Washington had fitted out some armed vessels at Boston, and constructed some gun-boats for use in the waters around that city. These were propelled by oars, and covered. In November, the Government of Massachusetts established a *Board of Admiralty*. A committee on naval affairs, of which Silas Deane (verse 2, page 150) was chairman, was appointed by the Continental Congress in October, 1775. Before the close of the year, the construction of almost twenty vessels had been ordered by Congress; and the *Marine Committee* was so reorganized as to have in it a representative from each colony. In November, 1776, a *Continental Navy Board* to assist the *Marine Committee* was appointed; and in October, 1779, a *Board of Admiralty* was installed. Its secretary (Secretary of the Navy) was John Brown, until 1771, when he was succeeded by General McDougal (verse 7, page 152). Robert Morris also acted as authorized *Agent of Marine*; and many privateers

COUNT PULASKI.



A GUN-BOAT AT BOSTON.

QUESTIONS.—12. What difficulties beset Great Britain at this time? What service for the Americans did Lafayette perform?

JOHN PAUL JONES.

the intrepid cruiser, conquered two of her ships of war in sight of her coast, while her armies in America had achieved no marked success. On the Continent, and among her own people, there was widespread sympathy for the struggling Americans; and she found opposition on every hand. Yet in the midst of all these difficulties, the Government put forth mighty energies. Parliament voted an ample amount of men and money for the general service.

www.libtool.com.cn

were fitted out by him on his own account. In November, 1776, Congress determined the relative rank of the naval commanders, such as *admiral* equal to a *major-general* on land; a *commodore* equal to a *brigadier-general*, etc. The first commander-in-chief of the navy, or high admiral, was Esek Hopkins, of Rhode Island, whom Congress commissioned as such in December, 1775. He first went against Dunmore (verse 23, page 138) on the coast of Virginia. He also went to the Bahamas and captured the town of New Providence, and its governor. Sailing for home, he captured some British vessels off the east end of Long island, and with these prizes he went into Narraganset bay. In the mean while, Paul Jones and Captain Barry were doing good service, and New England cruisers were greatly annoying English shipping on our coast. In 1777, Dr. Franklin, under the authority of Congress, issued commissions to naval officers in Europe. Expeditions were fitted out in French sea-ports, and these produced great alarm on the British coasts.

ADMIRAL HOPKINS.

While these things were occurring in European waters, Captains Biddle, Manly, McNeil, Hinman, Barry, and others, were making many prizes on the American coasts. Finally, in the spring of 1779, an expedition was fitted out at L'Orient, under the auspices of the French and American Governments. It consisted of five vessels, under the command of John Paul Jones. They sailed first in June, for the British waters, took a few prizes, and returned. They sailed again in August, and on the 23d of September, while off the coast of Scotland, not far above the mouth of the Humber, Jones, with his flag-ship (the *Bonhomme Richard*) and two others, fell in with and encountered a small British fleet, which was convoying a number of merchant vessels to the Baltic sea. An engagement took place after night had fallen upon the scene, and for three hours one of the most desperate seafights on record raged off Flamborough Head. Jones managed to lash the Richard to the British ship Serapis, and with muzzle to muzzle they poured broadsides into each other. Three times both ships were on fire. The Serapis finally yielded, and ten minutes afterward, the Countess of Scarborough, another large English vessel, surrendered. Jones's ship was so much injured that, sixteen hours after the battle, she went to the bottom of the ocean. Congress gave Jones a gold medal for his bravery. Many other brave acts were performed by American seamen during the remainder of the war. For a condensed account of the whole naval operations of the Revolution, and of the "whale-boat warfare" on the coast, see supplement to Lossing's *Field-Book of the Revolution.*

QUESTIONS.—12. What can you tell of the American navy, and John Paul Jones's exploits?

BATTLE FIELDS of the REVOLUTION IN THE Northern AND EASTERN STATES
SCALE OF MILES
50
100
150
200
CANADA
MAINE
NEW YORK
VERMONT
NEW HAMPSHIRE
MASSACHUSETTS
CONNECTICUT
PENNSYLVANIA
NEW JERSEY
MARYLAND
VIRGINIA
ATLANTIC OCEAN
QUEBEC
MONTREAL
ST. LAWRENCE R.
KINGSTON
ST JOHN
TICONDEROGA
HUBBARDTOWN
SKENESBOROUGH
BENNINGTON
AUGUSTA
KENNEBEC R.
PENOBSCOT R.
OSWEGO
ORISKANY
SARATOGA
MOHAWK R.
ALBANY
CHERRY VALLEY
HUDSON R.
CONCORD
LEXINGTON
BUNKER HILL
RHODE ISLAND
NEWBURG
FORTCLINTON
FT MONTGOMERY
WILKESBARRE
WYOMING
STONEY
WHITE PLAINS
FT WASHINGTON
NEW YORK
LONG ISLAND
N. BRUNSWICK
PRINCETON
TRENTON
MONMOUTH
GERMANTOWN
PHILADELPHIA
LANCASTER
YORK
BRANDYWINE
FT MERCER
DELAWARE
BALTIMORE
ANNAPOLIS
POTOMAC R.
ALEXANDRIA
RICHMOND
JAMES R.
YORKTOWN
PETERSBURG
JAMESTOWN
HAMPTON
GRAVES AND DEGRASSE
GREAT BRIDGE
DISMAL SWAMP
NORFOLK
SULLIVAN ITTO
BENESEE R.
SUSQUEHANNA R.
SCHUYLKILL R.
DELAWARE R.
HUDSON R.
CONNECTICUT R.
NEW HAVEN
STONE
HARBOR
SHOLD
SAPPAHANNOCK R.

SECTION VII.

SIXTH YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE [1780].

www.histool.com.cn

1. When the British ministry were informed of Lafayette's success at the French court,[1] they sent orders for the immediate abandonment of Rhode Island, and the concentration of troops at New York. When this was accomplished, Clinton sailed southward [December 25] with about five thousand troops, leaving General Knyphausen[2] in command at New York. In Admiral Arbuthnot's fleet, that bore him, there were two thousand marines, making an aggregate of seven thousand fighting men.

2. As early in the spring of 1780 as possible, Washington sent the baron De Kalb, and other good officers, with troops, to assist the patriots of the South; and this weakening of his army caused the Tories to be more active than ever. The chief seat of war was, however, transferred to the South, and the people of the North had some rest from anxiety and alarm.

BARON DE KALB.

3. Clinton landed his troops on the islands below Charleston [February 11, 1780], and prepared to besiege the city. General Lincoln was there with a feeble force, but so well did the militia answer the call of John Rutledge, their governor, that when the invaders appeared before the American works on Charleston Neck, the patriots felt strong enough to resist them. The intrenchments had been strengthened; batteries had been planted at various points around the harbor, and there was a small flotilla of little armed vessels near the town.

GOVERNOR RUTLEDGE.

1. Verse 12, page 171. 2. Verse 20, page 147.

QUESTIONS.—1. What orders did the British Government give, and why? What can you tell of British forces going southward? 2. What movements in that direction were made by the Americans? 3. What can you tell of the British movements against Charleston? What was the position of affairs at that city?

4. Arbuthnot, with his fleet, passed up the harbor on the morning of the 9th of April. Clinton had already erected batteries in front of the American works on Charleston Neck,[1] and the two commanders now demanded a surrender of the town. Lincoln refused, and for a month a siege went on. In the mean time, Cornwallis arrived with fresh troops from New York, and the city was completely surrounded by the foe.[2]

5. On the night of the 9th of May, two hundred cannon opened upon the town, and bombshells, like meteors, filled the air. At one time the city was on fire in five places. The fleet moved toward the town to join in the bombardment. The terrible assault continued about forty-eight hours, when, at two o'clock in the morning of the 12th [May, 1780], Lincoln offered to surrender. The firing ceased, and the army and many citizens, about six thousand in number, became prisoners of war.[3] The spoils were four hundred pieces of cannon, ammunition, and stores.

SIEGE OF CHARLESTON, 1780.

6. This was a terrible blow for the Americans. It was followed by expeditions into the interior;[4] and very soon the quiet of peace

1. Verse 4, page 47.

2. Detachments had been sent out between the Cooper and Santee rivers, to keep open a communication between the city and country. These were defeated. On the 14th of April, Tarleton defeated Colonel Huger at Monk's Corners, on the head waters of the Cooper river, and killed twenty-five Americans. On the 6th of May, a party under Colonel White, of New Jersey, were routed at a ferry on the Santee, with a loss of about thirty in killed, wounded, and prisoners. These British detachments overran the whole country below the Cooper and Santee, in the course of a few days, and the city was cut off from the country.

3. The citizens and a large number of the soldiers were *paroled*.

4. One, under Cornwallis, marched up the Santee, toward Camden; another, under Lieutenant-Colonel Cruger, was ordered to penetrate the country to Ninety-six, and a third, under Lieutenant-Colonel Brown, marched to Augusta, in Georgia. Among the American detachments which had hastened toward Charleston to assist Lincoln, and retreated when they heard of his fall, was that of Colonel Buford, consisting of four hundred Continental infantry, and a small troop of cavalry, with two field-pieces. He retreated from Camden on Cornwallis's approach, and near the Waxhaw creek, some sixty miles further north, he was overtaken and surprised by Tarleton and his cavalry. They gave no quarter, but massacred or maimed the larger portion of Buford's command. His loss in killed, wounded, and prisoners was three hundred and thirteen. He also lost his artillery, ammunition, and baggage. The cruelty of Tarleton was condemned by British writers themselves.

QUESTIONS.—4. What did the commanders of the British land and naval forces do? 5. Give an account of the siege and capture of Charleston by the British.

prevailed in South Carolina. Mistaking this lull in the storm for permanent tranquillity, Clinton, with a large number of troops, sailed in the fleet for New York [June 5, 1780], leaving Cornwallis [1] and a small force to hold the subjugated State.

www.libtool.com.cn

7. The lull was of short duration. We have observed that De Kalb had been sent to the assistance of Lincoln.[2] He did not arrive till long after the fall of Charleston. General Gates was also sent to the same field, and, on forming a junction with De Kalb, took chief command of all the forces, and pushed forward. The South Carolinians were aroused into action by intelligence of the approach of the "conqueror of Burgoyne,"[3] and partisans like Marion, Sumter, Pickens, and Clarke, were soon in the field with followers, striking British and Tory detachments here and there, and staying the tide of invasion.

GENERAL GATES.

8. Sumter first appeared in power on the Catawba. Repulsed at Rocky Mount [July 30, 1780], on that river, he crossed it, and at Hanging Rock, a few miles eastward, he fell upon and dispersed [August 6] a large body of British and Tories; yet, through the folly of his men, he did not secure a victory.[4] Marion, at the same time, was smiting the enemy among the swamps of the lower country, on the borders of the Pedee. Pickens was annoying Cruger[5] in the neighborhood of the Saluda, and Clarke was calling for the patriots along the Savannah, Ogeechee, and Altamaha, to drive Brown[6] from Augusta.

GENERAL SUMTER.

1. Verse 4, page 175. 2. Verse 2, page 174. 3. Verse 22, page 159.
4. Having secured a portion of the British camp, Sumter's men commenced plundering, and drinking the liquors found there. They became intoxicated, and were unable to complete the victory, yet the British dared not follow Sumter in his slow retreat.
5. Note 4, page 175. 6. Note 4, page 175.

QUESTIONS.—6. What was the effect of the capture of Charleston? What did the British then do? 7. What can you tell of the movements of Gates and De Kalb? How did Gates's approach affect the South Carolinians? 8. Give an account of the doings of partisan leaders in South Carolina.

9. Gates entered South Carolina near the upper waters of the Santee. Lord Rawdon was in command in that region, and was joined at Camden by Lord Cornwallis. Gates came down through Lancaster district to attack them, and Cornwallis advanced from Camden to meet him. They unexpectedly met, at a little past midnight [August 16, 1780], near Sanders's creek, a few miles north of Camden, and early in the morning engaged in a general battle. The British had an overwhelming force; and after a desperate struggle, the Americans were compelled to yield.[1] They lost, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, about a thousand men, besides all their artillery, and nearly everything else. The British lost three hundred and twenty-five. Gates's army was dispersed, and, with a few followers, he escaped to Charlotte, in North Carolina, about eighty miles distant.

10. A few days after Gates's defeat, Sumter's forces were almost annihilated by Colonel Tarleton, on Fishing creek, near the Catawba river [August 18, 1780]; and at the close of summer there were no republicans in arms in South Carolina, excepting Marion and his men. Within three months, two American armies had been annihilated, and one of the most active of their partisan corps scattered to the winds. South Carolina swarmed with Tories, and Cornwallis now treated the people as subjugated vassals. His tyranny produced a reaction, and the patriots prepared to strike powerfully for home and freedom.

COLONEL TARLETON.

GENERAL MARION.

1. Among the slain was the baron De Kalb, whose remains lie under a neat monument at Camden.

Questions.—9. Can you give an account of the march of Gates and Cornwallis, and their battle near Camden? What was the result? 10. What disaster befell Sumter? What had the Americans lost in the South? What can you say of Tories in South Carolina, and the effects of British tyranny?

LORD CORNWALLIS.

11. Cornwallis invaded Western North Carolina early in September, and sent out detachments to awe the republicans and encourage the Tories. Among other commanders, he sent Major Ferguson to embody the Tory militia west of Broad river, among the hills. With fifteen hundred of them, Ferguson encamped on King's mountain, in Yorkville district, early in October. There he was attacked and defeated, on the 7th, by Whig[1] militia, under the respective commands of Colonels Campbell, Shelby, Cleveland, Sevier, Winston, McDowell, and Williams.[2] This defeat was to Cornwallis what the affair near Bennington was to Burgoyne.[3]

12. The partisans already mentioned,[4] again appeared in the field, with daily increasing forces.[5] These movements alarmed Cornwallis, and he returned to South Carolina [October 14], and made his headquarters at Winnsborough, between the Broad and Catawba rivers, in Fairfield district, where we will leave him for the present.

13. While the events we have just related were occurring in the South, others of importance marked the progress of the war in the North, where extensive military operations were almost suspended during the year 1780. Clinton, as we observed, left Knyphausen in command at New York.[6] That officer sent General

1. Note 2, page 127.

2. The Americans lost only twenty men. They killed and wounded three hundred of the enemy, and took eight hundred of them prisoners, with fifteen hundred stand of arms. Major Ferguson was among the slain. On the spot where he fell, he was buried, and a plain stone with an inscription commemorates that officer and some Americans killed at the same time.

3. Verse 20, page 158.

4. Verse 7, page 176.

5. Sumter collected a small force in the vicinity of Charlotte, and returned to South Carolina. For some weeks he annoyed the British and Tories very much, and Lord Cornwallis, who called him *The Carolina Game Cock*, used great endeavors to crush him. On the night of the 12th of November, Major Wemyss, at the head of a British detachment, fell upon him at the Fish Dam Fort on the Broad river, but was repulsed. Eight days afterward he had a very severe engagement with Tarleton, at Blackstock's plantation on the Tyger river, in Union district. He had now been joined by some Georgians under Colonels Clarke and Twiggs. The British were repulsed, with a loss, in killed and wounded, of about three hundred. The Americans lost only three killed and five wounded. Sumter was among the latter, and he was detained from the field for several months by his wounds.

6. Verse 1, page 174.

QUESTIONS.—11. What did Cornwallis do in September? What can you tell of the battle of King's mountain, in October, 1780? 12. Tell how Cornwallis was alarmed and called back from North Carolina.

Mathews[1] to invade New Jersey with five thousand men, from Staten island. Washington, then encamped at Morristown,[2] sent detachments which drove them back to the coast, where they remained until joined by Clinton [June 22] on his return from the south,[3] when he reënforced Mathews, and endeavored to draw Washington into battle, or capture his stores. He failed in both. In a severe skirmish at Springfield [June 23], the Americans, under General Greene, defeated the British, and they fled back to Staten island.

14. A few days after this invasion, a French fleet, under Admiral Ternay, arrived at Newport, Rhode Island, with six thousand French troops, commanded by the count De Rochambeau. They came to give substantial aid to the Americans. Their coming gave joy to the patriots, and alarm to the British and Tories. They did not enter upon the campaign that season, but prepared to pass the winter in New England. At the same time, General Benedict Arnold was bargaining with Sir Henry Clinton for the transfer of West Point and its dependencies on the Hudson, with the liberties of his country, into the hands of the British.

15. Arnold was a brave soldier, but a bad man. He had become deeply involved in debt, in Philadelphia,[4] where he married the beautiful young daughter of a leading Tory.[5] He was officially disgraced for bad conduct;[6] and the combined motives of revenge and lust for money and power made him a traitor. He was to receive fifty thousand dollars and a brigadier's commission for his perfidy. By false professions he obtained command of West Point, and while Washington was in New England for the purpose of conferring with the French officers, he sought to accomplish his wicked work and receive his reward.

16. The negotiations with Arnold were made through Major

1. Verse 7, page 168. 2. In East Jersey. 3. Verse 6, page 175.
4. Note 2, page 162. 5. Mr. Shippen.
6. He was charged, before the Continental Congress, with fraudulent transactions while acting as military governor in Philadelphia, and was found guilty. He was sentenced to a reprimand by Washington. This was given as tenderly as possible, but the bad nature of Arnold would not allow him to forget or forgive even so slight a punishment.

QUESTIONS.—13. Can you give an account of military movements from New York into New Jersey? What were the incidents and results of a British invasion of New Jersey? 14. What can you tell of the arrival of a French fleet and army at Newport? What was General Arnold doing? 15. Give an account of Arnold's preparations to betray West Point.

André, Clinton's adjutant-general.[1] It was done by letters until the 22d of September [1780], when they met, for the first time, near Haverstraw, on the west side of the Hudson. The bargain was then closed. The *Vulture*, sloop-of-war, in which André was conveyed up the river, had been driven from her anchorage during the long conference, and the adjutant was compelled to cross the Hudson, and make his way back by land. At Tarrytown he was seized and searched by three young militia-men, who, finding papers in his boots, took him to the nearest military station.

BENEDICT ARNOLD.

17. Arnold was informed of the capture,[2] and immediately fled to the *Vulture*,[3] in his barge, and joined the British army. Major André was hung as a spy;[4] and the Congress voted a silver medal and a pension of two hundred dollars a year during their lives to his captors.[5]

CAPTORS' MEDAL.

18. The sixth year of the war was now drawing to a close, and yet the patriots were not subdued. Yet England seemed not to suffer discouragement. Unmindful of the powerful French army and navy on our shores, and the necessity which compelled her to declare war against Holland [December 20, 1780],[6] she put forth as mighty energies as ever, and made large preparations to meet the rebellion in 1781.

1. Arnold's handwriting was disguised, and he signed his letters *Gustavus*. André's letters were signed *John Anderson*. A correspondence was carried on between them for more than a year.

2. The commandant of the station, too stupid, apparently, to comprehend the character of his prisoner, allowed him to write a letter to Arnold, informing him of his capture, and thus giving him warning, that he might escape.

3. At Tappan, on the west side of the Hudson, nearly opposite Tarrytown.

4. On one side is the word "FIDELITY," on the other, "VINCIT AMOR PATRIÆ," "The love of country conquers."

5. War was declared when the British ministry learned that this maritime rival of England was secretly negotiating a treaty with the United States for assistance in their struggle.

QUESTIONS.—16. How did Arnold bargain with the British? What can you tell of the meeting of Arnold and André? Relate the circumstances of André's capture. 17. What did Arnold do when informed of André's arrest? What was done with André? 18. What have you to say concerning the subjugation of the patriots, and the giant efforts of England?

SECTION VIII.

www.libtool.com.cn

SEVENTH YEAR OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE [1781].

1. Owing to the tardiness of Congress in providing pay and clothing for the troops, discontent assumed the shape of open mutiny at the beginning of 1781. On the 1st of January, thirteen hundred of the Pennsylvania line left the camp at Morristown,[1] with the avowed purpose of demanding, in person, full justice at the hands of Congress. Two kinds of embassies met them at Princeton.[2] One was composed of British emissaries, who tried to seduce them, by bribes, into the royal service; the other was a committee from Congress. They handed the former over to the American general, for punishment as spies;[3] and confiding in the promises of the latter, that they should receive their dues speedily, they returned to camp.

2. On the 18th of the same month [January, 1781], a portion of the New Jersey line, at Pompton, left camp in the same way. This was promptly quelled by military force [January 27], and nothing of the kind appeared afterward. Congress and people, warned by these events, put forth greater exertions; and Robert Morris, of Philadelphia, was chosen agent for the management of the finances of the Government. To his energy and per-

ROBERT MORRIS.

1. The headquarters of Washington were now at New Windsor, just above the Hudson Highlands. The Pennsylvania troops were cantoned at Morristown, New Jersey; and the New Jersey troops were at Pompton, in the same State.

2. Washington had sent Wayne to bring the insurgents back to duty. When he placed himself before them, with loaded pistols, they put their bayonets to his breast, and said, "We love and respect you, but if you fire you are a dead man. We are not going to the enemy; on the contrary, if they were now to come out, you should see us fight under your orders with as much alacrity as ever."

3. They were indignant because of the implied doubt of their patriotism which the approaches of the British emissaries created, and they cheerfully handed them over to Wayne. When offered a reward for delivering them up, they refused it, saying, "Our necessities compelled us to demand justice from our Government; we ask no reward for doing our duty to our country against its enemies."

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell of mutinies in the American army at the beginning of 1781? How was American patriotism illustrated? 2. Give an account of a mutiny by New Jersey troops. What were the effects of these mutinies? What can you tell of Robert Morris?

sonal credit the country was indebted for the means to commence offensive operations in the spring of 1781.

3. Arnold, the traitor,[1] commenced the work of his royal purchaser, with a few armed vessels and sixteen hundred Tories, at the beginning of 1781. He went up the James river, and destroyed [January 5, 1781] much property at Richmond. Returning, he made his headquarters at Portsmouth [January 29], opposite Norfolk. A portion of the French fleet was sent to keep him there, but was driven back [March 16] by the British fleet. Lafayette was sent, with twelve hundred men, to oppose his further invasion of Virginia, but Arnold was soon joined [March 26] by more than two thousand men, under General Phillips, when they went up the James on another marauding expedition. We shall meet Arnold, presently, in New England.

4. The Southern States became the chief theatre of the campaign of 1781. General Greene[2] succeeded Gates in the command at the South,[3] at the close of 1780. He took post, with the main body of his little army, at Cheraw, on the Pedee, and sent the remainder, about a thousand strong, under Morgan, to occupy a position near the Broad river. This disposition of his forces disconcerted the plans of Cornwallis, who was about to invade North Carolina again.[4] It would not do to leave Morgan on his flank or rear. So he sent Tarleton[5] to capture or disperse his command. They fought a severe battle [January 17, 1781] at a place called *The Cowpens*, in Spartanburg district, and the Americans won a brilliant victory.[6] The Congress gave Morgan

GENERAL GREENE.

1. Verse 15, page 179. 2. Verse 13, page 178. 3. Verse 9, page 177.
4. Verse 11, page 178. 5. Verse 10, page 177.
6. The British lost almost three hundred men killed and wounded, and five hundred made prisoners.

Questions.—3. When and how did Arnold, the traitor, commence serving his British master? Give an account of efforts to take him. By whom was he joined, in Virginia? 4. Where was the chief theatre of war in 1781? What did General Greene do? What disposition did he make of his army? How did it affect the enemy? What can you tell of a battle at the Cowpens?

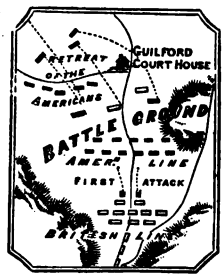
a gold medal, and to Colonels Howard [1] and Washington [2] each a silver medal, for their services on that occasion.

5. At the close of the battle, Morgan hurried toward Virginia with his five hundred prisoners. Cornwallis tried, in vain, to intercept him. Greene joined him; and then commenced a remarkable retreat by the Americans, from the Yadkin to the Dan, closely pursued by the British. The main body from Cheraw joined Greene [February 7] at Guilford Court House. After many narrow escapes they all crossed the Dan [February 13], and at its bank Cornwallis gave up the chase. Mortified and dispirited, he moved sullenly back [February 14] and established his headquarters at Hillsborough, in North Carolina.

GENERAL MORGAN.

COLONEL WASHINGTON.

COLONEL HENRY LEE.



BATTLE OF GUILFORD.

6. Greene remained in Virginia only long enough to refresh his troops and receive recruits, when he recrossed the Dan to confront his foe. Colonel Henry Lee was sent forward with cavalry, to foil Tarleton's at-

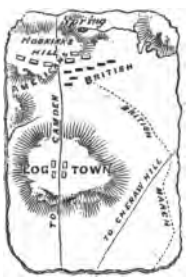
1. John Eager Howard, of the Maryland line. William Washington was a blood relation of the general-in-chief, and commanded a corps of Virginia cavalry. Both were active patriots. Howard afterward became governor of Maryland and United States senator.

2. In a personal combat with Tarleton, at the battle of the Cowpens, Washington wounded his antagonist in his hand. Some months afterward, Tarleton said sneeringly to Mrs. Willie Jones, a witty American lady, "That Colonel Washington, I am told, is illiterate, and cannot write his own name." "Ah! Colonel," said Mrs. Jones, "you ought to know better, for you bear evidence that he can *make his mark*." At another time he expressed a desire to see Colonel Washington. Mrs. Jones's sister instantly replied, "Had you looked behind you at the *Cowpens*, you might have had that pleasure."

QUESTIONS.—5. What did Morgan do after the battle of the Cowpens? Can you give an account of a remarkable retreat and pursuit?

tempt to recruit among the Tories, and was successful. Greene, meanwhile, moved cautiously, and was continually increased in strength. On the 1st of March [1781] he had almost five thousand men. He desired a battle with Cornwallis, and was gratified on the 15th. They met and fought a very severe combat at Guilford Court House. Greene was driven from the field, but Cornwallis's army was so much shattered by the shock, that he fled with the remnant toward the sea-board, followed some distance by Greene.

7. At the beginning of April, Greene marched against the British under Lord Rawdon, at Camden. He encamped [April 19] on Hobkirk's Hill, two miles from that village, where he was attacked and defeated [April 25, 1781], after a desperate struggle, with a loss of two hundred and sixty-six killed, wounded, and missing. The British loss was about the same. Greene carried away, in his retreat, all of his artillery and baggage, and fifty prisoners.



HOBKIRK'S HILL.

8. Recruits flocked to Greene's camp. This alarmed Rawdon. He set fire to Camden [May 10], fled to Nelson's Ferry on the Santee, and called toward him the garrisons of more remote outposts. Greene moved at once with vigor, and in the space of a week he captured four important British posts,[1] and was well on his way toward Ninety-Six.[2] At the beginning of June [1781], the British held only three places in South Carolina, namely, Charleston, Nelson's Ferry, and Ninety-Six.

1. Lee and Marion were the principal leaders against these posts. Orangeburg, on the North Edisto, sixty-five miles below Columbia, was taken on the 11th of May; Fort Motte on the 12th; the post at Nelson's Ferry on the 14th, and Fort Granby, on the Congaree, two miles from Columbia, on the 16th. Fort Watson, situated on the Santee, a few miles above Nelson's Ferry, was taken on the 16th of April. Fort Motte was near the junction of the Wateree and Congaree, forty miles south from Camden. Nelson's Ferry is at the mouth of Eutaw creek, on the Santee, about fifty miles from Charleston. This was abandoned on the approach of Rawdon, and was held by him to the close of May.

2. So called because it was ninety-six miles from the frontier fort, Prince George, on the Keowee river. Its site is occupied by the pleasant village of Cambridge, in Abbeville district, one hundred and forty-seven miles north-west from Charleston.

QUESTIONS.—6. What did Greene then do? What have you to say of Major Lee? Can you give an account of a battle at Guilford Court House? 7. Give an account of the movements of Greene toward Camden. What can you tell about a battle at Hobkirk's Hill? 8. What alarmed Rawdon? What did he do? What can you tell of Greene's operations? What ports did the British hold?

9. Greene commenced the siege of Ninety-Six on the 22d of May, with less than a thousand regulars and a few raw militia. For almost a month his efforts were unavailing. Then hearing of the approach of Rawdon, with a strong force, for the relief of Cruger,[1] the Americans made an unsuccessful effort [June 18] to take the place by storm. They raised the siege the following evening [June 19], and retreated beyond the Saluda. Rawdon pursued them a short distance, when he wheeled and marched to Orangeburg.

FORT NINETY-SIX.[2]

10. Lee, Pickens, and Clarke were busy, in the mean time, on the Savannah. They captured Augusta on the 5th of June [1781], after a siege of twelve days, and took over three hundred prisoners, losing, in killed and wounded, fifty-one — the same as the enemy. They then hastened to join Greene, who pursued Rawdon to Orangeburg. Finding the British strongly intrenched there, Greene crossed the Congaree, and, leading his army to the high hills of Santee, in Santee district, encamped there for several weeks during the hot and sickly season. Rawdon left his troops in command of Colonel Stewart and departed for England.[3]

GENERAL PICKENS.

11. Greene was joined by North Carolina troops in August,

1. Note 4, page 175.

2. The principal work was a star redoubt (note 4, page 132). There was a picketed inclosure (note 1, page 63) around the little village; and on the west side of a stream running from a spring (*a*) was a stockade (note 1, page 63) fort. The besiegers encamped at four different points around the works. Kosciuszko (verse 19, page 157) was the engineer-in-chief.

3. A short time before he sailed, Rawdon was a party to a cruel transaction which created a great deal of excitement throughout the South. Among those who took British protection after the fall of Charleston, in 1780 (verse 5, page 175), was Colonel Isaac Hayne, a highly respectable Carolinian. When General Greene, the following year, confined the British to Charleston alone, and these protections had no force, Hayne considered himself released from the obligations of his parole, took up arms for his country, and was made a prisoner. Colonel Balfour was then in chief command at Charleston, and from the beginning seemed determined on the death of Hayne. Rawdon exerted his influence to save the prisoner, but finally he consented to his execution, as a traitor. Greene was inclined to retaliate, but, fortunately, hostilities soon afterward ceased, and the flow of blood was stopped.

QUESTIONS.—9. Can you give an account of the siege of Ninety-Six? 10. What can you tell of Lee, Pickens, and Clarke, and the capture of Augusta? What did Greene do with his army?

and at the close of the month marched against Orangeburg. Cruger[1] had joined Stewart there, and the whole British force retreated to Eutaw Springs, near the Santee. Greene pursued, and on the morning of the 8th of September [1781] fell upon the enemy at Eutaw, and drove him from the field. Stewart rallied and renewed the fight with so much vigor, that after a struggle of four hours, the Americans were driven from the position. On that night the British fled toward Charleston, and the Americans reoccupied the battle-field.

12. Greene sent detachments in pursuit of the enemy, and soon afterward returned, with his main army, to the High Hills of Santee, leaving those active partisans, Marion, Sumter, Lee, and others, to confine the enemy to the sea-board. They were successful; and at the close of 1781 the British did not hold a single post southward of New York, excepting Charleston and Savannah. Greene moved his army to the vicinity of the former city, in November; while Wayne, early in 1782, was closely watching the British at Savannah.

13. While these events were occurring in South Carolina, Cornwallis was trying to subjugate Virginia. He reached Petersburg, from Wilmington,[2] on the 20th of May, where he found Lafayette, with a feeble force, to oppose him, and he pressed on beyond Richmond, destroying an immense amount of property.[3] For several weeks the State was at his mercy, when the appearance of Lafayette, Wayne, and Steuben, with combined forces, caused him to retire suddenly toward the sea, closely followed by these opponents. He crossed the James river at Old Jamestown [July 9], and made his way to Portsmouth, opposite Norfolk.[4]

1. Verse 9, page 185.
2. After the battle at Guilford Court House in March, Cornwallis marched to Wilmington, to rest and recruit his shattered army. He moved northward from that point on the 25th of April, and reached Petersburg on the 20th of May, where he took command of the troops of Phillips (verse 3, page 182), who had died there.
3. The principal object of Cornwallis in marching beyond Richmond, was to prevent a junction of troops, under Wayne, then approaching through Maryland, with Lafayette. But the marquis was too expert, out-marched the earl, and met Wayne on the 10th of June.
4. Verse 23, page 138.

Questions.—11. What can you tell of Greene's pursuit of the British, and the battle at Eutaw Springs? 12. Where did Greene take his army? What can you tell of the doings of partisan leaders? Where were Greene and Wayne at the beginning of 1782? 13. What was Cornwallis now trying to do? What can you tell of his invasion of Virginia, and his departure from it?

14. Cornwallis soon moved from Portsmouth to Yorktown, on the York river [August, 1781], and cast up fortifications there. In the mean time, a formidable foe was approaching him from the north. Rochambeau and his army joined Washington, on the Hudson, early in July, with the intention of driving Clinton from New York. This scheme was abandoned when it was ascertained that the British had been reënforced, and that the count de Grasse, with a powerful French fleet, was about to sail from the West Indies to the Chesapeake, with many land troops. Washington resolved to march for Virginia and drive the enemy from that State.

COUNT DE ROCHAMBEAU.

15. Washington so concealed his movements, that his army was beyond successful pursuit when Clinton was assured that his adversary was hastening forward. Hoping to recall him by maraudings on the New England coast, he sent Arnold to do that work. He burned New London [September 6, 1781], and committed dreadful atrocities at Fort Griswold, opposite,[1] but Washington did not turn back. Clinton also sent reënforcements to Cornwallis, in the fleet of Admiral Graves, but De Grasse was at the entrance to the Chesapeake [September 5], to dispute their entrance. Graves was driven off after a partial engagement, and the French fleet anchored within the capes.

COUNT DE GRASSE.

16. The allied armies appeared before Yorktown on the 28th of September. They numbered about twelve thousand effective men.[2]

1. Arnold landed at the mouth of the Thames, and proceeded to attack Fort Trumbull, near New London. The garrison evacuated it, and the village was burned. Another division of the expedition went up on the east side of the Thames, attacked Fort Griswold at Groton, and after Colonel Ledyard had surrendered it, he and almost every man in the fort were cruelly murdered, or badly wounded. There is a monument to their memory at Groton.

2. The whole of the American and French forces, employed in the siege, amounted to a little over sixteen thousand men. Of the Americans, about seven thousand were regular troops, and four thousand militia. The French troops numbered about five thousand, including those brought by De Grasse from the West Indies.

QUESTIONS.—14. Where did Cornwallis make a fortified camp? What can you tell of the French army? What scheme was planned and abandoned? What did Washington resolve to do? 15. How did Washington deceive Clinton? What did Clinton do? What can you tell of a naval skirmish?

SIEGE OF YORKTOWN.

A regular siege was soon commenced; and on the evening of the 9th of October, a heavy cannonade was opened upon the town and the British works, and several vessels were set on fire by red-hot balls. Perceiving his peril, and despairing of aid from Clinton, Cornwallis attempted to escape on the night of the 16th, but was foiled by a tremendous storm.[1] Three days afterward [October 19, 1781], he surrendered his soldiers and posts, his seamen and shipping, into the hands of Washington and De Grasse.[2]

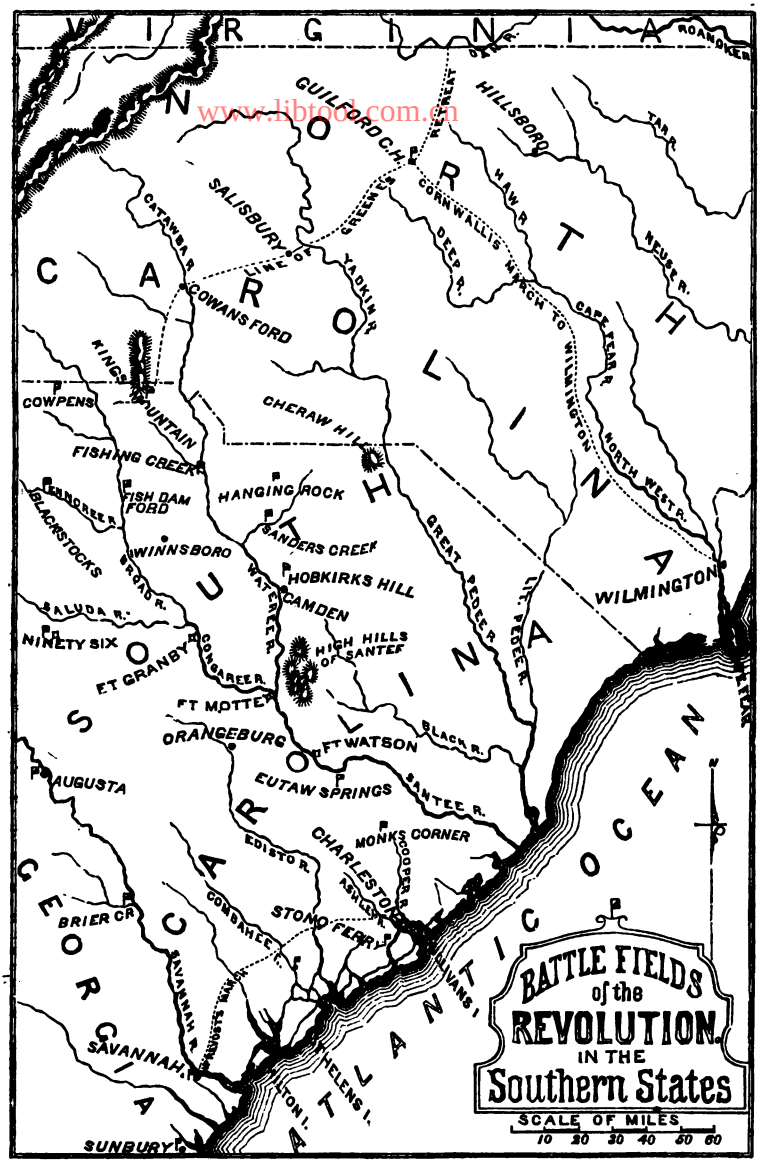
17. A few days after the surrender of Cornwallis, Clinton appeared off the entrance to Chesapeake bay, with seven thousand men. He was too late. The withering blow to British power in America had been struck, and he returned to New York, amazed and disheartened. All over the land were heard voices of thanksgiving for the great victory which gave assurances of peace. The Tories were silenced and awed; and the war party in Great Britain, utterly confounded, began to talk of the *expediency* of peace.[3] The administration of Lord North, which had misled the

1. He made preparations to cross the York river to Gloucester, break through the line of French troops stationed there, and, by forced marches through Maryland, escape to New York. A fearful storm of wind and rain came on suddenly, and compelled him to abandon the design.

2. The British lost one hundred and fifty-six killed, three hundred and twenty-six wounded, and seventy missing. The combined armies lost, in killed and wounded, about three hundred. Among the spoils were seventy-five brass, and one hundred and sixty iron cannon; seven thousand seven hundred and ninety-four muskets; twenty-eight regimental standards; a large quantity of musket and cannon balls, and nearly eleven thousand dollars in specie in the military chest. The army was surrendered to Washington, and the shipping and seamen to De Grasse. The latter soon afterward left the Chesapeake and went to the West Indies.

3. Lord George Germaine said that Lord North received the intelligence as he would have done a cannon-ball in his breast. He paced the room, and throwing his arms wildly about, kept exclaiming, "O God! it is all over, it is all over!"

QUESTIONS.—16. Can you give an account of the siege and capture of Yorktown? 17. What can you tell of Clinton's movements? What were the effects of the capture of Cornwallis and his army?


VIRGINIA
ROANOKE R.
NORTH CAROLINA
SOUTH CAROLINA
GEORGIA
ATLANTIC OCEAN
GUILFORD C.H.
HILLSBORO
TAR R.
NEUSE R.
CATAWBA R.
SALISBURY
CORNWALLIS'S MARCH TO WILMINGTON
DEEP R.
YADKIN R.
COWANS FORD
CAPE FEAR R.
NORTH WEST R.
KINGS MOUNTAIN
COWPENS
CHERAW HILL
FISHING CREEK
FISH DAM FORD
HANGING ROCK
SANDERS CREEK
GREAT PEDEE R.
LITTLE PEDEE R.
WILMINGTON
BLACKSTOCKS
BROAD R.
WINNSBORO
HOBKIRKS HILL
CAMDEN
SALUDA R.
NINETY SIX
WATEREE R.
HIGH HILLS OF SANTEE
FT GRANBY
CONGAREE R.
FT MOTTE
ORANGEBURG
FT WATSON
BLACK R.
AUGUSTA
EUTAW SPRINGS
SANTEE R.
MONKS CORNER
CHARLESTON
COOPER R.
ASHLEY R.
EDISTO R.
BRIER CR
COMBAHEE R.
STONO FERRY
SAVANNAH R.
SAVANNAH
AUGUSTA'S MARCH
HELENS I.
EVANS I.
TON I.
SUNBURY
BATTLE FIELDS of the REVOLUTION IN THE Southern States
SCALE OF MILES
10 20 30 40 50 60

nation for twelve years, gave way to the control of more liberal men [March, 1782]; and early in May, Sir Guy Carlton[1] arrived in New York, with propositions for a reconciliation.

www.ndtool.com.cn

SECTION IX.

CLOSING EVENTS OF THE WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE [1782–1789].

1. The news of the surrender of Cornwallis was hailed in Greene's army[2] [October 30, 1781], in South Carolina, as an omen of peace, and Governor Rutledge[3] called a legislative assembly to reëstablish civil authority. Pardon was offered to offending Tories, and hundreds came from the British lines to accept the favor. The British at Wilmington fled to the vicinity of Charleston for safety; Wayne watched the enemy at Savannah; and Washington kept Clinton and his army close prisoners in New York.

2. On the 4th of March, 1782, the British House of Commons[4] resolved to end the war. Orders for a cessation of hostilities speedily went forth to the British commanders in America. On the 11th of July [1782] the British evacuated Savannah, and on the 14th of December following, they also departed from Charleston.[5] They remained in New York almost a year longer [November 25, 1783], under the command of Sir Guy Carleton,[6] who succeeded Sir Henry Clinton, because the final negotiations

1. Verse 19, page 136. 2. Verse 12, page 186.
3. Verse 3, page 174. 4. The popular branch of the British Parliament.
5. During the preceding summer, General Leslie, the British commander at Charleston, made several attempts to penetrate the country for the purpose of seizing provisions for his army. Late in August, he attempted to ascend the Combahee for that purpose, when he was opposed by the Americans under General Gist, of the Maryland line. Colonel John Laurens volunteered in the service; and in a skirmish at daybreak, on the 25th of August, he was killed. The last blood of the Revolution was shed at Stono Ferry (verse 5, page 168) in September following, when Captain Wilmot was killed in a skirmish with a British foraging party.
6. Verse 19, page 136.

QUESTIONS.—1. How did Greene's army receive the news of the defeat of Cornwallis? What did the authorities of South Carolina do? How and where were the British watched? 2. What peace measures were taken by Parliament? What can you tell of the British leaving our shores?

Negotiations for peace. | Treaty of peace agreed to.

for peace were not completed, by ratification, until near that time.[1]

3. Five commissioners[2] were appointed by the United States to conclude a treaty of peace with Great Britain. They met two English commissioners, for that purpose, at Paris, and there, on the 30th of November, 1782, they signed a preliminary treaty. French and English commissioners also signed a treaty of peace on the 20th of January following. Congress ratified the action of its commissioners in April, 1783, yet negotiations were in progress until September following, when a definitive treaty was signed[3] [September 3, 1783] at Paris. At the same time, defini-

1. The following is a list of the principal battles of the Revolution, with the dates of their occurrence:

Name.	Date.	Page
1775.		
Lexington,	April 19.	130
Bunker Hill,	June 17.	133
Siege of St. John's,	Nov.	136
Quebec,	Dec. 31.	137
1776.		
Fort Moultrie,	June 28.	142
Long Island,	Aug. 27.	145
White Plains,	Oct. 28.	147
Fort Washington,	Nov. 16.	147
Trenton,	Dec. 26.	148
1777.		
Princeton,	Jan. 3.	151
Ridgefield,	April 27.	153
Hubbardton,	July 7.	157
Oriskany	Aug. 6.	158
Bennington,	Aug. 16.	158
Brandywine,	Sept. 11.	155
Bemis's Heights,	Sept. 19.	159
Paoli,	Sept. 20.	155
Germantown,	Oct. 4.	156
Forts Clinton and Montgomery,	Oct. 6.	160
Saratoga,	Oct. 7.	159
Fort Mercer,	Oct. 22.	156
Fort Mifflin,	Nov. 16.	156
1778.		
Monmouth,	June 28.	162
Wyoming,	July 3.	164
Quaker Hill or Rhode Island,	Aug. 29.	163
Savannah,	Dec. 29.	165
1779.		
Sunbury,	Jan. 9.	166
Kettle Creek,	Feb. 14.	167
Brier Creek,	March 3.	167
Stono Ferry,	June 20.	168
Stony Point,	July 15.	169
Penobscot,	Aug. 13.	169
Paulus' Hook,	July 19.	169
Indian Country in New York,	Aug. 29.	170
Flamboro' Head,	Sept. 23.	172, n.
Savannah,	Oct. 9.	171
1780.		
Monk's Corner,	April 14.	175, n.
Santee Ferry,	May 6.	175, n.
Charleston,	May 12.	175
Waxhaw,	May 29.	175, n.
Springfield,	June 23.	178
Rocky Mount,	July 30.	176
Hanging Rock,	Aug. 6.	176
Sanders's Creek,	Aug. 16.	177
Fishing Creek,	Aug. 18.	177
King's Mountain,	Oct. 7.	178
Fish Dam Ford,	Nov. 12.	178, n.
Blackstock,	Nov. 20.	178, n.
1781.		
Cowpens,	Jan. 17.	182
Guilford Court House,	March 15.	183
Hobkirk's Hill,	April 25.	184
Ninety-Six,	June 18.	185
Fort Griswold,	Sept. 6.	187, n.
Eutaw Springs,	Sept. 8.	186
Yorktown,	Oct. 19.	188
1782.		
Combahee,	Aug. 25.	190, n.
Stono Ferry,	Sept. —.	190, n.

2. This number was appointed in order that different sections of the Union might be represented. The commissioners were John Adams, John Jay, Dr. Franklin, Thomas Jefferson, and Henry Laurens. Jefferson did not serve.

3. England acknowledged the independence of the United States; allowed ample boundaries, extending northward to the great lakes, and westward to the Mississippi, and an unlimited right of fishing on the banks of Newfoundland. The two Floridas were restored to Spain.

Questions.—3. What can you tell of treaties at the close of the war.

tive treaties between England, France, Spain, and Holland, were signed by their respective commissioners, and the United States became an acknowledged Power among the nations of the earth.

4. With the joy that gladdened the Americans on the return of peace, were mingled gloomy apprehensions of coming evil, foreshadowed in the murmurings of the unpaid soldiers,[1] the condition of the finances, and the jealousies of the States. For a long time the soldiers had been unpaid, for the Treasury was empty. Crafty men increased their discontent by charging Congress with neglect; and finally, when, in the spring of 1783, the time drew near for the disbanding of the army, an address was circulated through the American camp at Newburg, on the Hudson, which advised the army to take matters into their own hands, make a demonstration that should arouse the fears of the people and of Congress, and thus obtain justice for themselves. Washington's sagacity and prudence nipped a mischievous scheme in the bud.

5. On the eighth anniversary of the skirmish at Lexington [April 19, 1783], a cessation of hostilities was proclaimed in the army, and on the 3d of November following, that glorious Continental army was disbanded, and its members returned quietly to their homes.[2] Washington met his officers in New York [December 4, 1783], and affectionately parted with them. Then he hastened to Annapolis, in Maryland, where the Congress was sitting, with General Mifflin at their head, and resigned into their hands [December 23] the commission which he received [June 16, 1775] from them more than eight years before. It was a spectacle of great moral sublimity.

GENERAL MIFFLIN.

1. Verse 1, page 181.

2. Of the 230,000 Continental soldiers, and the 56,000 militia, who bore arms during the war, only twelve now [August, 1864] remain among us, and the average age of these is over ninety years. Great Britain sent to America, during the war, one hundred and twelve thousand five hundred and eighty-four troops for the land service, and more than twenty-two thousand seamen. Of all this host, not one is known to be living.

QUESTIONS.—4. What produced uneasiness on the return of peace? What can you tell about seditious movements in the army at Newburg? 5. What can you tell about the proclamation of peace in the army? What about the disbandment of the army? What did Washington do? Give an account of his giving up his commission.

Like Cincinnatus, the patriotic Roman,[1] Washington laid down the cares of state, and returned to his farm on the banks of the Potomac. Already the last hostile foot had departed [November 25, 1783], and his country was free.

www.libtool.com.cn

6. When the war was ended, and the common danger past, the Americans found themselves without a sufficient bond of union, in the form of organic law, to entitle them to the character of a nation. *The Articles of Confederation*[2] allowed the exercise of so much independent power by the several States, and so little by the Congress or national legislature, that no system of taxation, for the payment of the heavy public debt,[3] or for carrying on the Government, could be put in practice; and the States, all impoverished by the war, found it difficult to collect taxes for their individual uses.[4] Congress could only *recommend* certain measures to the several States; they could not *demand* any action for the public good.

7. Thoughtful men saw the dangers to which the young Republic was exposed by this loose system of government—this

1. A little while before the final disbanding of the army, many of the officers, then at Newburg, on the Hudson, met [June 19, 1783], and formed an association, which they named the Society of the Cincinnati. The chief objects of the society were to promote cordial friendship and indissoluble union among themselves; to commemorate, by frequent reunions, the great struggle they had just passed through; to use their best endeavors for the promotion of human liberty; to cherish good feeling between the respective States; and to extend benevolent aid to those of the society whose circumstances might require it. The *order* of the society consists of a gold eagle, suspended upon a ribbon, on the breast of which is a medallion with a device representing Cincinnatus receiving the Roman senators.

ORDER.

2. Verse 2, page 150.

3. According to an estimate made by the register of the Treasury in 1790, the entire cost of the war for independence was at least *one hundred and thirty millions* of dollars, exclusive of vast sums lost by individuals and the several States. The Treasury payments amounted to almost *ninety-three millions*, chiefly in Continental bills. The foreign debt amounted to *eight millions* of dollars; and the domestic debt, due chiefly to the officers and soldiers of the Revolution, was more than *thirty millions* of dollars.

4. This effort produced great excitement in many of the States; and in Massachusetts, in 1786, the people openly rebelled. The insurrection became so formidable, that an armed force of several thousand men was required to suppress it. The insurgents were led by Daniel Shay, and it is known in history as *Shay's Rebellion*.

In the convention which framed the National Constitution, no subject created more earnest debate than a proposition for the General Government to assume the debts of the States contracted in providing means for carrying on the war. The debts of the several States were unequal. Those of Massachusetts and South Carolina amounted to more than ten millions and a half of dollars, while the debts of all the other States did not extend, in the aggregate, to fifteen millions. This assumption was finally made, to the amount of $21,500,000.

Questions.—6. What great want did the Americans feel? What have you to say of the weakness of the leagues of States?

mere league of States—and earnestly sought a remedy. A better system of commercial regulations was demanded; and in September, 1786, delegates from six States met in convention at Annapolis, in Maryland, to consider the matter. They did more. They suggested the propriety of holding another convention, for the purpose of amending the *Articles of Confederation*,[1] so as to give greater powers to the General Government. Accordingly, in May, 1787, representatives from all the States but Rhode Island, met in convention in the State House in Philadelphia,[2] with Washington as president.

8. It was soon perceived that the *Articles of Confederation* were too faulty for amendment. They were cast aside, and the convention set about making a new instrument. All agreed that a greater centralization of power was essential to the existence of the Republic, and that what was called independent State sovereignty, as displayed under the *Articles of Confederation*, was so dangerous to national life, that it must be made subordinate to the sovereignty of the General Government. With this central idea they proceeded, and formed the National Constitution [September, 1787] under which we live.[3]

9. This Constitution was submitted for consideration to conventions of the people in the several States, in which it was discussed with warmth and ability. It was finally ratified by these conventions in nine States (the requisite number); and, on the 4th of March, 1789, the Continental Congress expired, and the National Constitution became the organic law of the Republic. Thus was consummated the last and most important act in the war for independence. Then the *Nation* was born.[4] Then the Republic of THE UNITED STATES commenced its glorious career.

1. Verse 2, page 150. 2. Verse 9, page 142.

3. The Constitution was submitted to Congress [September 28, 1787], then in session, and that body sent copies of it to the several State Legislatures, in order that it might be considered in conventions of the people.

4. Hitherto the Government of Great Britain had refused to acknowledge the new Republic as a sovereignty, because its action was controlled by the legislatures of thirteen independent States; now the people had invested the General Government with supremacy in national affairs, and for the first time Great Britain sent an embassador to represent its sovereignty at the seat of the Government of the Republic.

QUESTIONS.—7. What did thoughtful men do? What can you tell of two conventions to form a more perfect government? 8. What did the last convention perceive and consider? What did that convention do? 9. What was done with the National Constitution then adopted? What did the people do? What was the glorious result?

www.libtool.com.cn

CHAPTER VI.

THE NATION.

SECTION I.

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION [1789–1797].

1. WHEN the *National Constitution*[1] had received the approbation of the people, and was made the supreme law of the land, General Washington was chosen, by the unanimous vote of the electors,[2] the first President or chief magistrate of the Republic, and John Adams was made Vice-President. On the 30th of April, 1789, Washington stood upon the street gallery of the old City Hall, New York, and there, in the presence of a vast concourse of people, took the oath of office, which was administered by Chancellor Livingston.[3]

1. This instrument, in language and general arrangement, is the work of Gouverneur Morris, into whose hands the convention of 1787 placed the crude materials which had been adopted at various times during the session. Gouverneur Morris was born near New York, in 1752. He was a lawyer, and active in public life. In 1792 he was appointed minister to France, and after his return he was a legislator for many years. He died in 1816.

2. These are men elected by the people in the various States, to meet and choose a President and Vice-President of the United States. Their number is equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the several States are entitled. So the people do not vote directly for the chief magistrate. Formerly, the man who received the highest number of votes was declared to be President, and he who received the next highest number was proclaimed Vice-President. Now these are voted for as distinct candidates for separate offices.

3. One of the committee (verse 10, page 143) to draft the Declaration of Independence. He was born in New York in 1747, became a lawyer, and was always an active public man. He was minister to France in 1801, when he purchased Louisiana for the United States. He died in 1813.

GOUVERNEUR MORRIS.

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell about the choice of the first President of the United States? When and where did he take the oath of office?

WASHINGTON, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

2. The first session of Congress was chiefly devoted to the organization of the new Government, and the arrangement of measures for the future prosperity of the Republic. The public finances and a system of revenues first engaged their attention. Three Executive Departments were created; namely, Treasury, War, and Foreign Affairs, the heads of which were to be styled *Secretaries*, instead of *Ministers*, as in Europe. These the President might appoint or dismiss with the concurrence of the Senate of the United States. They were to constitute a cabinet council, always ready for consultation with the President on public affairs, and bound to give him their opinions in writing, when required. A national judiciary was established, consisting of a Supreme Court, having a Chief Justice and five associates;[1] also, circuit and district courts, which had jurisdiction over certain specified cases.

3. The Congress adjourned on the 29th of September [1789], and Washington, having appointed his cabinet council,[2] made a brief tour in New England, to make himself better acquainted with the people and their resources. The second session of Congress began early in January, 1790, when Mr. Hamilton, the Secretary of the Treasury, made able reports on the monetary affairs

1. John Jay was appointed Chief Justice; John Rutledge (verse 3, page 174), of South Carolina; James Wilson, of Pennsylvania; William Cushing, of Massachusetts; Robert H. Harrison, of Maryland; and John Blair, of Virginia, were appointed Associate Justices.

2. Alexander Hamilton was appointed Secretary of the Treasury; Henry K[illegible]x, Secretary of War; and Thomas Jefferson, Secretary of Foreign Affairs. Jefferson was then United States minister at the court of France, and did not enter upon his duties until March, 1790. The office of Secretary of the Navy was not created until the presidency of Mr. Adams. Naval affairs were under the control of the Secretary of War.

QUESTIONS.—2. What chiefly engaged the attention of Congress at their first session? What can you tell about the Executive Departments? What about a national judiciary? 3. What can you tell about the adjournment of Congress, the President's tour, and the second session?

of the nation. On his recommendation the National Government assumed the public debt incurred during the Revolution,[1] and also the debts of the several States, contracted during that period.[2] A wise revenue system, proposed by Hamilton, was adopted; and an act was passed, making a territory, ten miles square, on the Potomac river, which was named the District of Columbia, the permanent seat of the National Government, after the lapse of ten years from that date.

www.libool.com.cn

ALEXANDER HAMILTON.

4. Since the organization of the Government, the people of North Carolina and Rhode Island, in conventions assembled, had adopted the Constitution;[3] and, during the third session of the first Congress, which commenced in December, 1790, Vermont was admitted [February, 1791] to the Union as a State.[4] During that session the foundations of public credit and national prosperity were formally laid. Settlements were rapidly spreading beyond the Alleghany mountains,[5] where two immense Territories had been established,[6] and the subject of further territorial organization was pressed upon the attention of Congress. That body, in accordance with the recommendation of Hamilton, authorized the creation of a national bank,[7] and the establishment of a mint,[8] for national coinage.

1. Note 3, page 193.
2. The Government assumed the payment of State debts to the amount of $21,000,000.
3. Verse 9, page 194.
4. Vermont was originally called the *New Hampshire Grants*, and was claimed by both New York and New Hampshire. In 1777, the people met in convention, and proclaimed the Territory an independent State. After purchasing the claims of New York for $30,000, it was admitted into the Union.
5. The first census, or enumeration of the inhabitants of the United States, was completed in 1791. The number of all sexes and color was 3,929,000. The number of slaves was 695,000.
6. One, embracing the present States of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, and Wisconsin, was established in July, 1787, by the name of the *North-western Territory*, and the domain of Tennessee was constituted the *Territory South-west of the Ohio*, in March, 1790.
7. At that time the whole banking capital in the United States was only $2,000,000, invested in the *Bank of North America* at Philadelphia, established by Robert Morris (verse 2, page 181) in 1781, the *Bank of New York*, in New York city, and the *Bank of Massachusetts*, in Boston. The Bank of the United States began its operations in corporate form, in February, 1794, with a capital of $10,000,000.
8. The first mint went into operation in 1792, in Philadelphia, and remained the sole issuer of coin, in the United States, until 1835, when a branch was established in each of the States of Georgia, North Carolina, and Louisiana.

QUESTIONS.—3. What financial measures were adopted? What provision was made for a permanent seat of government? 4. What States joined the Union? What have you to say about the public credit and new settlements? What about a national bank and mint?

5. Trouble with the Indians north-west of the Ohio now appeared. They were excited to hostilities by British agents and traders.[1] Their acts became so hostile that, in the summer of 1790, General Harmer was sent into their country to awe them by chastisement. Near the present village of Fort Wayne, in Indiana, he was defeated by the savages in two battles [October 17 and 22, 1790]. A year later, General St. Clair, then governor of the North-western Territory, marched into the Indian country with two thousand men. He was surprised and driven back [November 4, 1791], with a loss of about six hundred men.

6. General Wayne succeeded St. Clair. He swept victoriously through the Indian country, to the Maumee river, and, near the present Maumee City, Ohio, he struck the savages such a severe blow [August 20, 1794] that they begged for peace. A year afterward [August, 1795], a treaty was made with the principal Indian leaders, at Greenville, by which the United States acquired a large domain, and secured peace for more than fifteen years.

7. Before the second presidential election occurred, in the autumn of 1792, two distinct political parties had been formed, the leaders of which were members of Washington's cabinet. One party, headed by Jefferson, was called *Republican* or *Democratic*, and the other, headed by Hamilton, was called *Federalist*.[2] The lines were clearly drawn; and their hostility became bitter as the time for the election drew nigh. Washington and Adams were reëlected by large majorities, yet the opposition or Republican party was rapidly increasing in strength. They sympathized with the French revolutionists, who had lately abolished royalty,

1. For several years after the peace of 1783 (verse 3, page 191), the British, in violation of the treaty then made, held possession of military posts in the West, belonging to the United States. Until the creation of a nation by the adoption of the *Constitution* in 1788, the British authorities treated the United States with contempt. They held these forts, believing, no doubt, that the States would again become British provinces. The forts were not given up until 1796.

2. The Federalists advocated the National Constitution, which concentrated power in the General Government. The Republicans advocated the supremacy of the States, in most cases, and were more favorable to the old *Confederation* than to the new National Government. They did not advocate a return to it, but with the specious plea for a diffusion of power among the people, they sought to weaken that of the General Government. These parties had distinct organizations for about twenty years.

QUESTIONS.—5. What can you tell about troubles with the Indians, and war with them? 6. Can you give an account of Wayne's movements in the Indian country? What was the result? 7. What can you tell about the formation of political parties? What about the reëlection of Washington and Adams, and the sympathies of the Republicans?

murdered their king, and proclaimed *liberty, equality, and fraternity*, as the true basis of government.

8. The French democrats, holding the government of France, sent M. Genet, an ardent republican, to represent that so-called republic, in this country. He was received with open arms by a large party arrayed against the United States Government. He at once proceeded to set that Government at defiance, by fitting out privateers in its ports to depredate on the commerce of England, Spain, and Holland, against which delirious France had proclaimed war; and he sneered at Washington's proclamation of neutrality,[1] which was instrumental in keeping the United States free from the perils of entanglement in European politics. Washington finally requested his recall [July, 1793], and the French Government formally disapproved of Genet's proceedings.

9. One of the fruits of the influence of French politics was an armed resistance to the officers of the Government in Western Pennsylvania, when they attempted to collect a tax levied on domestic-distilled whiskey. This was in the summer of 1794. The President issued two proclamations [August 7—September 25] warning the insurgents to desist, and he finally sent General Lee, of Virginia, with competent military power to enforce obedience. The rebellion, which is known in history as *The Whiskey Insurrection*, was soon suppressed.[2]

JOHN JAY.

10. At this time [1794] a bitter feeling was growing up between the American and British Governments. There were mutual accusations of a violation of the treaty of 1783.[3] Finally,

1. This was issued on the 9th of May, 1793, and declared it to be the duty and the interest of the people of the United States to preserve a strict neutrality toward the contending Powers of Europe.

2. The insurrection became general in all the western counties, and in the vicinity of Pittsburg many outrages were committed. Buildings were burned, mails were robbed, and Government officers were insulted and abused. It was estimated that at one time the insurgents numbered seven thousand.

3. Note 1, page 198. The Americans complained that no indemnification had been made for negroes carried away at the close of the Revolution; that the British held military posts

QUESTIONS.—8. What can you tell about the representative of the French democrats? What did he do? What did Washington do? 9. What have you to say about French politics and an insurrection in Pennsylvania?

in the spring of 1794, John Jay was appointed a special envoy to Great Britain, to adjust all matters in dispute. He negotiated a treaty which was not satisfactory to all parties at home.[1] It met with the most violent opposition, but was finally ratified by the Senate on the 24th of June, 1795. In October following, a treaty was concluded with Spain, by which the boundary lines between her territories of Louisiana and Florida, and the United States, were defined.

www.ipbook.com.cn

11. American commerce now began to find its way into the Mediterranean sea, and was there met by Algerine pirates, who seized the property and held the seamen as slaves for ransom.[2] These depredations called for a navy to protect American commerce, and, in 1794, Congress made appropriations for the creation of one. Until that work was accomplished, our Government was compelled to pay tribute to the dey or governor of Algiers, as a bribe to let our commerce alone.

12. The Administration of Washington was now drawing to a close. It had been one of vast importance and incessant action. The machinery of a National Government had been put in motion, and the foreign and domestic policy of the Republic had been settled. It was a glorious Administration; and its last year was signalized by the admission of Tennessee into the Union as a State. And now the second struggle for ascendency between the *Federalists* and *Republicans* occurred. Washington would not again accept the office of President.[3] The Federalists nominated

---

on their frontiers, contrary to the treaty; that British emissaries had excited the hostility of the Indians, and that to retaliate on France, the English had captured our neutral vessels, and impressed our seamen into the British service. The British complained that stipulations concerning the property of Loyalists, and also in relation to debts contracted in England before the close of the war, had not been complied with.

1. The most serious objections to it were that it provided for the collection of debts here, by British creditors, which had been contracted before the Revolution, and failed to procure redress for those who had lost negroes.

2. Between the years 1785 and 1793, the Algerine pirates captured and carried into Algiers fifteen American vessels, used the property, and made one hundred and eighty officers and seamen slaves of the most revolting kind. In 1795 the United States agreed, by treaty, to pay $800,000 for captives then alive, and in addition, to make the dey, or governor, a present of a frigate, worth $100,000. An annual tribute of $23,000, in maritime stores, was also to be paid. This was complied with until the breaking out of the war of 1812.

3. In September, 1796, Washington published his immortal *Farewell Address* to his countrymen. It is a most precious legacy to posterity. It is a plea for Union, and was drawn

---

QUESTIONS.—10. What were now the relations between the United States and Great Britain? What can you tell about a treaty between them and the United States and Spain? 11. What can you tell about commerce and the Algerines? 12. What have you to say about the close of Washington's Administration? What can you tell about a struggle between the Federalists and Republicans, and the result? What did Washington do?

John Adams, and the Republicans, Thomas Jefferson. The contest was close and fierce. Adams was chosen President, and Jefferson Vice-President. On the 4th of March, 1796, Washington retired from public office, and returned to Mount Vernon with the hope that he should never be called from it again.

SECTION II.

JOHN ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION [1797–1801].

1. President Adams retained the cabinet officers left by Washington.[1] Unpleasant relations between the United States and France[2] then existing, caused him to call an extraordinary session of Congress on the 15th of May, 1797, to consider the matter. That body, in July, appointed three envoys, with Charles Cotesworth Pinckney at their head, to proceed to France for the adjustment of all difficulties. The French Government refused to receive them [October, 1797] until they should pay a large sum of money into the treasury of that country. The demand was indignantly refused; and only the Republican envoy (Mr. Gerry) was allowed to remain in France.

JOHN ADAMS, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

from the great patriot by the evidences of a growing hostility to the Union, among the political leaders in his native State of Virginia. The Great Civil War has shown the necessity for such a plea and warning.

1. Timothy Pickering, Secretary of State; Oliver Wolcott, Secretary of the Treasury; James McHenry, Secretary of War; and Charles Lee, Attorney-General. Washington's first cabinet had all resigned during the early part of his second term of office (the President is elected for four years), and the above-named gentlemen were appointed during 1795 and 1796.

2. The republican Government of France was administered by a council called the *Directory*. It was composed of five members, and ruled in connection with two representative bodies, called, respectively, the *Council of Ancients* and the *Council of Five Hundred*. The *Directory* was the head, or executive power of the Government.

QUESTIONS.—1. What did President Adams do? What did Congress do? What can you tell of the conduct of the French Government?

2. War with the French seemed inevitable, and the Americans prepared for it. In May, 1798, a large provisional army was authorized, and Washington was appointed [July] commander-in-chief. A Navy Department was organized, and a naval armament ordered. Hostilities on the ocean were commenced, and it was evident that the young Republic was conscious of strength. This dignified and decided course modified the haughty tone of the French Directory, and that body humbly proposed an adjustment. Adams appointed three envoys for the purpose [February, 1799], but when they arrived the weak Directory was gone, and Napoleon Bonaparte was ruler of France [November, 1799] as First Consul. Peace was established between the two Governments, and the provisional army of the United States was disbanded.

www.libtool.com.cn

3. In the summer of 1798, two very unpopular acts, called the *Alien* and *Sedition Laws*,[1] were passed, and approved by Mr. Adams. Much excitement ensued. At the middle of December, the following year, Washington died. The event produced a most profound sensation in the public mind in America and in Europe. Impressive funeral ceremonies were observed by Congress and the people; and millions of men who loved genuine freedom, sincerely mourned him as a lost friend.

4. In the summer of 1800, the seat of the National Government was removed to the city of Washington, in the District of Columbia.[2] Then commenced the third struggle for power between the *Federalist* and *Republican* parties. Messrs. Adams and Pinckney were nominated for President by the former, and the latter nominated Mr. Jefferson and Aaron Burr. The Republicans were successful. Jefferson and Burr having an equal number of votes,

1. The first authorized the President to expel from the country any alien (not a citizen) who should be suspected of conspiring against the Republic. It was computed that there were then more than thirty thousand Frenchmen in the United States. The Sedition Law authorized the suppression of publications calculated to weaken the authority of the Government. These were unpopular, because they might lead to great abuses.

2. Verse 3, page 196. A tract ten miles square, on each side of the Potomac, and ceded to the United States by Maryland and Virginia, in 1790. The city of Washington was laid out there in 1791, and the erection of the Capitol was commenced in 1793.

Questions.—2. What can you tell about preparations for war with France? What were the effects of these preparations? How were peaceful relations restored? 3. What else distinguished the Administration of Adams? What have you to say of the death of Washington? 4. What can you tell about the seat of government? What about another struggle between the Federalists and Republicans? What about an election?

the election was carried to the House of Representatives, when Jefferson was chosen, and Burr became Vice-President.[1]

www.libtool.com.cn

SECTION III.

JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION [1801–1809].

JEFFERSON, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

1. Chief-Justice Marshall[2] administered the oath of office to Mr. Jefferson, in the new Capitol, on the 4th of March, 1801. He retained in his cabinet, for a while, Mr. Adams's Secretaries of the Treasury and Navy, but called Republicans to the other seats.[3] He commenced his Administration with vigor, and his political foes confessed his wisdom and forecast. During his first term, one State and two Territories were added to the Union, namely, Ohio and the Territories of New Orleans and Louisiana. Ohio was formed of a part of the Northwestern Territory,[4] and the two latter, of the magnificent domain of Louisiana, which the United States purchased from France in the spring of 1803, for fifteen millions of dollars.[5]

1. The choice fell upon Mr. Jefferson, after thirty-five ballotings; and Mr. Burr was proclaimed Vice-President. During 1800, another enumeration of the inhabitants of the Union was made. The population was then 5,319,762, an increase of 1,400,000 in ten years. The revenue, which amounted to $4,771,000 in 1790, amounted to almost $13,000,000 in 1800.

2. He was appointed in January, 1801.

3. James Madison, Secretary of State; Henry Dearborn, Secretary of War; Levy Lincoln, Attorney-General. Before the meeting of Congress, in December, he appointed Albert Gallatin Secretary of the Treasury, and Robert Smith Secretary of the Navy. They were both Republicans.

4. Verse 4, page 197.

5. In violation of a treaty made in the year 1795, the Spanish governor of Louisiana closed the port of New Orleans in 1802. Great excitement prevailed throughout the Western set-

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell about Jefferson? What did he do about cabinet officers? What have you to say about his actions, and the additions of States and Territories to the Union?

2. The increasing insolence of the piratical Powers on the Mediterranean[1] caused the United States Government to cease paying tribute, in 1801; and Captain Bainbridge was sent, with the frigate *George Washington*, to cruise in those waters. Depredations continued, and in 1803 Commodore Preble was sent thither to humble the pirates. He brought the emperor of Morocco to terms, and then appeared before Tripoli, where one of his vessels (*Philadelphia*) struck upon a rock and was captured.[2] Early in the following year, Lieutenant Decatur, with sixty men, went boldly into the harbor in the evening [February 4, 1804], boarded the *Philadelphia*, drove the crew from her deck, and set her on fire, under a cannonade from the shore. He did not lose a man.

UNITED STATES FRIGATE.

COMMODORE BAINBRIDGE.

LIEUTENANT DECATUR.

3. This bold act alarmed the Tripolitan ruler, yet he withstood the Americans, in a severe action, on the 3d of August. His capital was now approached from another quarter. Early in the spring of 1805, some American seamen and Mohammedan soldiers,[3]

tlements; and a proposition was made in Congress to take forcible possession of the territory. It was ascertained that, by a secret treaty, the country had been ceded to France, by Spain. Negotiations for its purchase were immediately opened with Napoleon, and the bargain was consummated in April, 1803. The United States took peaceable possession in the autumn of that year. It contained about 85,000 mixed inhabitants, and about 40,000 negro slaves. When this bargain was consummated, Napoleon said, prophetically, "This accession of territory strengthens forever the power of the United States; and I have just given to England a maritime rival that will sooner or later humble her pride."

1. Morocco, Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli, in Africa. They were known as the Barbary Powers.

2. The *Philadelphia* was commanded by Bainbridge. The officers were treated as prisoners of war, but the seamen were made slaves.

3. These soldiers were followers of Hamet, brother of the reigning bashaw or governor of Tripoli. That ruler had murdered his father and elder brother, usurped the throne, and driven Hamet into exile. The latter joined Eaton for purposes of revenge and a hope of obtaining the seat of his brother.

QUESTIONS.—2. What can you tell about the pirates in the Mediterranean sea? What did the United States navy do there? What brave act was done at Tripoli?

under General William Eaton, left Alexandria, in Egypt, marched a thousand miles across Northern Africa, and, on the 27th of April, captured the Tripolitan city of Derne, on the Mediterranean. They passed on toward Tripoli, but, before their arrival, the terrified ruler had made terms of peace [June 3, 1805] with Mr. Lear, the American consul-general.[1] The *Tripolitan War*, as it was called, restrained, but did not subdue the pirates. That business was left for Decatur to perform ten years afterward.

MOHAMMEDAN SOLDIER.

4. Settlements were now being rapidly planted in the great valley of the Mississippi, by an energetic, enterprising, and restless population. They were remote from the immediate care or control of the National Government, and animated by a spirit of the most absolute independence. Their Spanish neighbors in Louisiana showed a reluctance to submit to the laws of the United States.[2] These facts caused Aaron Burr,[3] whose murder of General Hamilton in a duel [July 12, 1804] had made him detested by all honorable men, to look to that region as a theatre whereon he might play a part for his personal aggrandizement. In the summer of 1806, he secretly organized a military expedition in the Ohio region, professedly for the purpose of establishing an independent empire in Northern Mexico, now Texas. Men of character and substance were induced to join him, but he was soon suspected of a design to dismember the Union and form a separate confederacy west of the Alleghanies. He was arrested on a

AARON BURR.

1. A consul of this kind is a commercial agent of a Government in a foreign port. The word consul was applied, in the case of Napoleon, in the Roman sense, as the title of a chief magistrate during the republic.

2. Note 5, page 203.

3. Verse 4, page 202.

QUESTIONS.—3. What can you tell of the Tripolitan ruler? Can you give an account of an overland expedition against Tripoli? What was the result? 4. What have you to say about settlements in the West? What did Aaron Burr do? Relate the circumstances of his career at this time.

charge of treason, but on trial the crime was not proven, and he was acquitted. He was ever afterward an outcast.

5. In the same year [1807], Robert Fulton's experiments in steam navigation were crowned with perfect success, by a voyage from New York to Albany, in August, and regular voyages by his steamboat thereafter. This is a most important fact in the history of the United States and of the world; but its beneficent promises were then discerned by only a few. Events of vast importance were occupying the attention of the nation. Napoleon[1] was seated on the *throne* of France, as emperor, and all Europe was trembling in his presence. The United States, maintaining a strict neutrality, neither courted his favor nor feared his power; but the Americans soon found themselves interested spectators of European events, and were made sufferers by them.

FULTON'S STEAMBOAT.

ROBERT FULTON.

6. England and France were engaged in a fierce war, and in their efforts to damage each other, they violated the most sacred rights of the United States, as a neutral nation. By an order in council[2] [May, 1806], Great Britain declared a greater portion of the coast of Europe to be in a state of blockade. Napoleon retaliated, by issuing a decree at Berlin [November, 1806], declaring the blockade of all the ports of the British Islands. Similar orders and decrees were afterward issued; and thus the desperate gamesters played with the world's peace and prosperity. American vessels were seized by both English and French cruisers, and

1. Verse 2, page 202.

2. The British privy council consists of an indefinite number of gentlemen, chosen by the sovereign, and having no direct connection with the ministers. The sovereign may, under the advice of this council, issue orders of proclamation which, if not contrary to existing laws, are binding upon the subjects. These are for temporary purposes, and are called *orders in council.*

QUESTIONS.—5. What can you tell about Fulton and steam navigation? What have you to say about Napoleon and Europe, and the United States? 6. Can you give an account of the way by which England and France injured the United States? Why were the Americans powerless?

American commerce was reduced to a domestic coast trade. The Americans had no competent navy to protect their commerce, and the swarm of gun-boats[1] ordered by Congress were not sufficient for even a coast-guard.

www.libtool.com.cn

A FELLUCA GUN-BOAT.

7. The American merchants, and all in their interest, so deeply injured by the "orders" and "decrees" of the warring monarchs, demanded redress of grievances. Great excitement prevailed throughout the country, and the most bitter feeling was beginning to be felt against Great Britain. This was increased by her haughty assertion and offensive practice of the doctrine that she had the right to search American vessels for suspected deserters from the British navy,[2] and to carry away the suspected without hinderance. This right was strenuously denied, and its policy vehemently condemned, because American seamen might be thus forced into the British service, under the pretense that they were deserters. Indeed, this had already happened.

8. A crisis approached. Four seamen on board the United States frigate *Chesapeake*, were claimed as deserters from the British armed ship *Melampus*. They were demanded, but Commodore Barron, of the *Chesapeake*, refused to give them up. The *Chesapeake* left the coast of Virginia on a cruise on the 22d of June, 1807, and on the same day she was chased and attacked by the British frigate *Leopard*. Unsuspicious of danger and unprepared for an attack, Barron surrendered his vessel, after losing three men killed and eighteen wounded. The four men were then taken on board the *Leopard*, and the *Chesapeake* returned to Hampton roads. Investigation proved that three of the seamen

1. These were small sailing vessels, having a cannon at the bow and stern, and manned by full-armed men for the purpose of boarding other vessels.

2. England maintains the doctrine that a British subject can never become an alien. At the time in question, she held that she had a right to take her native-born subjects wherever found, and place them in the army or navy, even though, by legal process, they had become citizens of another nation. Our laws give equal protection to native and adopted citizens, and would not allow Great Britain to exercise her asserted privilege toward one of her subjects who had become a citizen of the United States.

QUESTIONS.—7. What did American merchants do? What offensive acts did Great Britain perform? What was said of them? 8. Can you give an account of the affair between the *Chesapeake* and *Leopard*?

(colored men) were native Americans, and that the fourth had been impressed into the British service, and had deserted.

9. This outrage aroused the nation and provoked retaliatory measures. The President issued a proclamation in July [1807], ordering all British armed vessels to leave the waters of the United States immediately, and forbidding any to enter, until full satisfaction for the recent insult, and security against future aggressions, should be made. In the mean time, France and England continued to play their desperate commercial game, unmindful of the interests of other nations, or the obligations of international law. When the National Congress met [December 22], they decreed an embargo, which detained all vessels, American and foreign, then in our ports, and ordered American vessels abroad to return home. Thus the chief commerce of the world was brought to a full stop. The embargo failed to accomplish its object, namely, the obtaining of justice from England and France, and it was removed in the spring of 1809, when all intercourse with those countries was forbidden.

10. While the nation was in this feverish state, Mr. Jefferson retired from office [March 4, 1809], and was succeeded by James Madison, as President, and George Clinton, as Vice-President.

SECTION IV.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION [1809–1817].

1. Mr. Madison entered upon the duties of his exalted station at a time of great commotion. He had been Mr. Jefferson's first cabinet officer for eight years,[1] and was perfectly familiar with public affairs. He chose a cabinet of able men;[2] and of the eleventh Congress,[3] a majority were his political friends. On

1. Note 3, page 203.
2. Robert Smith, Secretary of State; Albert Gallatin, Secretary of the Treasury; William Eustis, Secretary of War; Paul Hamilton, Secretary of the Navy; Cæsar Rodney, Attorney-General.
3. The duration of each Congress is two years.

QUESTIONS.—9. What followed the attack of the *Leopard* on the *Chesapeake*? What did England and France do? What did the American Congress do? What can you tell of an embargo? 10. What official change occurred?—1. What have you to say about Mr. Madison, his cabinet, and the political character of Congress?

account of the critical state of national affairs, the Congress were convened on the 22d of May [1809], and therein was found a very powerful party of Federalists,[1] hostile to Madison's political creed.

www.inproof.com.cn

2. On coming into office, Madison was assured by Mr. Erskine, the British minister, that a special envoy from Great Britain would soon arrive, to settle all matters in dispute. Supposing this to be an official communication, the President proclaimed [April, 1809] a renewal of commercial intercourse with Great Britain.[2] That Government disavowed Erskine's act, and in August the President again proclaimed non-intercourse.

MADISON, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

3. France and England continued their desperate game, inflicting great injury upon American commerce. The English went so far, in the spring of 1811, as to send armed ships into American waters, to seize American merchant vessels as prizes, under the operations of some order in council.[3] While engaged in this infamous business, the British sloop-of-war *Little Belt* was met by the American frigate *President*, Captain Rodgers, and answered the simple question, "Who are you?" with a cannon-shot. Rodgers opened upon the insolent foe, and, after killing and wounding thirty-two of his men, received a civil answer from her commander. Both Governments commended the acts of their respective officers.[4]

1. Verse 7, page 198.
2. In consequence of this assurance, and the peaceful aspect of affairs thereby given, the special session of Congress lasted only about five weeks.
3. Note 2, page 206.
4. Powerful as was the navy of Great Britain, and weak as was that of the United States, the latter was willing to accept of war as an alternative for submission, and to measure

QUESTIONS.—2. What can you tell about our Government and the British representatives on the subject of peace? What about non-intercourse? 3. What did France and England do? What can you tell about British emissaries? Give an account of the affair between the *President* and the *Little Belt*.

4. British emissaries were again successful in exciting the Indians to make war upon settlers on the American frontier.[1] Among the savage leaders who had been won to the British interest, was Tecumtha, an able Shawnoese warrior, who attempted to form a confederacy of Indian tribes, for the purpose of driving the Americans from the country north-westward of the Ohio river. His movements were so hostile in the spring and summer of 1811, that General Harrison, governor of the Indiana Territory, took measures to oppose him. In the autumn, Harrison marched up the Wabash with a considerable force, toward the Tippecanoe creek, where the Prophet,[2] an influential brother of Tecumtha, lived, and had collected many warriors. The Prophet professed friendship, and then treacherously attacked Harrison's camp before daylight [November 7, 1811] with savage fury. The Indians were repulsed after a bloody fight. The battle of Tippecanoe was one of the most desperate ever fought with the Indians, and both sides lost heavily.

5. There was now felt a general desire in the United States for war against England. But the Government, feeling the awful responsibility of proclaiming hostilities, hesitated, and suffered insults, until the British press insolently declared that the Americans "could not be kicked into a war." Forbearance ceased to be a virtue, and became a fault; and on the 19th of June, 1812, the President of the United States, by the authority of Congress, issued a proclamation which formally declared war against Great Britain. This is known in history as the War of 1812, or,

THE SECOND WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE.

6. Congress followed up the declaration of war by acts for

strength on the ocean. The British navy consisted of almost *nine hundred* vessels, with an aggregate of one hundred and forty-four thousand men. The American vessels of war, of large size, numbered only *twelve*, with an aggregate of about three hundred guns. Besides these, there were a great number of gun-boats (note 1, p. 207.) It must be remembered, however, that the British navy was necessarily very much scattered, for that Government had interests to protect in various parts of the globe.

1. Verse 5, page 198.

2. He was a fierce and cruel warrior. In 1809, General Harrison had negotiated a treaty with the *Miamies* and other tribes, by which they sold to the United States a large tract of

QUESTIONS.—4. What did British emissaries do? What can you tell about Tecumtha? Can you give an account of the Prophet, and the battle of Tippecanoe? 5. What feeling was created in the United States? What can you tell about hesitation? What about a declaration of war? By what title is that war properly called?

providing men and money to carry it on.[1] Henry Dearborn, of Massachusetts, was appointed general-in-chief, and his principal brigadiers were James Wilkinson, Wade Hampton, William Hull, and Joseph Bloomfield. These officers had all been active subalterns in the Revolution, or Old War for Independence. The chief object of the first campaign was the invasion and conquest of Canada.

GENERAL DEARBORN.

7. Hull was governor of Michigan, and, contrary to his advice, he was instructed to cross the Detroit river, invade Canada, and attack Fort Malden, eighteen miles below Detroit. Canada was invaded [July 12, 1812], but Malden was not attacked. The expedition was a failure. News had arrived of the capture of Mackinaw [July 17], a strong American barrier against the Indians of the far North-west; and a small force under Major Van Horne, sent to escort to Detroit some reënforcements and supplies, then at the river Raisin, were defeated [August 5] and driven back.[2] These disasters, and the appearance of General Brock with reënforcements at Malden, caused Hull to withdraw from Canada to the shelter of the fort at Detroit.

8. General Brock crossed the river on the 9th of August, with white and Indian troops, and demanded the surrender of Detroit and Hull's army, at the same time intimating that, in the event of a refusal, the savages would have free rein in the exercise of their bloody method of warfare. Hull was cautious and humane. An intercepted letter assured him that a large force of Indians

---

land on both sides of the Wabash. The Prophet was present and made no objection; but Tecumtha, who was absent, was greatly dissatisfied. The British emissaries took advantage of this dissatisfaction, to inflame him and his people against the Americans.

1. They passed an act which gave the President authority to enlist 25,000 men, to accept 50,000 volunteers, and to call out 100,000 militia for the defense of the sea-coast and frontiers.

2. On the 8th of August, Colonel Miller and several hundred men, sent by Hull to accomplish the object of Van Horne's expedition, met and defeated the British and Indians near the scene of Van Horne's disaster.

QUESTIONS.—6. What measures did Congress adopt? What can you tell about the appointment of generals? What was the chief object of the first campaign? 7. What can you tell about General Hull and his invasion of Canada? What have you to say about disasters at that time? What did Hull do? 8. What can you tell about Brock's invasion of Michigan, an intercepted letter, and Hull's surrender?

might be expected from Mackinaw.[1] Doubtful of his ability to sustain a siege with his limited supplies, and desirous of saving the people in the fort, Hull surrendered [August 16, 1812] the town, garrison, stores, and the Michigan Territory, into the hands of the British.

9. After the failure of Hull's expedition, a plan was arranged for invading Canada on the Niagara frontier. In expectation of such movement, the British had collected a considerable force in the vicinity of Queenstown, in the early autumn of 1812. On the morning of the 13th of October, before daylight, between two and three hundred Americans, under Colonel Solomon Van Rensselaer, crossed over from Lewiston to attack them. The commander was severely wounded at the landing, and the leadership was given to Captain Wool. He led the troops gallantly up the hill, captured a battery near the summit, and gained possession of Queenstown Heights.

10. General Brock came up from Fort George with reënforcements, and attempted to retake the heights. He was repulsed and killed. General Sheaffe followed him with another body of fresh troops, and Wool (who was shot through both thighs) and his little band were in great peril. Only about one thousand of the militia at Lewiston could be induced to cross over to the aid of their brethren, and some of them lingered on the shore. In the mean time Colonel Winfield Scott had crossed over and taken chief command. After a severe battle with Sheaffe, he was overpowered, and most of the Americans who were not killed were made prisoners. Another attempt to invade Canada was made just below Buffalo, but failed.

11. While disasters were falling upon the land forces of the Americans, their little navy was winning great honor on the sea.[2]

1. This, as has since been ascertained, was written at Malden, as if from a British agent above, and so conveyed as to fall into the hands of Hull. He was completely deceived by it.

2. At this time the British navy numbered 1,060 vessels, while that of the United States, exclusive of gun-boats (note 1, page 207), numbered only twenty. Two of these were unseaworthy, and one was on Lake Ontario. Nine of the American vessels were of a class less than frigates.

QUESTIONS.—9. What new plan for the invasion of Canada was arranged? What preparations had the British made to meet it? What can you tell of movements at Queenstown, and of the first battle there? 10. Can you give an account of other battles on that day, and the results? What can you say about a later attempt at invasion?

The first action of importance was between the American frigate *Essex*, Captain Porter, and the British sloop-of-war *Alert* [August 13], in which the former was victorious. On the 19th of August [1812], the United States frigate *Constitution*, Captain Hull, captured and destroyed the British frigate *Guerriere*. On the 18th of October following, the United States sloop-of-war *Wasp*, Captain Jones, captured the British brig *Frolic*, after a desperate encounter. In the afternoon of the same day, the British ship *Poictiers* captured both the victor and her prize. A week later [October 25], the frigate *United States*, Captain Decatur, captured the *Macedonian;* and on the 29th of December, the *Constitution*, then commanded by Bainbridge, fought the *Java* almost three hours off the coast of Brazil, and captured her.

A SLOOP-OF-WAR.

12. The Americans were greatly elated by these victories. At the same time numerous American privateers[1] were seizing British prizes in every direction. During the first six months of the war [July to January], about fifty British armed vessels and two hundred and fifty merchantmen, with three thousand prisoners and a vast amount of booty, were captured by the Americans. At the close of the year, naval armaments were in preparation, on Lakes Erie and Ontario, to assist in the invasion of Canada.

13. The *Federalists*,[2] as a party, had violently opposed the war, and tried to make it unpopular. They did not succeed, as the reëlection of Madison in the autumn of 1812, with Elbridge Gerry as Vice-President, fully attested. That election was accepted as a test of the war spirit of the people.

1. Private armed vessels, commissioned by Government to seize or destroy the property of the enemy.
2. Verse 7, page 198.

QUESTIONS.—11. What can you tell about naval operations in the year 1812? 12. How were the Americans affected? What can you tell about the doings of American privateers? What preparations for the command of the lakes were made? 13. What had the Federalists done? What can you tell about an election of President in 1812? How was it regarded?

SECTION V.

www.libtool.com.cn

THE SECOND WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE [1813].

1. Three armies were prepared for the campaign of 1813, and all were looking toward Canada as an objective point. The Army of the *West*, under General Harrison, of Tippecanoe fame, was designed to recover what Hull had lost, and invade Canada; the Army of the *Center*, under General Dearborn, was to hold a position on the Niagara river; and the Army of the *North*, under General Hampton, was placed on the borders of Lake Champlain, to operate in the region of the St. Lawrence. Sir George Prevost was the successor of Sir Isaac Brock, in command of the British army in Canada.

2. The people of the West were determined to drive the British into Canada, and recover all that had been lost in Michigan.[1] At the call of Harrison, thousands of the young men of Kentucky and Ohio flew to arms,[2] and he made the vicinity of the western end of Lake Erie his chief mustering-ground. There a terrible tragedy occurred early in 1813. On the 10th of January, General Winchester, with a fine body of Kentuckians, reached the Maumee Rapids, and sent forward a portion of them to drive the British from Frenchtown, on the river Raisin.[3] They did so [January 18], and two days afterward Winchester arrived there with reënforcements.

3. The British general Proctor was at Malden, and proceeded immediately, with fifteen hundred white men and Indians, to attack the Americans at Frenchtown. He fell upon them at dawn

1. During the autumn of 1812, the whole Western country, incensed by Hull's surrender, seemed filled with the zeal of the old Crusaders. The leaders found volunteers everywhere, anxious to find employment against the foe. They were engaged for many weeks in driving the Indians from post to post, in the vicinity of the extreme western settlements, and in desolating their villages and plantations, after the manner of Sullivan (verse 10, page 170) in 1779. Fierce indignation was thus excited among the tribes, and led to terrible retaliations under the stimulus of their white allies.

2. So numerous were the volunteers, that Harrison was compelled to issue an order against further enlistments.

3. Now Monroe, Michigan. The Raisin was so called by the French, because of the great quantity of grapes found growing on its banks.

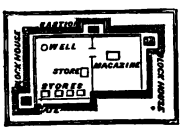
QUESTIONS.—1. What preparations were made for the campaign of 1813? 2. What had the people of the West resolved to do? What did they do at the call of Harrison? What can you tell about doings at Frenchtown, on the river Raisin?

on the 22d of January, and, after a severe battle, Winchester surrendered, on the condition that the prisoners should be protected from the savages. Proctor, fearing the approach of Harrison, fled, leaving the sick and wounded Americans to be slaughtered by the Indians. After that, the war-cry of the Kentuckians was, "Remember the river Raisin!"

4. General Harrison was at the Maumee Rapids [1] when he heard of the affair at Frenchtown. There he established a fortified camp [February, 1813], and called it Fort Meigs. There he was besieged by two thousand men, British and Indians, under Proctor and Tecumtha,[2] at the beginning of May. He was relieved by the arrival of General Green Clay with reënforcements [3] [May 5], and four days afterward [May 9], Proctor, deserted by his Indian allies, abandoned the siege, and returned to Malden.

FORT MEIGS.

5. About four thousand British and Indians, under Proctor and Tecumtha, again appeared before Fort Meigs on the 21st of July. General Clay was in command, and resisted the invaders so vigorously that they turned eastward and attacked Fort Stephenson, at Lower Sandusky, on the 2d of August. It was garrisoned by one hundred and fifty men, under Major Croghan, a brave soldier, only twenty-one years of age. It was bravely defended, and the assailants, terribly injured by grape-shot from the only cannon in the fort, fled in confusion.[4]



FORT STEPHENSON.

MAJOR CROGHAN.

1. Verse 6, page 198.
2. Tecumtha had borne the commission of a brigadier-general in the British army, since the surrender of Hull at Detroit.
3. A portion of Clay's Kentuckians, under Colonel Dudley, landed on the opposite side of the Maumee, to attack some British batteries there. They were successful, but, when madly pursuing the retreating enemy, they fell into an Indian ambush, and were lost, being either killed or made prisoners, excepting one hundred and seventy.
4. Proctor had demanded the instant surrender of the fort, and threatened to allow the

QUESTIONS.—3. What did General Proctor do? What can you tell of a tragedy at Frenchtown? 4. What did General Harrison do? What can you tell about Fort Meigs and a siege? 5. What can you tell about a second siege of Fort Meigs? What other place did the British attack? Give an account of the affair at Fort Stephenson.

6. While these events were occurring on the land, a squadron of nine vessels was constructed at Erie, in Pennsylvania, under the charge of Commodore Perry,[1] to coöperate with the Army of the West. The British had also prepared a squadron of six vessels, commanded by Commodore Barclay. The hostile fleets met near the western extremity of Lake Erie, on the morning of the 10th of September, 1813, and a very severe battle ensued. The brave Perry managed with the skill of an old admiral and the courage of the proudest soldier. At four o'clock in the afternoon, every British vessel had surrendered to him; and before sunset, he had sent a messenger to General Harrison with the famous dispatch, "*We have met the enemy, and they are ours.*" This victory was hailed with unbounded demonstrations of joy. For a moment, party rancor was almost forgotten; and bonfires and illuminations lighted up the whole country.

COMMODORE PERRY.

GENERAL SHELBY.

7. The command of Lake Erie now being secured, and four thousand Kentuckians, under the command of the veteran Governor Shelby, having reached Harrison's camp [September 17], the army moved across the lake in a portion of Perry's vessels [September 27]. They found Malden deserted. Harrison pressed on in pursuit of the flying Proctor and Tecumtha, and at the Moravian Town, on the Thames,

Indians to massacre the garrison, in the event of their refusal. In reply, Croghan said, in substance, that when the fort should be taken, there would be none left to massacre, as it would not be given up while there was a man left to fight.

1. Commodore Chauncey, who was commander-in-chief on the lakes, had fitted out a squadron at Sackett's Harbor, in the autumn of 1812, to dispute the mastery of Lake Ontario. It consisted of six vessels, mounting thirty-two guns, in all. The British squadron consisted of the same number of vessels, but mounting more than a hundred guns. Notwithstanding this disparity, Chauncey attacked them near Kingston (note 2, page 99) early in November, damaged them a good deal, and captured and carried into Sackett's Harbor a schooner belonging to the enemy. He then captured another schooner, which had $12,000 in specie on board, and the baggage of the deceased General Brock.

QUESTIONS.—6. What can you tell about naval preparations on Lake Erie? What can you tell of a fight, and victory for the Americans, on Lake Erie? 7. What caused Harrison's army to move across Lake Erie? Can you relate how the war in the North-west was ended?

deep in Upper Canada, he overtook, fought, and conquered them. Proctor's force was completely broken up. All that Hull had lost was regained,[1] and more, and the war in the North-west was ended.[2]

8. Toward the close of April, General Dearborn was at Sackett's Harbor, but with troops too few to assist the exposed places between that post and Ogdensburg on the St. Lawrence,[3] against which the British had been operating. For the purpose of drawing the foe away from the St. Lawrence, and to seize Toronto (then called York), the capital of Upper Canada and chief place for the supplies of the western British garrisons, he crossed the lake in Chauncey's fleet [April 25], with seventeen hundred men, under General Pike, and two days afterward became master of the place. The British, under Sheaffe, blew up their magazine by a train of wet powder when they fled, and Pike was mortally wounded by stones hurled by the explosion.

GENERAL PIKE.

9. A month later [May 27], Dearborn and Chauncey attacked the British at Fort George, at the mouth of the Niagara river. The enemy were driven westward, toward the head of Lake Ontario, closely pursued by the victors for many miles. On the night of the 6th of June they turned, and fell upon the American camp at Stoney Creek, in Canada. They were repulsed; but in the darkness and confusion, Generals Chandler and Winder, the American commanders, were made prisoners.

1. Verse 8, page 211. Here the Americans recaptured six brass field-pieces, which had been surrendered by Hull, on two of which were engraved the words, "Surrendered by Burgoyne at Saratoga." See verse 22, page 159.

2. Almost the whole of Proctor's command were killed or made prisoners. Tecumtha was slain, and Proctor himself narrowly escaped capture by some cavalry that pursued him. Harrison's prisoners amounted to about six hundred.

3. In February a detachment of British soldiers crossed the St. Lawrence on the ice from Prescott to Ogdensburg, and, under pretense of seeking for deserters, committed robberies. Major Forsyth, then in command of riflemen there, retaliated. This was resented, in turn, by a large British force, which crossed on the 21st of February, and, after a conflict of an hour, drove out the few military defenders of Ogdensburg, plundered and destroyed a large amount of property, and then returned to Canada.

QUESTIONS.—8. What can you tell about affairs at Sackett's Harbor? What can you tell about the attack on and capture of York, or Toronto? 9. Can you give an account of operations at the mouth of the Niagara river? What can you tell about a night battle at Stoney Creek, and capture of American generals?

Battle at Sackett's Harbor. Operations on the St. Lawrence. Niagara frontier desolated.

10. On the day [May 27] when the Americans attacked Fort George, a British squadron appeared before Sackett's Harbor;[1] and two days afterward [May 29] Sir George Prevost[1] and a thousand soldiers landed in the face of a severe fire from some regulars[2] stationed there. General Brown, the commander, rallied the militia, and their rapid gathering near the landing-place so alarmed Prevost, lest they should cut off his retreat, that he hastily reëmbarked, leaving almost the whole of his wounded behind. Soon after this, Dearborn retired from active service, and was succeeded in command by General Wilkinson, in August. The Government had arranged a plan for another invasion of Canada, and Wilkinson, at the head of a large force assembled at French Creek [November 5, 1813], went down the St. Lawrence in boats.

11. Near Williamsburg, on the Canada shore below Ogdensburg, Wilkinson landed troops under General Brown, to disperse the gathering enemy. A severe battle ensued [November 11], in which both parties suffered much without a decisive result. The enemy were crippled, and Wilkinson went on, expecting to find General Hampton[3] with a coöperating force at St. Regis.[4] He was disappointed; and the attempt to capture Montreal, which was the first object of the expedition, was abandoned. The army went into winter quarters at French Mills, and there suffered much.

12. At this time, General McClure with a few troops was holding Fort George. The British pressed him so hard that, on the 10th of December, he burned the village of Newark, near the fort, and on the 12th fled to Fort Niagara,[5] on the opposite side of the

1. Verse 1, page 214. 2. Soldiers of the permanent army. 3. Verse 6, page 210.
4. An Indian town and early French settlement, about twenty-five miles south-east from Williamsburg. There was enmity between Wilkinson and Hampton, and General Armstrong, then Secretary of War, resolved to command the expedition himself, to prevent trouble on account of precedence. He joined the army at Sackett's Harbor, but soon returned to Washington, for he and Wilkinson could not agree. To the jealousies and bickerings of these old officers, must the disasters of the land troops be, in a great degree, attributed. General Hampton did move forward toward Canada, but finally returned to Plattsburg, and, leaving the command with General Izard, went to his Southern home.
5. On the St. Lawrence, mouth of the St. Regis river.

Questions.—10. Can you give an account of an attack on Sackett's Harbor by the British, and their repulse? What change of officers took place? What have you to say about another invasion of Canada? 11. Can you give an account of a battle near Williamsburg, in Canada? What did Wilkinson do, and how was he disappointed? What course did he pursue? 12. Can you give an account of events at Fort George and its vicinity? How did the British retaliate on the Americans?

river. That fortress was surprised and captured by the British and Indians on the night of the 29th, when they proceeded to lay waste by fire the American shores of the river, all the way to Buffalo.[1] This retaliation was the closing scene of the campaign of 1813 in the north.

FORT NIAGARA, 1813.

13. There was serious trouble in the extreme south. Tecumtha had stirred up the powerful *Creek* Indians to make war on the white people. On the 30th of August [1813] they surprised and destroyed Fort Mimms, on the Alabama river, and massacred the inmates, including many women and children. This act created the most intense indignation. General Andrew Jackson, with over two thousand men, marched into the Creek country, and in a series of conflicts with the savages, between the beginning of November, 1813, and the close of March, 1814,[2] the *Creeks* were thoroughly subdued, and their power and spirit as a nation so broken that they humbly begged for peace.[3]

CAPTAIN LAWRENCE.

14. The ocean was a theater of sharp conflicts in 1813. On the 24th of February, the United States sloop-of-war *Hornet* captured the British brig *Peacock*, after a severe fight of fifteen minutes. The latter suddenly sunk, carrying down with her

1. Youngstown, Lewiston, Manchester (Niagara Falls), Tuscarora (Indian) village, Black Rock, and Buffalo were laid in ashes, with a large amount of public property.

2. General Coffee was Jackson's most active assistant. The series of battles are known as those of *Tallushatchee*, near the present village of Jacksonville, in Benton county; *Talladega*, a little east of the Coosa, in Talladega county; *Autoseee*, on the bank of the Tallapoosa, in Macon county; *Emucfau*, on the west bank of the Tallapoosa, near the mouth of Emucfau creek; and *Tohopeka*, or Great Horse-Shoe, near the north-east corner of Tallapoosa county. In the latter battle, about six hundred warriors were slain.

3. Among those who bowed in submission, was Weathersford, their greatest leader. He appeared suddenly before Jackson, in his tent, and standing erect, he said, "I am in your power: do with me what you please. I have done the white people all the harm I could. I have fought them, and fought them bravely. My warriors are all gone now, and I can do no more. When there was a chance for success I never asked for peace. There is none now, and I ask it for the remnant of my nation." He was spared.

QUESTIONS.—13. Can you give an account of Tecumtha's movements in the South, and the war with the Creek Indians?

nine British and three American seamen. Lawrence was promoted to the command of the frigate *Chesapeake*,[1] and on the 1st of June had a severe combat with the British frigate *Shannon*,

www.libtool.com.cn

LAWRENCE CARRIED BELOW.

not far from Boston harbor. The struggle lasted only fifteen minutes, but in that time the *Chesapeake* lost her commander; also forty-eight of her officers and crew killed, and ninety-eight

1. Verse 8, page 207.

QUESTIONS.—14. What can you tell about naval operations, and the gallantry of Lawrence?

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

wounded. The *Chesapeake* was captured and taken to Halifax, in Nova Scotia.[1]

15. The American brig *Argus*, Captain Allen, conveyed Mr. Crawford, the United States minister, to France. She then cruised successfully near the English coast, and was finally captured [August 14] by the British sloop-of-war *Pelican*, after a short and sharp fight. The loss of the *Chesapeake* and *Argus* depressed the Americans; but their spirits were raised to the highest pitch by a victory of the *Enterprise*, Captain Burrows, over the *Boxer*, off Portland (September 5),[2] and the great victory of Perry on Lake Erie, five days afterward.[3]

16. During the spring and summer of 1813, a small squadron, under Admiral Cockburn, carried on a distressing warfare along the shores of the Delaware and Chesapeake bays, with the hope of drawing the American troops from the northern frontier, for the defense of the sea-board. After cannonading Lewistown on the Delaware, and plundering Frenchtown, Havre de Grace, Fredericktown and Georgetown on the Chesapeake, Cockburn, with a land force under Sir Sidney Beckwith, attempted to capture Norfolk. The Americans had fortified Craney island, and placed gunboats[4] across the channel. With these the enemy were repulsed [June 22, 1813]. They then committed great atrocities at Hampton; after which Cockburn went plundering down the Carolina coasts, and carried away many negroes to the West Indies, and sold them. At the same time, Commodore Hardy was blockading the New England coast, and his conduct was honorable.

COMMODORE PORTER.

1. The two vessels became entangled, when the British boarded the *Chesapeake*, and, after a desperate hand-to-hand struggle, hoisted the British flag. Lawrence was mortally wounded at the beginning of the action; and when he was carried below, he uttered those brave words, which Perry afterward displayed on his flag-ship on Lake Erie: "*Don't give up the ship!*"

2. In this contest, the commanders of both vessels were slain, and their remains rest in one grave in the city of Portland, Maine.

3. Verse 6, page 216.

4. Verse 7, page 207.

QUESTIONS.—15. Give an account of the brig *Argus*, and the conflict between the *Enterprise* and *Boxer*. What gave the Americans joy? 16. What occurred on the shores of Chesapeake and Delaware bays? What was the object of the British? Give an account of the marauding operations of Cockburn. What can you tell about the repulse of the British at Craney island, and the doings of Cockburn and Hardy?

17. The United States frigate *Essex*, Captain Porter, made a long and successful cruise in the Atlantic and Pacific,[1] during the year 1813, but was finally captured in the harbor of Valparaiso [March 28, 1814], on the western coast of South America, by the British frigate *Phœbe* and sloop-of-war *Cherub*, after one of the most desperately fought battles of the war. The *Essex* lost one hundred and fifty-four in killed and wounded. Captain Porter wrote to the Secretary of the Navy, "We have been unfortunate, but not disgraced."

www.lihtool.com.cn

SECTION VI.

SECOND WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE, CONTINUED [1814, 1815].

1. Napoleon's power seemed so utterly broken early in 1814, that several thousand veteran soldiers were drawn from Wellington's army in France and sent to Canada, the conquest of which was yet the favorite project of the Americans. Movements in that direction were made by Wilkinson, at the close of March, 1814,[2] but were unsuccessful. On the 5th of May following, the British, in search of naval stores deposited near Oswego, on Lake Ontario, captured that village and the fort, after a severe struggle,[3] but withdrew on the 7th, after losing more than two hundred men, without accomplishing their object.

GENERAL BROWN.

2. A few weeks later, General Brown arrived on the Niagara frontier, with troops who had marched from French Mills to

1. While in the Pacific, the *Essex* captured twelve British whale-ships, with an aggregate of three hundred and two men, and one hundred and seven guns. The *Essex* carried at her mast-head the popular motto, "*Free Trade and Sailors' Rights.*"

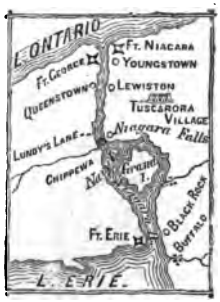
2. Wilkinson had broken up the camp at French Mills (verse 11, page 218), and returned to Plattsburg, while General Brown, with two thousand men, marched to Sackett's Harbor.

3. The place was defended by Colonel Mitchell with three hundred troops, a few militia, and seamen under Captain Woolsey, who commanded a small flotilla.

QUESTIONS.—17. Can you give an account of the cruise of the *Essex*, and her loss?—1. How were the British able to send large reënforcements to Canada, in 1814? What did Wilkinson attempt? What can you tell about an attack on Oswego?

Sackett's Harbor,[1] and thence westward; and on the 3d of July, as chief commander, he crossed the river with Generals Scott[2] and Ripley, and their brigades, and captured Fort Erie. He then pushed down the western bank of the river, and at Chippewa, a short distance above Niagara Falls, he won a brilliant victory over the British, under General Riall, on the 5th. The foe lost five hundred men, and retired to the shores of Lake Ontario, to wait for reënforcements. These soon came, with Lieutenant-General Drummond, who assumed the chief command.

3. Drummond advanced to the Niagara, with a force one third greater than that of Brown, and, at the close of a sultry day, within sound of the roar of the great cataract of Niagara, one of the most bloody battles of the war was fought. It commenced at sunset [July 25, 1814] and ended at midnight. It was a battle without a decided victory for either party.[3] Both had lost over eight hundred men. Brown and Scott being wounded, the command devolved on Ripley, who withdrew [July 26th] to Fort Erie, where General Gaines took the chief command.



NIAGARA FRONTIER.

4. On the 4th of August, Drummond appeared before Fort Erie, with five thousand men. He made an assault on the 15th, and lost nearly one thousand of them. For a month he remained quiet. Brown, in the mean time, had resumed command, and on the 17th of September he sent out a strong force to attack the foe. These were driven from their works toward Chippewa, and soon afterward retired to Fort George. Early in November the armies abandoned and destroyed Fort Erie, crossed the river, and never again attempted the conquest of Canada.

1. Note 2, page 222. 2. Verse 10, page 212.

3. This battle, having been fought near a road called *Lundy's Lane*, has borne that name; also the title of the *Battle of Bridgewater*, a hamlet of that name being near. The true and best title is the *Battle of Niagara*.

QUESTIONS.—2. What did General Brown do? What can you tell about another invasion of Canada? What have you to say about the capture of Fort Erie, and battle at Chippewa? 3. What can you tell about a battle near Niagara Falls? What did the Americans finally do? 4. Can you give an account of the British siege of Fort Erie? What can you tell about a *sortie*, and its results? Of the evacuation of Canada?

5. General Izard commanded the army at Plattsburg, on Lake Champlain, in the summer of 1814. He was directed to reenforce Brown, on the Niagara,[1] and in August he marched, with five thousand men, leaving General Macomb in command at Plattsburg, with only fifteen hundred. When Prevost[2] heard of this movement, he advanced from the St. Lawrence with fourteen thousand veteran troops, and with a larger part of them appeared before Plattsburg on the 6th of September. Both parties had constructed a small squadron on Lake Champlain, and Macomb, with great diligence, had completed some fortifications on the southern side of the Saranac at Plattsburg. He was also strengthened by a considerable body of militia, under General Mooers.

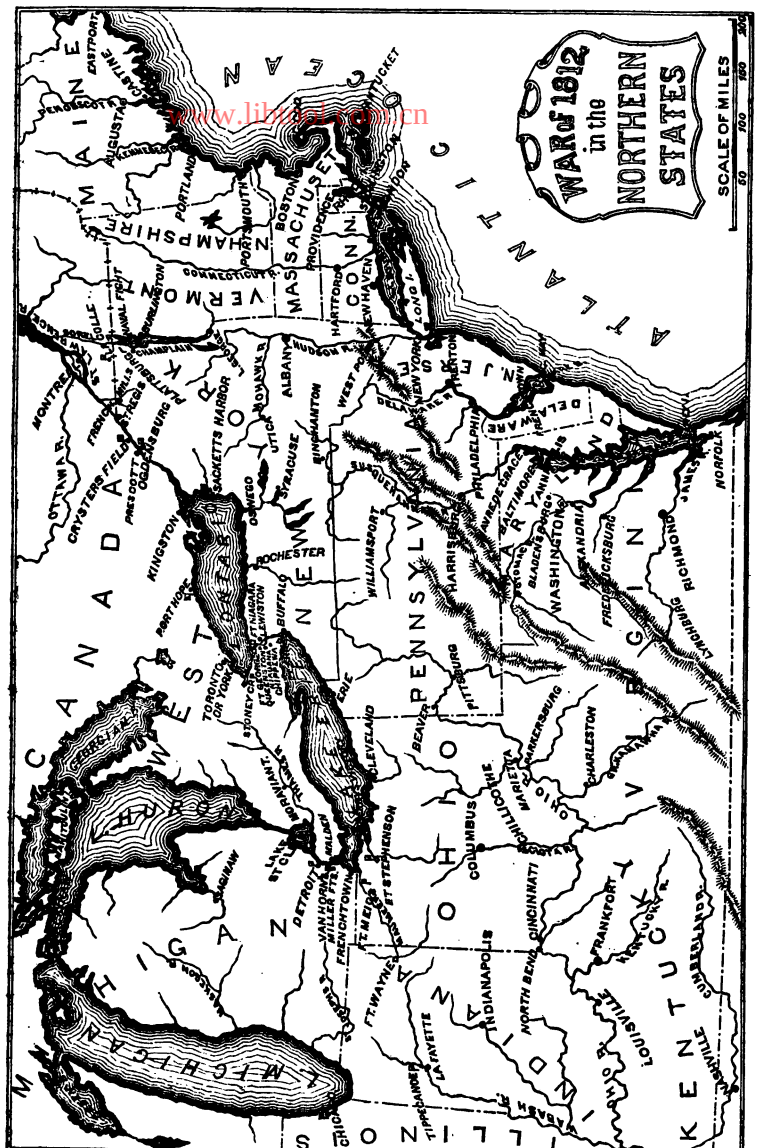
6. On the morning of the 11th of September [1814], the British squadron, under Commodore Downie, advanced to attack the American squadron, under Commodore Macdonough, then lying in battle order off Plattsburg. At the same time the British land forces advanced to attack Macomb. The land and naval contest was sharp and decisive. Macdonough captured all the British vessels excepting some galleys; and that night Prevost and his army fled in great haste toward the Canada border. The victory of the Americans was complete, and created the liveliest joy throughout the land.

COMMODORE MACDONOUGH.

7. While these events were occurring on the northern frontier, stirring scenes were witnessed near the coast, which was blockaded from Maine to South Carolina. For four days [August 9–14], Stonington, in Connecticut, was cannonaded and bombarded by Commodore Hardy, who was finally driven off. In September the British took possession of the country east of the Penobscot,

1. Verse 2, page 222. 2. Verse 1, page 214.

QUESTIONS.—5. Give an account of affairs on Lake Champlain. What did Izard do? What course did the British commander pursue? What preparations were made for a battle at Plattsburg? 6. Can you give an account of naval and military operations there? 7. What have you to say about stirring scenes on the coast? What did the British do?



www.libinfo.com.cn

in Maine; and in many places marauding parties plundered and destroyed property on the New England coast.

8. Early in the spring of 1814, Cockburn commenced depredations in and around the Chesapeake; and finally, at the middle of August, a land and naval force under General Ross and Admiral Cochrane, more than five thousand strong, went up the Patuxent, in spite of Commodore Barney's flotilla that was there to oppose them. After a severe fight at Bladensburg [August 24] with the Americans under General Winder,[1] they pushed on to Washington city, captured it, and burned the public buildings on the same day.[2]

9. Elated by success, the British proceeded to attack Baltimore, where the veteran General Smith was in command. The squadron sailed up to attack Fort McHenry, that defended the harbor, then in charge of Major Armistead, while Ross, with his land troops, landed at North Point [September 12, 1814], several miles from the city. The Americans, under General Stricker, went out to meet them. Ross was killed while advancing; and after a severe battle about seven miles from Baltimore the Americans were driven back. The squadron kept up a bombardment until toward the morning of the 14th, when all the assailants withdrew.[3] This gallant defense of Baltimore was regarded as a great victory.

10. When Jackson had subdued the Creeks,[4] the war in the Gulf region was considered as at an end. It was a mistake. The Spaniards of Florida allowed the British the use of Pensacola as a base of operations. Troops were landed there from a British squadron in the Gulf, and an expedition, composed partly of two

1. Verse 9, page 217.

2. Until the latest moment, it was not known whether Washington or Baltimore was to be attacked. Winder's troops, employed for the defense of both cities, were divided. The loss of the British, in killed, wounded, and by desertion, was almost a thousand men; that of the Americans was about a hundred killed and wounded, and a hundred and twenty taken prisoners. The President and his cabinet were at Bladensburg when the British approached, but returned to the city when the conflict began, and narrowly escaped capture.

3. The estimated loss of the British in this attack was between six and seven hundred.

4. Verse 13, page 219.

QUESTIONS.—8. What did Cockburn do in the spring of 1814? Can you give an account of the invasion of Maryland, battle of Bladensburg, and the capture of Washington city? 9. How were the British affected? What did they do? Can you give an account of the attempt to capture Baltimore, and its results? 10. What can you say about troubles in the Gulf region? How did the Spaniards act? What can you tell about the capture of Fort Bowyer?

hundred Creek warriors, proceeded against Fort Bowyer (now Fort Morgan), near Mobile, in command of Major Lawrence. The assailants were repulsed, with the loss of a ship-of-war and many men.

www.ibtool.com.cn

11. Jackson was at Mobile. He held the Spanish governor responsible for sheltering the enemies of the United States, and marched upon Pensacola with two thousand Tennesseeans. He drove the British to their shipping [November 7, 1814], and made the Spanish governor, who begged for mercy, surrender the post into his hands. The British disappeared the next day [November 8]; and when Jackson returned to Mobile he found urgent calls for him to hasten to New Orleans, for a large British land force was in vessels on the Gulf, on its way to invade Louisiana.

12. Jackson hastened to New Orleans, and prepared to defend it.[1] He was none too soon. The British, under General Pakenham, twelve thousand strong, speedily appeared below the city.[2] Jackson with a detachment went out to meet them. He fell upon their camp on the night of the 23d of December, and withdrew after killing and wounding about four hundred of the enemy.

13. Jackson now concentrated his little army (about three thousand in number, and mostly militia) within intrenchments between three and four miles below the city, commanding the plain of Chalmette from the Mississippi to a cypress swamp.[3] There he was soon joined by three thousand Kentuckians, and there, on the 8th of January, 1815, he was attacked by the British, twelve thousand strong, led by Pakenham in person. A most

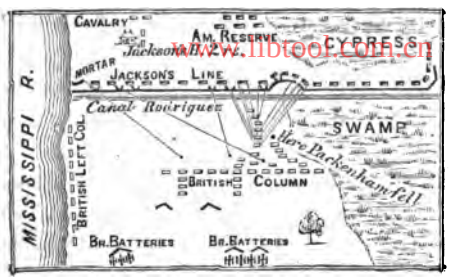
1. He declared martial law, obstructed all the bayous and inlets, and so fortified the banks of the Mississippi as to prevent the ascent of vessels.

2. The British fleet captured a flotilla of American gun-boats (verse 7, page 207) in Lake Borgne, on the 14th of December, and, on the 22d, about 2,500 of the enemy reached the Mississippi. The Americans lost, in killed and wounded, about forty; the British, about three hundred. The attack was made by the enemy in about forty barges, conveying twelve hundred men. The American gun-boats were under the command of Lieutenant (late Commodore) Thomas Ap Catesby Jones.

3. These intrenchments were a mile in length, extending from the river so far into the swamp as to be impassable at the extremity. Along this line were eight distinct batteries, with heavy cannon; and on the opposite side of the river was a battery with fifteen cannon.

QUESTIONS.—11. What did General Jackson do in Florida? What did he find on his return to Mobile? 12. What can you tell about Jackson in New Orleans? Can you give an account of the appearance of the British, and a skirmish? 13. What did Jackson do? Can you give an account of the battle of New Orleans?

sanguinary battle ensued. Pakenham was killed, and his entire army fled in dismay, leaving seven hundred dead, and more than a thousand wounded on the field.[1] The Americans, well intrenched, lost only seven killed, and sixty wounded. It was the last land battle of importance. It was the crowning victory of the Americans in the SECOND WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE.



BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS.

14. During 1814 the war continued on the ocean. On the 29th of April the *Peacock* captured the *Epervier* off the coast of Florida. The *Wasp*, commanded by Captain Blakeley, made a very successful cruise this year, capturing no less than thirteen vessels. She took the *Reindeer* on the 28th of June, and the *Avon* on the 1st of September. After capturing her thirteenth prize she was never heard of. She was probably lost in a storm. On the 16th of January, 1815, the *President*, Commodore Decatur,[2] was captured by a British squadron off Long island; and on the 20th of February following, the *Constitution*,[3] commanded by the now [1864] venerable Commodore Stewart, fought desperately with and captured the frigate *Cyane* and sloop *Levant*. On the 23d of March the *Hornet* captured the *Penguin*;[4] and this was the close of naval operations, excepting by the American privateers.[5]

15. The victory at New Orleans produced unbounded joy throughout the country. It was soon followed by a proclamation of PEACE [February 18, 1815], for which American and British

1. While these operations were in progress on the Mississippi, the British fleet had not been inactive. Some vessels bombarded Fort St. Philip, below New Orleans, on the 11th of January, and continued the attack for eight days without success. In the mean while, Admiral Cockburn was pursuing his detestable warfare along the Carolina and Georgia coasts, menacing Charleston and Savannah with destruction, and landing at obscure points to plunder the inhabitants.

2. Verse 11, page 212. 3. Verse 11, page 212. 4. Verse 14, page 219.

5. During the war there were 250 private armed vessels commissioned, and they captured or destroyed about 1,600 British vessels.

QUESTIONS.—14. What have you to say about the continuance of the war upon the ocean, and its operations?

commissioners had been negotiating at Ghent, in Belgium.[1] It ended in a treaty signed on the 24th of December, 1814, which both Governments speedily ratified. The voice of faction[2] almost

www.tiptool.com.cn

1. The United States commissioners were John Quincy Adams, James A. Bayard, Henry Clay, Jonathan Russel, and Albert Gallatin. Those of Great Britain were Admiral Lord Gambier, Henry Goulbourn, and William Adams. These commissioners are all dead. Mr. Clay, who died in 1852, was the last survivor.

2. There was a faction of the Federal party, who were unconditional "peace men," and they cast every possible obstacle in the way of the Administration in its prosecution of the war. As the war advanced, the opposition of the Federal party grew more intense. It reached its culmination when delegates, appointed by several New England legislatures, met [December 15, 1814] in convention at Hartford, for the purpose of considering the grievances of the people, caused by a state of war, and to devise speedy measures for its termination. This convention, whose sessions were secret, was denounced as treasonable, but patriotism appears to have prevailed in its councils, whatever may have been the designs of some. Its plans for disunion or secession, if any were formed, were rendered abortive soon after its adjournment, by the proclamation of peace.

NOTE.—The following is a list of the principal land and naval battles fought during the second war for independence:

LAND BATTLES.

NAME.	DATE.	PAGE.
1812.		
Van Horne's	Aug. 5	211
Miller's	Aug. 9.	211
Detroit	Aug. 15.	212
Queenstown	Oct. 13.	212
1813.		
Frenchtown	Jan. 22.	214
York	April 27.	217
Fort Meigs	May 5.	215
Stoney Creek	June 6.	217
Craney Island	June 22.	221
Sackett's Harbor	May 29.	218
Fort Stephenson	Aug. 2.	215
Thames	Oct. 5.	216
Creek War	November.	219
Chrysler's Field	Nov. 11.	218
1814.		
Oswego	May 6.	222
Chippewa	July 5.	223
Niagara	July 25.	223
Stonington	Aug. 10.	224
Fort Erie	Aug. 15.	223
Bladensburg	Aug. 24.	226
Plattsburg	Sept. 11.	224
North Point	Sept. 12.	226
Fort McHenry	Sept. 13.	226
Fort Bowyer	Sept. 15.	227
Fort Erie (sortie)	Sept. 17.	223
Below New Orleans	Dec. 23.	227
1815.		
New Orleans	Jan. 8.	227

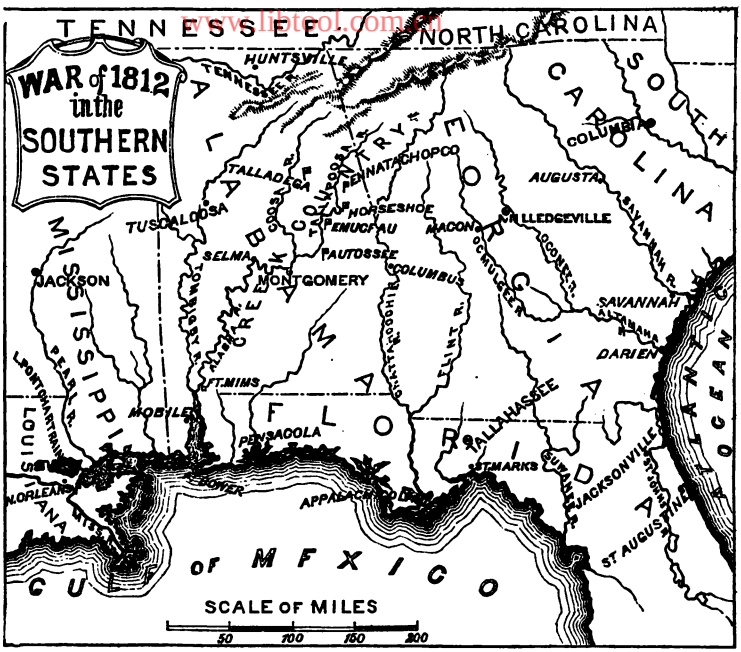
NAVAL BATTLES.

NAME.	DATE.	PAGE.
1812.		
Essex,* Alert,	Aug. 13.	213
Constitution, Guerriere,	Aug. 19.	213
Wasp, Frolic,	Oct. 18.	213
United States, Macedonian,	Oct. 25.	213
Constitution, Java,	Dec. 29.	213
1813.		
Hornet, Peacock,	Feb. 24.	219
Chesapeake, Shannon,	June 1.	220
Argus, Pelican,	Aug 14.	221
Enterprise, Boxer,	Sept. 5.	221
Lake Erie	Sept. 10.	216
1814.		
Essex, Phœbe,	March 28.	222
Peacock, Epervier,	April 29.	228
Wasp, Reindeer,	June 28.	228
Wasp,	Sept. 1.	228
Avon,		
Lake Champlain	Sept. 11.	224
Lake Borgne	Dec. 14.	227, n
1815.		
President, British squadron,	Jan. 15.	228
Constitution, Cyane and Levan,	Feb. 20.	228
Hornet, Penguin,	March 23.	228

* The American vessels are first named, each time.

QUESTIONS.—15. What was the effect of the victory at New Orleans? What can you tell about negotiations for peace?

ceased, and the Nation, truly independent, started on a glorious career.



16. The contest with England had but just ended when the United States were compelled to engage in a brief

WAR WITH ALGIERS.

17. Believing that the United States navy had been almost annihilated by the British, the insolent Algerines renewed their depredations on American commerce.[1] Decatur[2] was sent, in May, 1815, with a squadron, to humble the pirates. He was successful. On the 17th of June he captured the frigate of the Algerine admiral, and, with another vessel, and several hundred prisoners, he

1. Verse 2, page 204.

2. Verse 2, page 204, and verse 14, page 228.

QUESTIONS.—16. What followed the war with England? 17. Can you give an account of the way in which the Algerines were humbled by Decatur?

sailed into the bay of Algiers. He demanded [June 28] the instant release of all American prisoners, full indemnification for all property destroyed, and absolute relinquishment of all claims to tribute from the United States in future. The terrified dey signed a treaty to that effect two days afterward.

www.tbtool.com.cn

18. Decatur obtained similar concessions from the rulers of Tunis and Tripoli; and accomplished, in that single cruise in the Mediterranean sea in the summer of 1815, what the combined Powers of Europe had not dared to attempt, namely, the acquirement of full security to commerce in those waters.

19. The eventful Administration of Mr. Madison now drew to a close. James Monroe, of Virginia, was elected his successor, with Daniel D. Tompkins, of New York, as Vice-President. In December [1816] Indiana was admitted into the Union as a State. Louisiana had already been admitted in 1812. On the 4th of March, 1817, Mr. Madison retired to private life.

SECTION VII.

MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION [1817–1825].

1. Mr. Monroe took the oath of office on the 4th of March, 1817. He selected an able cabinet,[1] composed of his Republican friends; and he entered with vigor upon the duties of his high position at the critical period of our country's history when the nation was beginning to recover from the excitements and disturbances of war. His Administration was not distinguished by such

1. John Quincy Adams, Secretary of State; William H. Crawford, Secretary of the Treasury; John C. Calhoun, Secretary of War: Benjamin Crowninshield, Secretary of the Navy; and William Wirt, Attorney-General. He offered the War Department to the venerable Governor Shelby, of Kentucky (verse 7, page 216), who declined it. Calhoun was appointed in December, 1817. Crowninshield, who was in Madison's cabinet, continued in office until the close of November, 1818, when Smith Thompson, of New York, was appointed in his place.

QUESTIONS.—18. What else did Decatur do? 19. What have you to say about the close of Madison's Administration, the election of his successor, and the admission of new States?—1. What can you say about Monroe and his Administration?

stirring events as marked that of his predecessors, but it has the glory of embracing a period in which five new States were added to the Union, namely, Mississippi, Illinois, Alabama, Missouri, and Maine.

www.libtool.com.cn

MONROE, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

2. On Amelia island, off the coast of Florida, and at Galveston, Texas, piratical and slave-dealing establishments existed. The men engaged in the business pretended to have authority from the South American republics to attempt the liberation of Florida from Spanish rule. These establishments were broken up by the power of the United States at the close of 1817.

3. At about the same time the frontier settlements of Georgia were greatly disturbed by the murderous raids of Seminole and Creek Indians, whom British subjects, under the protection of the Spanish authorities in Florida, had excited to hostilities. Troops were sent to suppress them; and in April, 1818, General Jackson, with Tennesseeans, captured the post of St. Mark's in Florida, sent the authorities to Pensacola, and hanged two English subjects who were known to have excited the Indians to war. Jackson then took possession of Pensacola, and its fort, Barrancas, and sent the Spanish civil authorities and troops to Havana. These measures soon led to a treaty,[1] by which Spain ceded to the United

1. Made by John Quincy Adams for the United States, and Don Onis, the Spanish embassador at Washington. Hitherto, the United States had claimed a large portion of Texas, as a part of Louisiana. By this treaty, Texas was retained by the Spaniards. The cession was made as an equivalent for all claims against Spain for injury done to American commerce, to an amount not exceeding $5,000,000. This treaty was not finally ratified until February, 1821. General Jackson was appointed the first governor of the Territory of Florida.

QUESTIONS.—2. What can you tell about breaking up piratical and slave-dealing establishments? 3. What can you tell about disturbances on the frontiers of Georgia? What did Jackson again do in Florida? What was the result?

States all of the Floridas; and in February, 1821, that country was erected into a Territory.

4. While the Florida question was under consideration, the first serious struggle between the slaveholders and non-slaveholders for supremacy in the Republic commenced in Congress. A portion of the great domain of Louisiana[1] was erected into a Territory in 1812, called Missouri. At the session of 1818–'19, application was made for the admission of Missouri as a State, when a bill was offered which forbade the introduction of slavery into the new State, when admitted. Long and violent debates ensued, and the decision was postponed. Finally, on the 28th of February, 1821, a compromise was agreed to, by which slavery should be allowed in Missouri, and in all territory south of its southern boundary (36° 30′ north latitude), and prohibited in all the territory northerly and westerly of these limits. This is known as *The Missouri Compromise.* Under this compromise, Missouri was admitted on the 21st of August, 1821.

5. Monroe and Tompkins were reëlected by an almost unanimous vote in 1820. The Federalist party,[2] as a political organization, was almost extinct. The Administration was very popular; and several events made it memorable. Among the most important was the recognition, by the United States, of the independence of the South American republics, when the President proclaimed that, as a principle, the American continents "are henceforth not to be considered as subject for future colonization by any European Power." This is known as the "Monroe Doctrine."

6. The passage of a law for the relief of soldiers of the Revolution; an agreement with Great Britain for a share in the Newfoundland fisheries by American citizens, and the visit of Lafayette as the guest of the nation,[3] are memorable events. Mr. Monroe's

1. Verse 1, page 203. 2. Verse 7, page 198.

3. Lafayette (verse 12, page 154) arrived at New York from France in August, 1824, and during about eleven months he made a tour of over five thousand miles in the United States. He was received everywhere with great enthusiasm. When he was prepared to return, an American frigate, named *Brandywine* in compliment to him, was sent by the United States Government to convey him home. It was on the banks of the Brandywine that Lafayette first drew his sword in aid of the Americans.

QUESTIONS.—4. What struggle now commenced in Congress? What can you tell about the "Missouri Compromise"? 5. What can you say about another Presidential election; and Monroe's Administration? Can you give an account of the origin of the "Monroe Doctrine?"

quiet and prosperous Administration closed on the 4th of March, 1825, when John Quincy Adams, of Massachusetts, one of four candidates for the Presidency, became his successor, with John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, as Vice-President.

www.libtool.com.cn

J. Q. ADAMS, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

SECTION VIII.

JOHN QUINCY ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION [1825–1829].

1. On the 4th of March, 1825, John Quincy Adams took the seat at the national capital which his father had left twenty-five years before. The Senate of the United States was in session, and all but one of his cabinet nominations were confirmed by unanimous vote.[1]

2. Mr. Adams's Administration is remarkable in our history for the prevalence of quiet at home and friendly relations with foreign Governments. There was a little trouble at the beginning, caused by the assumption of State supremacy by the Governor of Georgia, in the matter of the removal of Indians from that State. The cloud soon passed away.[2]

1. Henry Clay, Secretary of State; Richard Rush, Secretary of the Treasury; James Barbour, Secretary of War; Samuel L. Southard (continued in office), Secretary of the Navy, and William Wirt (continued), Attorney-General. There was considerable opposition in the Senate to the confirmation of Henry Clay's nomination. He had been charged with defeating the election of General Jackson, by giving his influence to Mr. Adams, on condition that he should be appointed his Secretary of State. This, however, seems to have been only a bubble on the surface of political strife, and had no truthful substance. In the Senate, there were twenty-seven votes in favor, and fourteen against confirming the nomination of Mr. Clay.

2. When Georgia relinquished her claims to portions of the Mississippi Territory the National Government agreed to purchase, for that State, the Indian lands within its borders,

QUESTIONS.—6. What memorable events occurred during Monroe's Administration? What can you say about its close, and Monroe's successor?—1. What can you tell about Adams's inauguration, and his cabinet appointments? 2. For what was his Administration remarkable? What trouble at first appeared?

An impressive coincidence. The American System. Its opponents.

3. A remarkable coincidence, that made a profound impression on the public mind throughout the country, occurred on the fiftieth anniversary of the Declaration of Independence,[1] or the 4th of July, 1826. On that day, and almost at the same hour, Thomas Jefferson[2] died at Monticello, in Virginia, and John Adams,[3] at Quincy, Massachusetts. Their States had been chief leaders in the Revolution.[4] They had each assisted, as members of the same committee, in preparing the great Declaration;[5] had each signed it; had each been a minister at a foreign court, and had each been Vice-President and President[6] of the United States.

4. It was during the Administration of Mr. Adams that the policy of protecting home manufactures, by imposing a heavy duty upon foreign articles of the same kind, assumed the shape of a settled national policy, and the foundations of the *American System*,[7] as that policy is called, were then laid. It was very popular with the manufacturers of the North; but the people of the cotton-growing States, who found a ready market for the raw material in England, opposed it. A tariff law passed in 1828 [May 15] was made to appear very obnoxious to the Southern planters by

JOHN C. CALHOUN.

"whenever it could be peaceably done upon reasonable terms." The *Creeks*, who, with their neighbors, the *Cherokees*, were beginning to practice the arts of civilized life, refused to sell their lands. The Governor of Georgia demanded the immediate fulfillment of the contract. He caused a survey of the lands to be made, and prepared to distribute them by lottery to the citizens of that State. The National Government interfered in behalf of the Indians, and a civil war was menaced. The difficulties were finally settled, and the Indians were removed gradually to the rich wilderness beyond the Mississippi.

1. Verse 10, page 143. 2. Verse 10, page 143. 3. Verse 19, page 123.
4. Verse 28, page 127, and verse 15, page 134. 5. Verse 19, page 123.
6. Verse 1, page 201, and verse 1, page 208.
7. The illiberal commercial policy of Great Britain caused tariff laws to be enacted by Congress as early as 1816, as retaliatory measures. In 1824, imposts were laid on foreign fabrics, with a view to encourage American manufactures. In July, 1827, a national convention was held at Harrisburg, in Pennsylvania, to discuss the subject of protective tariffs. Only four of the Slave States sent delegates. The result of the convention was a memorial to Congress, asking an augmentation of duties on several articles then manufactured in the United States. The Secretary of the Treasury called attention to the subject in his report in December, 1827. Congress took up the matter, and a Tariff Bill became a law in May following.

QUESTIONS.—3. What remarkable and impressive coincidence occurred in 1826? What have you to say of Adams and Jefferson? 4. Can you give an account of the origin of the *American System*? How did it affect the people of the North and South? What did the politicians do? What teachings were begun?

the politicians, especially by John C. Calhoun, who appears to have made use of this measure as an instrument for creating ill feeling in his section against the National Government. Then was commenced that systematic teaching of disloyalty to the Government, which created a slight rebellion in South Carolina in 1832, and the great civil war kindled in 1861.

5. Mr. Adams left the chair of state in the spring of 1829, when his country was at peace with all the world, and the national debt almost extinguished. General Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee, had been elected his successor, after a contest in which almost unexampled malignity of party feeling had been exhibited. John C. Calhoun was reëlected Vice-President.

SECTION IX.

JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION [1829–1837].

1. Several surviving officers and soldiers of the Revolution surrounded General Jackson, when, on the 4th of March, 1829, he took the oath of office as seventh President of the United States. He constructed a cabinet wholly of his political friends,[1] and with inflexible honesty, a strong will, incorruptible integrity, and audacity which amazed his friends and alarmed his opponents, he began the administration of public affairs with great vigor.

2. In 1832, the President and the Supreme Court of the United States came into collision. The authorities of Georgia claimed for that State the lands of the Cherokee Indians within its borders.[2] The President favored the claim. The Georgians proceeded

1. Martin Van Buren, Secretary of State; Samuel D. Ingham, Secretary of the Treasury; John H. Eaton, Secretary of War; John Branch, Secretary of the Navy; and John McPherson Berrien, Attorney-General. It having been determined to make the Postmaster-General a cabinet officer, William T. Barry was appointed to that station.

2. Note 4, page 5.

QUESTIONS.—5. What can you say of Mr. Adams leaving the chair of state? Who was elected his successor?—1. What can you tell about Jackson's inauguration? How did he construct his cabinet, and begin his administration of public affairs?

to expel them, when the Supreme Court decided against the claims of that State. The authorities of Georgia, favored by Jackson, resisted the decision, and great trouble was anticipated. The difficulty was settled, and in the course of a few years the Cherokees peacefully migrated to lands west of the Mississippi river.[1]

www.lptool.com.cn

3. Another cause of public agitation soon appeared. The charter of the United States Bank,[2] in which the public money was deposited, would expire in 1836. In his first annual message [December, 1828] the President took ground against a renewal of the charter;[3] and in 1832, he recommended the withdrawal of the public funds ($10,000,000) from its custody, because it was an unsafe depository. Congress refused to authorize the measure, when the President took the responsibility of ordering the Secretary of the Treasury to remove them. It was done in October, 1833, and produced a terrible financial and business convulsion. The act was doubtless beneficial to the country.

JACKSON, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

1. The *Cherokees* were involved in the difficulties of their *Creek* neighbors. They were defended against the encroachments of the Georgians during Adams's Administration, but in December, 1829, they were crushed, as a nation, by an act of Congress. The *Cherokees* were more advanced in the arts of civilized life than the *Creeks*. They had churches, schools, and a printing-press, and were becoming successful agriculturists. It appeared cruel in the extreme to remove them from their fertile lands and the graves of their fathers, to the wilderness; yet it was, doubtless, a proper measure for insuring the prosperity of both races. But now, again, the tide of civilization is beating against their borders. Will they not be borne upon its powerful wave, further into the wilderness?

2. Note 7, page 197. It was rechartered in 1816.

3. Jackson regarded the bank as unauthorized by the National Constitution, and an instrument of political corruption.

QUESTIONS.—2. What can you say about a collision between the President and the Supreme Court, in reference to the action of the authorities of Georgia? 3. What other cause of public agitation appeared? What can you tell about the President and the United States Bank?

4. At the same period, still more important events agitated the public mind.[1] In the spring of 1832, a portion of the Western Indian tribes, led by Black Hawk, a fiery Sac chief, commenced a warfare upon the frontier settlements of Illinois. They were utterly subdued in August, when Black Hawk was made a prisoner.[1] Then came menaces of civil war from South Carolina. The imposition of additional duties upon foreign goods,[2] by act of Congress, in the spring of 1832, led to a State convention in November, which declared the law unconstitutional, and therefore null and void.

BLACK HAWK.

www.libtool.com.cn

5. The State authorities of South Carolina, assuming the right to annul any act of the National Government, prepared to resist by force of arms the collection of duties in the port of Charleston. Jackson met the crisis promptly by a proclamation [December 10, 1832][3] in which he warned the fomenters of rebellion that the laws of the United States would be enforced by military power. The Nullifiers, as the rebellious leaders were called,[4] quailed, and gladly accepted a compromise adroitly prepared by Henry Clay, for the sake of peace. A bill prepared by him, providing for the gradual reduction of the obnoxious duties, became a law on the 3d of March [1833], and quiet was restored.[5]

HENRY CLAY.

6. The intense excitement caused by the removal of the public

1. This brief strife appeared very alarming, at one time. Black Hawk was taken to Washington, New York, and other cities, that he might be impressed with the number and power of the white people.

2. Verse 4, page 235.

3. Jackson had just been reëlected President, with Martin Van Buren as Vice-President.

4. The principal leaders were John C. Calhoun, who had recently resigned the office of Vice-President, and was now a member of the United States Senate, and Robert Y. Hayne who was also in the Senate. Calhoun asserted the doctrine of State *Supremacy*, which he adroitly called State *Rights*, with great boldness, on the floor of Congress, and so did Hayne.

5. The conspirators against the Union were only checked in their wickedness, and at once set about the corruption of the people. Jackson predicted that their next pretext for rebellion would not be a tariff, but slavery. That prediction was fulfilled at the beginning of 1861.

QUESTIONS.—4. What can you tell about an Indian war? What important event occurred in South Carolina? 5. What can you tell of the rebellious position of the State authorities of South Carolina? What did the President do? How did the Nullifiers avoid great trouble for themselves?

funds from the United States Bank had just subsided, when [December, 1835] war with the Seminole Indians in Florida commenced. A majority of the tribe were dissatisfied with a treaty which a few chiefs had made for their emigration west of the Mississippi river; and when General Thompson was sent by the National Government to remove them by force, Osceola, a very able chief, was so defiant and dangerous in his opposition, that he was seized and imprisoned. He feigned penitence, and, on promising to fulfill the agreements of the treaty, he was released.

7. Osceola was treacherous. In violation of his promise, and for the healing of his wounded pride, he led a war party in murderous attacks on the frontier settlers, and killed General Thompson and five of his friends [December 28, 1835] near Fort King. Almost at the same hour, a hundred men under Major Dade, who had been sent to the relief of General Clinch at Fort Drane, in the interior of Florida, were attacked by the savages, and all but four were killed. Two days later, General Clinch and his troops had a battle with the Seminoles on the Withlacoochee; and on the 29th of February [1836], General Gaines had a battle with the savages near the same place.

OSCEOLA.

8. In May following, the Creeks aided the Seminoles by attacking settlers in Western Georgia and Eastern Alabama, and thousands of white people fled in terror from their homes. By the judicious management of General Scott, then in command in the South, they were soon subdued, and sent beyond the Mississippi. The Seminoles still held out; and in October, 1836, Governor Call, of Georgia, marched into their country with two thousand men, a part of whom had a severe battle with the Indians at

QUESTIONS.—6. What excitement had subsided, and what new sensation was produced? What can you tell about the dissatisfaction of the Seminole Indians? 7. What have you to say about Osceola? What crime did he commit? What military movements took place in Florida? 8. What did the Creek Indians do? What did General Scott effect? What can you tell about an expedition under Governor Call?

Wahoo swamp [November 21, 1836], near the scene of Dade's massacre. It was indecisive.

9. All winter the war went on; and in March, 1837, a number of chiefs came to General Jesup, then in chief command, at Fort Dade, and made a treaty of peace. The treacherous Osceola broke it, and in October following he was seized by stratagem, and imprisoned in Fort Moultrie, at Charleston, where he died. Soon after this [December 25, 1837], Colonel Taylor, who had succeeded Jesup in command, gave the Indians a severe chastisement on the borders of Lake Macaco; yet for four years longer the Seminoles, in their swamp fastnesses, called *The Everglades*, resisted almost nine thousand United States troops. The war was not really closed before 1842.

SEAT OF SEMINOLE WAR.

10. General Jackson's official career ended in the spring of 1837. His Administration of eight years had been marked by great vigor and important events.[1] Two new States had been added to the Union,[2] making the number twenty-six. The original thirteen States had been doubled. In the autumn of 1836, Martin Van Buren was elected his successor. The people having failed to elect a Vice-president, Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky, was chosen such by the United States Senate.

1. At the close of Jackson's first term, our foreign relations were very satisfactory, except with France. That Government had agreed to pay about $5,000,000, by installments, as indemnification for French spoliations on American commerce, under the operations of the several decrees of Napoleon, from 1806 to 1811. The French Government did not promptly comply with the agreement, and the President assumed a hostile tone, which caused France to perform her duty. Similar claims against Portugal were made, and payment obtained. A treaty of reciprocity was made with Russia and Belgium, and everywhere the American flag commanded the highest respect. The last official act of President Jackson produced much excitement and bitter feelings toward him. A circular was issued from the Treasury Department on the 11th of July, 1836, requiring all collectors of the public revenue to receive nothing but gold and silver in payment. This was intended to check speculations in the public lands, but it also bore heavily upon every kind of business. The "specie circular" was denounced; and so loud was the clamor, that toward the close of the session in 1837, both Houses of Congress adopted a partial repeal of it. Jackson refused to sign the bill, and by keeping it in his possession until after the adjournment of Congress, prevented it becoming a law. This act was denounced as usurpation.

2. Arkansas in June, 1836, and Michigan in January, 1837.

QUESTIONS.—9. What further can you tell about the war with the Indians? What can you tell about Osceola's treachery, and his seizure and death? What more can you relate about the war, and its close? 10. What have you to say about Jackson's Administration? Who was elected his successor?

SECTION X.

www.libtool.com.cn

VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION [1837–1841].

1. Mr. Van Buren[1] commenced his official career with an able cabinet, at a time when the business of the country was on the verge of a terrible convulsion and utter prostration. The distressing effects of the removal of the public funds [October, 1833] from the United States Bank,[2] and the operations of the "specie circular,"[3] had disappeared, in a measure; but as the remedy for the evil was superficial, the cure was only apparent.

VAN BUREN, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

2. The chief remedy was in the form of loans of the public money to individuals, by the State banks with whom it had been deposited. The medicine produced a disease worse than the one it was intended to cure. A sudden expansion of paper currency was the result, and excessive importations, inordinate stimulus to all industrial pursuits, and a wild spirit of speculation ensued. Overtrading and speculation, relying for support upon continued bank loans, were suddenly checked by bank contractions early in 1837; and during March and April of that year, there were mercantile failures in the city of New York alone to the amount of more than a hun-

1. He appointed John Forsyth Secretary of State; Levi Woodbury, Secretary of the Treasury; Joel R. Poinsett, Secretary of War; Mahlon Dickinson, Secretary of the Navy; Amos Kendall, Postmaster-General; and Benjamin F. Butler, Attorney-General. All of them, except Mr. Poinsett, held their respective offices under President Jackson.

2. Verse 3, page 237. 3. Note 1, page 240.

QUESTIONS.—1. What have you to say about the commencement of Van Buren's Administration? What evils existed? 2. What was the chief remedy for the evil? How did it work?

dred millions of dollars. The effects of these failures were felt to the remotest borders of the Union, and credit and confidence were destroyed.

3. The Seminole war, as we have observed,[1] continued during Van Buren's Administration; and the peaceful relations between the United States and Great Britain were somewhat disturbed by revolutionary movements in Canada, that commenced in 1837.[2] The movement, being professedly to secure the independence of Canada, enlisted the warm sympathies of the American people, and banded companies and individuals crossed the border to aid the "patriots."[3] It was this practical sympathy that offended Great Britain. It was suppressed by the prompt action of the Government of the United States.[4]

4. At this time a long-pending dispute concerning the boundary between Maine and New Brunswick had ripened into preparations for a settlement by war. This threatened danger to the friendship between the United States and Great Britain was soon removed by General Scott, who was sent to that frontier by the President, clothed with power to make peace or war. His conciliatory course produced perfect quiet, and the matter was permanently adjusted by treaty, in August, 1842.[5]

5. Mr. Van Buren was nominated for reëlection in 1840. He was opposed by General William Henry Harrison.[6] The contest was very exciting, and was characterized by demoralizing pro-

1. Verse 6, page 238, to verse 9, page 240.

2. Both Upper and Lower Canada exhibited revolutionary movements. The principal leader of the revolt in Upper Canada was William Lyon Mackenzie; the prime mover in the Lower Province was Louis Joseph Papineau. The movements of the revolutionary party were well planned, but local jealousies prevented unity of action, and the scheme failed.

3. A party of Americans took possession of Navy island, situated in the Niagara river about two miles above the falls, and belonging to Canada. They numbered seven hundred strong, well provisioned, and provided with twenty pieces of cannon. They had a small steamboat named *Caroline*, to ply between Schlosser, on the American side, and Navy island. On a dark night in December, 1837, a party of royalists from the Canada shore crossed over, cut the *Caroline* loose, set her on fire, and she went over the great cataract while in full blaze.

4. In 1838, General Scott was sent to the frontier to preserve order, and was assisted by proclamations by the President, and also by the Governor of New York. Yet secret revolutionary associations, called "Hunters' Lodges," continued for two or three years. Against these, President Tyler's proclamation, here referred to, was specially directed.

5. This was negotiated at Washington city by Daniel Webster for the United States, and Lord Ashburton (special minister) for Great Britain. Besides settling the boundary question, this agreement, known as the Ashburton Treaty, provided for the final suppression of the slave trade, and for the giving up of criminal fugitives from justice, in certain cases.

6. Verse 1, page 214.

QUESTIONS.—3. What have you to say about the Seminole war, and disturbances in Canada? 4. What can you tell about a dispute and its settlement concerning the boundary between the United States and a British province?

ceedings hitherto unknown in the United States. It resulted in the election of General Harrison, with John Tyler, of Virginia, as Vice-President. And now, at the close of the first fifty years of the existence of the Republic, the population had increased from three and a half millions, of all colors, to seventeen millions.

SECTION XI.

HARRISON'S AND TYLER'S ADMINISTRATIONS [1841–1845].

1. President Harrison took the oath of office on the 4th of March, 1841; and when his cabinet was announced,[1] the people felt a conviction that a brighter day was about to dawn upon the country by a change of policy and measures. But he was suddenly removed by death [April 4, 1841], precisely one month after Chief-Justice Taney administered the oath to him.[2]

2. In accordance with the provisions of the Constitution, the Vice-President became the official successor of the deceased President, and on the 6th of April, 1841, the oath of office was administered to

HARRISON, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

JOHN TYLER.

3. The cabinet officers appointed by Harrison remained in place

1. Daniel Webster, Secretary of State; Thomas Ewing, Secretary of the Treasury; John Bell, Secretary of War; George E. Badger, Secretary of the Navy; Francis Granger, Postmaster-General; and J. J. Crittenden, Attorney-General.

2. The only official act of general importance performed by President Harrison during his brief Administration, was the issuing of a proclamation on the 17th of March, calling an extraordinary session of Congress, to commence at the close of the following May, to legislate upon the subject of finance and revenue.

QUESTIONS.—5. What was the result of the Presidential election in 1840? What have you to say about an increase in the population?—1. What can you tell about the inauguration of Harrison? What did the people anticipate, and how were they disappointed? 2. What change occurred in consequence of the death of Harrison? Who succeeded him?

until the following September, when all but Mr. Webster, the Secretary of State, resigned.[1] Great public interests would have suffered by Mr. Webster's withdrawal at that time, and he patriotically remained at his post, while his associate ministers, dissatisfied with the President, retired.

TYLER, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

4. The extraordinary session of Congress called by Harrison, commenced on the 31st of May, and continued until the 13th of September. The chief object sought to be obtained was the recharter of the United States Bank.[2] The actions of the President in this matter (who vetoed two separate bills passed for the purpose) were regarded as violations of pledges to his party and the friends of that institution throughout the country, and, for that reason, his ministers and party deserted him.

5. Mr. Tyler's Administration was distinguished by the return of a South Sea exploring expedition;[3] the settlement of the north-eastern boundary question;[4] and for domestic difficulties in Rhode Island,

1. He then appoined Walter Forward, Secretary of the Treasury; John C. Spencer, Secretary of War; Abel P. Upshur, Secretary of the Navy; Charles A. Wickliffe, Postmaster-General; and Hugh S. Legaré, Attorney-General.

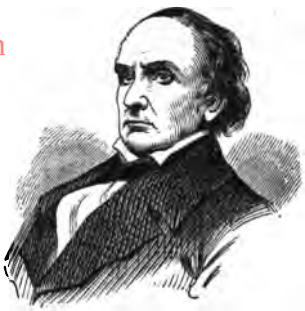
2. Verse 3, page 237.

3. This expedition, commanded by Lieutenant (now—1864—rear-admiral) Wilkes, of the United States navy, had been sent several years before, to explore the great southern ocean. It coasted along what is supposed to be the Antarctic continent, for seventeen hundred miles in the vicinity of latitude sixty-six degrees south, and between longitude ninety-six and one hundred and fifty-four degrees east. The expedition brought home a great many curiosities of island human life, and a large number of fine specimens of natural history, all of which are now [1864] in the Smithsonian Institute, in Washington city. The expedition made a voyage of about ninety thousand miles, equal to almost four times the circumference of the globe.

4. Verse 4, page 242.

QUESTIONS.—3. What can you tell about cabinet officers? What about the patriotism of Mr. Webster? 4. What can you tell about an extra session of Congress? How did Tyler offend his party, and cause a dissolution of his cabinet?

so serious as to demand the interposition of the National Government. The Rhode Island difficulty grew out of an effort to exchange the charter granted by Charles the Second,[1] under which the commonwealth had been ruled for one hundred and eighty years, for a new State constitution. Two parties were formed; a bitter quarrel ensued; each armed in defense of its position, and the State was on the verge of civil war. The President sent United States troops to prevent bloodshed, and the excitement was quelled. A Constitution was adopted in 1842, and went into operation in the spring of 1843.



DANIEL WEBSTER.

6. The admission of the Republic of Texas,[2] as a State of the Union, was made a subject for warm discussion toward the close of Tyler's Administration. It was opposed, on one hand, because it would increase the political power of slavery; and was advocated, on the other hand, for precisely the same reason. A treaty for annexation, signed on the 12th of April, 1844, was rejected by the Senate, and the subject had an important bearing on the Presidential election held in the ensuing autumn. James K. Polk, who was favorable to the annexation, was elected, with George M. Dallas, of Pennsylvania, as Vice-President.

1. In 1663. See verse 4, page 43.

2. Texas was a part of the domain of that ancient Mexico conquered by Cortez (verse 9, page 14). In 1824, Mexico became a republic under Generals Victoria and Santa Anna, and was divided into States united by a Federal Constitution. One of these was Texas, a territory which was originally claimed by the United States as a part of Louisiana, purchased (verse 1, page 203) from France in 1803, but ceded to Spain in 1820. In 1821-'22, a colony from the United States, under Stephen F. Austin, made a settlement on both sides of the Colorado river; and the Spanish Government favoring immigration thither, caused a rapid increase in the population. There were ten thousand Americans in that province in 1833. Santa Anna became military dictator, and these settlers in Texas, having resolved to seize the province, rebelled. A war ensued; and on the 2d of March, 1836, a convention declared Texas *independent*. Much bloodshed occurred afterward; but a final battle at San Jacinto, in which the Texans were led by the late General Samuel Houston, afterward a member of the United States Senate from Texas, sustained the position the people had taken, and terminated the strife. Texas remained an independent republic until its admission into our National Union in 1845.

QUESTIONS.—5. What events distinguished Tyler's Administration? What can you tell about troubles in Rhode Island? 6. What was done concerning the admission of Texas into the Union? What have you to say concerning the election of James K. Polk? 7. What was the last important official act performed by Tyler?

7. The last important official act of President Tyler was the signing, on the 3d of March, 1845, of a bill for the admission of Florida and Iowa into the Union of States.

www.libtool.com.cn

SECTION XII.

POLK'S ADMINISTRATION [1845–1849].

POLK, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

1. An immense concourse of citizens were present when James K. Polk took the oath of office on the 4th of March, 1845. On the following day he nominated his cabinet officers,[1] and entered with vigor upon the duties of his exalted station.

2. The annexation of Texas and a claim of Great Britain to a large portion of the Territory of Oregon, on the Pacific coast, occupied the earliest and most serious attention of the new Administration. The Texas question was held to be first in importance; Tyler had sent a messenger to the Government of that republic, with a copy of the bill (or joint resolutions) for annexation. On the 4th of July [1845] the Texan Government formally approved the measure, and that republic became a State of our Union.

3. Mexico, from which Texas had been wrested,[2] had never acknowl-

1. James Buchanan, Secretary of State, Robert J. Walker, Secretary of the Treasury; William L. Marcy, Secretary of War; George Bancroft, Secretary of the Navy; Cave Johnson, Postmaster-General; and John Y. Mason, Attorney-General.

2. Note 2, page 245.

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell about Polk's inauguration, and his cabinet appointments? 2. What subjects occupied the earliest attention of the new Administration? What can you tell about the Texas matter?

edged the independence of her stolen territory; and, as had been predicted, its annexation to the United States produced a rupture between that Government and Mexico.[1] Expecting this, President Polk ordered General Zachary Taylor[2] to march into Texas with about fifteen hundred troops, and take post near the Mexican frontier as an "army of observation." At the same time, a squadron, under Commodore Conner, was sent to the Gulf of Mexico for the protection of American interests in that quarter.

4. Taylor first formed a camp at Corpus Christi, near the mouth of the Neuces river, where he remained until the following March [1846], when he advanced to the mouth of the Rio Grande, opposite the Mexican city of Matamoras, and there established a fortified camp. The Mexicans were gathering in force at Matamoras; and toward the middle of April their leader sent a peremptory demand for Taylor to withdraw instantly. Scouting parties were out on both sides; and on the 24th of April, on the Texas bank of the Rio Grande, the first blood was shed[3] in

THE WAR WITH MEXICO.

5. Leaving a small force under Major Brown to hold the position opposite Matamoras, General Taylor marched to Point Isabel, where his stores were menaced by a large body of Mexicans. He was recalled by an attack upon Brown, and while making his way back with a little more than two thousand men, he met the Mexican army [May 8, 1846], six thousand strong, under General Arista, at a prairie called Palo Alto. A hot battle of five hours ensued, and Taylor won a victory. On the following day [May

1. There was already a serious misunderstanding between the United States and Mexico, concerning claims of American citizens on the latter Government, for losses of property occasioned by the acts of its public officials. Commissioners appointed by the two Governments, to adjust these claims, met in 1840. The Mexican commissioners acknowledged two millions of dollars, and no more. In 1843 the whole amount was acknowledged by Mexico, and the payment was to be made in twenty installments, of $300,000 each. Only three of these installments had been paid in 1845, and the Mexican Government refused to decide whether the remainder should be settled or not.

2. Verse 9, page 240.

3. General Taylor had been informed that a body of Mexican troops were crossing the Rio Grande above his encampment, and he sent Captain Thornton, with sixty dragoons, to reconnoitre. They were surprised and captured. Sixteen Americans were killed, and Captain Thornton escaped by an extraordinary leap of his horse.

QUESTIONS.—3. What have you to say concerning the effect of the annexation of Texas? What did President Polk do? 4. Can you give an account of the movements of General Taylor? What did the Mexicans do? How was the first blood shed? 5. What did General Taylor do? Can you give an account of two battles with the Mexicans?

9], at Resaca de la Palma, a shorter but more terrible conflict ensued, when the Mexicans were again defeated, and their army broken up, with a loss of one thousand men. Taylor lost only one hundred. His loss the day before was fifty-three.

6. When Congress was informed of the shedding of blood, they formally declared [May 11, 1846] that war existed by the act of Mexico. They authorized the President to raise fifty thousand volunteers, and appropriated ten millions of dollars for carrying on the contest. The Secretary of War and General Scott[1] planned a campaign greater in the territorial extent of its proposed operations than any recorded in history. A fleet was to sweep around Cape Horn and attack the Pacific coast of Mexico; an "Army of the West" was to gather at Fort Leavenworth, invade New Mexico, and coöperate with the Pacific fleet; and an "Army of the Centre" was to rendezvous in the heart of Texas, to invade Old Mexico from the north.

GENERAL SCOTT.

7. General Taylor crossed the Rio Grande and took possession of Matamoras on the 18th of May. Late in August, the army, led by General Worth, was put in motion for the interior; and late in September, General Taylor was before Monterey, with six thousand men. It was defended by General Ampudia with nine thousand men. After a siege and assault which lasted about four days, Ampudia surrendered [September 24, 1846] the fort and garrison. This accomplished, Taylor waited for further orders from his Government.

8. General Wool, in the mean time, had been preparing the volunteers, and before the middle of July, twelve thousand of them were mustered into the service. Nine thousand of these were sent to reënforce Taylor, and with the remaining three thousand Wool prepared, at Bexar, in Texas, for an invasion of Mex-

1. Then general-in-chief of the armies of the United States.

QUESTIONS.—6. What did Congress do on hearing of bloodshed? What can you tell about a plan of campaign? 7. Can you give an account of Taylor's invasion of Mexico, and the capture of Monterey?

ico. This was accomplished in October, and he won the friendship of the people by his justice and kindness. Taylor, in the mean time, had gone farther into Mexico, without much opposition; and late in December the divisions of Wool and Worth were united. On the 29th, Taylor, with his combined forces, took and occupied Victoria, the capital of Tamaulipas, with the intention of attacking Tampico, on the coast.[1]

www.libtool.com.cn

9. Just as Taylor was about to commence a vigorous winter campaign, General Scott, who had started for Mexico, ordered him, by a messenger, to send a large portion of his best officers and troops to assist in the siege of Vera Cruz.[2] By this order, which he promptly obeyed, Taylor was left with only about five thousand men, to act on the defensive against twenty thousand Mexicans, then gathering at San Luis Potosi, under General Santa Anna. These advanced upon the Americans early in February [1847], and at Buena Vista,[3] eleven miles from Saltillo, a heavy battle was fought on the 23d. Taylor, ably assisted by Wool, repulsed the enemy, and drove them in confusion from the field. They fled during the night, leaving their dead and wounded behind them.[4]

REGION OF TAYLOR'S OPERATIONS.

10. The Americans were now in possession of all the northern provinces of Mexico.[5] General Taylor was left in a position of

1. Commodore Conner, who commanded the "Home Squadron" in the Gulf, captured Tampico. Tobasco and Tuspan were captured by Commodore Perry, in October following.

2. The necessity for this order was as painful to General Scott as it was mortifying to General Taylor. Before leaving Washington, Scott wrote a long private letter to General Taylor, apprising him of this necessity, expressing his sincere regrets, and speaking in highest praise of the victories already achieved in Mexico.

3. Pleasant View. This was the name of a plantation at Angostura.

4. The Americans lost two hundred and sixty-seven killed, four hundred and fifty-six wounded, and twenty-three missing. The Mexicans lost almost two thousand. They left five hundred of their comrades dead on the field. Among the Americans slain was Lieutenant-Colonel Clay, son of the distinguished Henry Clay, of Kentucky. Verse 5, page 238.

5. On the day of the battle at Buena Vista, General Minon, with eight hundred cavalry, was driven from Saltillo by Captain Webster and a small party of Americans. On the 26th of February, Colonels Morgan and Irvin defeated a party at Agua Frio; and on the 7th of March, Major Giddings was victorious at Ceralvo.

QUESTIONS.—8. What was General Wool doing with the volunteers? What can you tell of his invasion of Mexico, and junction with Taylor? What did Taylor then do? 9. What can you tell of General Scott's order to General Taylor? How did it affect Taylor? What can you tell of the Mexican force, and the battle at Buena Vista?

inactivity, and in September following he assigned the command of his army to Wool, and returned to the United States. In the mean time, the "Army of the West" had been active, under General Kearny. He took formal possession of New Mexico, at Santa Fé, its capital, on the 18th of August, 1846, and then pushed on toward California. He was soon met by intelligence that the conquest of that country had been accomplished by Colonel Fremont.[1] He sent back the main body of his troops to Santa Fé, and with one hundred men went forward, and shared with Stockton and Fremont the honor of the complete conquest and pacification of California. On the 18th of February, 1847, he proclaimed its annexation to the United States.

COLONEL FREMONT.

11. General Kearny sent Colonel Doniphan, with one thousand Missouri volunteers, to chastise the Navajo Indians. He forced them to make a treaty of peace on the 22d of November, 1846, and then proceeded to join General Wool.[2] At Sacramento, near Chihuahua, the capital of the State of that name, he fought and

1. Lieutenant-Colonel Fremont was sent with a party of about sixty men, to explore portions of New Mexico and California. When he arrived in the vicinity of Monterey, on the Pacific coast, he was opposed by a Mexican force under General Castro. Fremont aroused all the American settlers in the vicinity of San Francisco bay, captured a Mexican post and garrison, and nine cannon and two hundred and fifty muskets, at Sonoma Pass [June 15, 1846], and then advanced to Sonoma, and defeated Castro and his troops. The Mexican authorities were effectually driven out of that region of the country; and on the 5th of July, the American Californians declared themselves independent, and placed Fremont at the head of their affairs. Two days afterward, Commodore Sloat, then in command of the squadron in the Pacific, bombarded and captured Monterey; and on the 9th, Commodore Montgomery took possession of San Francisco. Commodore Stockton arrived on the 15th, and, with Colonel Fremont, took possession of the city of Los Angelos on the 17th of August. When California became a State, Fremont was elected [1851] its first United States senator, and in 1856, he was the candidate of the "Republican" party for the office of President of the United States. He served as major-general of volunteers in the earlier part of the Great Civil War. See page 265.

2. At Braceto, in the valley of the Rio del Norte, he met a large Mexican force on the 22d of December, under General Ponce de Leon, who sent a black flag to Doniphan, with the message: "We will neither ask nor give quarter." The Mexicans then advanced and fired three rounds. The Missourians fell upon their faces, and the enemy, supposing them to be all slain, rushed forward for plunder. The Americans suddenly arose, and delivering a deadly fire from their rifles, killed two hundred Mexicans, and dispersed the remainder in great confusion.

QUESTIONS.—10. What did the Americans now possess? What was Taylor's position, and what did he do? What can you tell about the "Army of the West"? Can you give an account of the conquest of New Mexico and California?

defeated four thousand Mexicans [February 28, 1847], and placed the American flag on the citadel of the capital [March 2], in the midst of forty thousand inhabitants. After a perilous march of almost five thousand miles, he joined General Wool at Saltillo [March 22]. The conquest of Northern Mexico and California was now complete, and General Scott was marching on the Mexican capital. Let us now consider

www.libpol.com.cn

GENERAL SCOTT'S INVASION OF MEXICO.

12. In the autumn of 1846, the Mexican Government having refused terms of peace proposed by the United States, it was resolved to take possession of that country. An army under General Scott and a squadron under Commodore Conner appeared before Vera Cruz on the 9th of March, and after a siege of eighteen days the city and the neighboring castle of San Juan de Ulloa were surrendered, with five thousand men and five hundred cannon. Scott lost in the encounters eighty men, and the Mexicans more than two thousand.

INTRENCHMENTS AT VERA CRUZ.

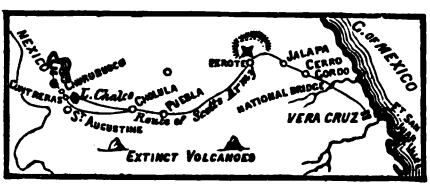
13. Scott immediately marched toward the city of Mexico, with little more than eight thousand men. At the Sierra Gordo, a difficult mountain pass at the foot of the Eastern Cordilleras, he found Santa Anna, with twelve thousand men, strongly intrenched. Scott boldly attacked him; killed or wounded more than a thousand Mexicans; took three thousand prisoners; dispersed the remainder, and made Santa Anna flee on a mule. Scott's loss was a little more than four hundred.

14. Onward the Americans marched. On the 22d of April [1847] they had possession of Perote, the strongest fortress in

QUESTIONS.—11. What can you tell about an expedition under Colonel Doniphan against the Indians? What can you tell of his doings in Mexico? 12. What arrangements were made for a new invasion of Mexico? What can you tell about an attack upon and capture of Vera Cruz? 13. What can you tell about Scott's advance into Mexico? What was done at Sierra Gordo?

Mexico. It was on the summit of the Eastern Cordilleras. On the 15th of May they entered the city of Puebla, in the presence of its eighty thousand inhabitants; and there they rested until August, after a series of unparalleled victories. Within two months, an army averaging only about ten thousand men had taken some of the strongest fortresses on the continent, made ten thousand prisoners, and captured seven hundred pieces of artillery, ten thousand stand of arms, and thirty thousand shells and cannon-balls. Yet greater conquests awaited them.

15. At Puebla, Scott was reënforced, and with ten thousand men resumed his march toward the capital, through a magnificent region of country, and on the 10th of August they looked down from the lofty Cordilleras upon the extensive valley of Mexico. On the following day General Twiggs led the advance of the Americans cautiously toward the ancient capital, between which and the invaders were very strong fortifications, to be defended by at least thirty thousand men, under the general command of Santa Anna.



ROUTE OF U. S. ARMY FROM VERA CRUZ TO MEXICO.

OPERATIONS NEAR MEXICO.

16. An attack upon the defenses of Mexico was commenced on the morning of the 20th of August, 1847. The Mexican fortress of San Antonio and the camp of Contreras were first taken, with many prisoners and cannon. Churubusco was then assailed. Santa Anna then advanced, and the whole region became a battle-field. The Americans were victorious, and Santa Anna and his shattered army fled to the capital. Such was the work of one day. Full four thousand

QUESTIONS.—14. Give an account of the triumphant march of the Americans. 15. What can you tell of the Americans at Puebla, and their march toward the capital? 16. Give an account of the attack upon the defenses of Mexico, and the result.

Mexico an easy prey. Santa Anna's treachery. Entrance into the capital.

Mexicans were killed or wounded, and three thousand were made prisoners. A part of the trophies were thirty-seven cannon.

17. Scott might now have entered the city in triumph. He preferred to again offer the Mexicans peace. Santa Anna asked an armistice until terms could be arranged. It was granted; and, while the American commissioner was detained in the city by negotiations, that treacherous leader was strengthening its defenses. Disgusted by his bad conduct, Scott declared the armistice at an end on the 7th of September, and on the following morning he proceeded to take the city by storm. The strong position of Molino del Rey [September 8] and the lofty fortified hill of Chapultepec [September 13] were compelled to yield to the Americans, and, on the 14th of September, Scott entered the Mexican capital as conqueror.[1]

SANTA ANNA.

18. Order was soon restored in the capital. Santa Anna and his army and the officers of Government had fled, and the treacherous chief was soon stripped of power, and became a fugitive.[2] A treaty of peace was concluded between the two Governments at Guadalupe Hidalgo, on the 2d of February, 1848,[3] and

1. A deputation of citizens came out and begged Scott to spare the town and treat for peace. He would not listen, but ordered Generals Quitman and Worth to go forward and place the American flag upon the national palace. Scott rode on, followed by the army, and at ten o'clock formal possession was taken of the Mexican capital.

2. He appeared before Puebla on the 22d of September, where Colonel Childs had been besieged since the 13th. The approach of General Lane frightened him away; and in a battle with the troops of that leader at Huamantla, Santa Anna was defeated. On the 18th of October he was again defeated at Atlixco, and there his troops deserted him, and he became a fugitive, seeking safety by flight to the shores of the Gulf.

3. It stipulated the evacuation of Mexico by the American army, within three months; the payment of $3,000,000 in hand, and $12,000,000 in four annual installments by the United States to Mexico, for the territory acquired by conquest; and, in addition, to assume debts due to certain citizens of the United States to the amount of $3,500,000. It also fixed boundaries, etc. During the same month when that treaty was signed, a man employed by Captain Sutter, who owned a mill twenty-five miles up the American fork of the Sacramento river, discovered gold. It was very soon found in other localities, and during the summer rumors of the fact reached the United States. These rumors assumed tangible form in the President's message in December, 1848; and at the beginning of 1849, thousands were on their way to the land of gold. Around Cape Horn, across the isthmus of Panama, and over the great central plains of the continent, men went by hundreds; and far and wide in California the precious metal was found. From Europe and South America hundreds flocked thither; and the Chinese came also by scores from Asia, to dig gold. The dreams of the early Spanish voyagers, and those of the English who sought gold on the coasts of Labrador

QUESTIONS.—17. What might Scott have done, and what did he do? What can you tell about the treachery of Santa Anna? What did Scott do? What can you tell of the events that led to the final conquest of Mexico? 18. What can you tell about affairs in the Mexican capital? What can you tell about Santa Anna?

New Mexico and California became Territories of the United States. President Polk proclaimed peace on the 4th of July following.[1]

www.libtool.com.cn

19. During the last year of Polk's Administration, Wisconsin was admitted [May 29, 1848] as a State of the Union. At about the same time, General Taylor, whose deeds in Mexico made him very popular, was nominated for the office of President of the United States; and in the autumn he was elected by a large majority over his opponent, General Cass, with Millard Fillmore, of New York, as Vice-President.

SECTION XIII.

TAYLOR'S ADMINISTRATION [1849–1850].

1. The 4th of March, 1849, fell on the Sabbath, and President Taylor did not take the oath of office until the 5th. He nominated his cabinet[2] on the following day, and, with pure and honest purposes, he entered upon the duties of his high station.

---

and up the rivers of the middle of the continent, have been more than realized, and hundreds continue to go thither, and to other territories, in which the gold seems inexhaustible. New gold regions are discovered every year.

1. The following are the names and dates of the principal battles in the war with Mexico:

Name.	Date.	Page.
1846.		
Palo Alto,	May 8.	247
Resaca de la Palma,	May 9.	248
Monterey,	Sept. 24.	248
Bracito,	Dec. 25.	250, n.
1847.		
Buena Vista,	Feb. 23.	249
Sacramento,	Feb. 28.	250
Vera Cruz,	March 27.	251
Sierra Gordo,	April 18.	251
Contreras, Churubusco,	Aug. 20.	252
Molino del Rey,	Sept. 8.	253
Chapultepec,	Sept. 13.	253
Huamantla,	Oct. 9.	253, n.

2. He appointed John M. Clayton Secretary of State; William M. Meredith, Secretary of the Treasury; George W. Crawford, Secretary of War; William B. Preston, Secretary of the Navy; Thomas Ewing, Secretary of the Interior (a new office recently established, in which some of the duties before performed by the State and Treasury Departments are attended to), Jacob Collamer, Postmaster-General; and Reverdy Johnson, Attorney-General.

QUESTIONS.—18. What can you tell about the treaty of peace? 19. What State was now admitted to the Union? What can you say about Polk's successor?—1. What can you tell about Taylor's inauguration, and his cabinet?

2. The agitation of the slavery question was now revived by the action of the inhabitants of California, who, in convention at San Francisco, had formed a State Constitution, by which slavery should be excluded from the territory forever. When, in February, 1850, her representatives[1] asked Congress to admit her as a State of the Union, the friends of the Slave Power in that body violently opposed her admission as a Free State, and openly declared that such an act would be a sufficient reason for the Slave States to withdraw from the Union.

www.hbtool.com.cn

TAYLOR, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

3. The threats of the Slave Power so intimidated the real friends of the Union that they became ready to yield. Henry Clay offered a plan of compromise[2] [January 25, 1850] in the United States Senate. A committee of thirteen (of which Mr. Clay was chairman) was appointed to consider the various propositions, and, on the 8th of May, Clay introduced a compromise bill. The subject was discussed about four months, when, on the 9th of September, the famous *Compromise Act* of 1850 became law.[3] During the

1. Under the new Constitution, John C. Fremont and William M. Gwin were elected senators, and Edward Gilbert and G. H. Wright were elected members of the House of Representatives. The senators carried the new Constitution with them to Washington.

2. It was Mr. Clay who proposed the *Missouri Compromise*, and the compromise with Calhoun and his fellow conspirators in 1833. See note 4, page 238.

3. Because several measures, distinct in their objects, were embodied in the act, it is sometimes known as the "Omnibus Bill." The most important stipulations of the act were, 1st. That California should be admitted into the Union as a State, with its anti-slavery Constitution, and its territorial extent from Oregon to the Mexican possessions; 2d. That the vast country east of California, containing the Mormon settlements near the Great Salt Lake, should be erected into a Territory, called Utah, without mention of slavery; 3d. That New Mexico should be erected into a Territory, within satisfactory boundaries, and without any stipulations respecting slavery, and that ten millions of dollars should be paid to Texas from the National treasury in purchase of her claims; 4th. That the slave-trade in the Dis-

QUESTIONS.—2. How was slavery agitation revived? What occurred in Congress in relation to California? 3. What were the effects of the threats of the Slave Power? What can you tell of another compromise? What sad event occurred?

discussions of this matter, President Taylor sickened and died [July 9, 1850], and Mr. Fillmore became, by the operation of the Constitution,[1] President of the United States.

www.libtool.com.cn

FILLMORE, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATION [1850–1853].

4. Mr. Fillmore took the oath of office on the 10th of July, 1850. President Taylor's cabinet ministers remained in place until the 15th, when new heads of departments[2] were appointed.[3] The most important measures of his Administration were the Compromise Act;[4] the settlement of disputes with Great Britain concerning the fisheries on the coast of British America,[5] and the sending of an expedition to open diplomatic and commercial relations with Japan.

5. The country was agitated, at times, from the spring of 1850 until near the close of President Buchanan's Administration in 1861, by the fitting out of expeditions in the United States with the professed object

trict of Columbia should be abolished; 5th. A law providing for the arrest, in the Northern or Free States, and return to their masters, of all slaves who should escape from bondage. The last measure of the Compromise Act produced much dissatisfaction at the North; and the execution, evasion, and violation of the law, in several instances, led to serious disturbances and much bitter sectional feeling.

1. Verse 2, page 243.

2. Verse 2, page 196.

3. Daniel Webster, Secretary of State; Thomas Corwin, Secretary of the Treasury; Charles M. Conrad, Secretary of War; Alexander H. H. Stuart, Secretary of the Interior; William A. Graham, Secretary of the Navy; John J. Crittenden, Attorney-General; Nathan K. Hall, Postmaster-General.

4. Verse 3, page 255.

5. This stipulation was so construed as to allow American fishermen to catch cod within the large bays, where they could easily carry on their avocation at a greater distance than three miles from any land. Such had been the common practice, without interference, until the assumption of exclusive right to these bays was promulgated by the British.

QUESTIONS.—4. Who was Taylor's successor? What did Fillmore do? What were the most important measures of his Administration?

Fillibustering. Repose and prosperity looked for. A delusion.

of liberating Cuba from the rule of Old Spain,[1] establishing more liberal governments in Central America, et cetera. These *fillibustering* movements, as they were termed, formed a practical part of the scheme, then fast ripening, for the destruction of our Union and the establishment of a confederacy of Slave States. At one time they threatened to involve our country in serious difficulties.[2]

6. During the Administrations of Taylor and Fillmore, one State (California) was added to the Union, and four new Territories were organized, namely, Minnesota, New Mexico, Utah,[3] and Washington. There was a delusive belief that the "slavery agitation" had been laid at rest forever by the *Compromise Act* of 1850;[4] and a period of uncommon prosperity and repose for the nation was looked for. The election of President of the United States in the autumn of 1852 was a quiet one, and resulted in the choice of Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, with William R. King, of Alabama, as Vice-President.

SECTION XIV.

PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION [1853–1857].

1. The 4th of March, 1853, when Franklin Pierce took the oath of office, was a cheerless, stormy day. The oath was admin-

1. The leader of the earlier expedition was General Lopez, a Cuban, who sailed from New Orleans in April, 1850. He landed at Cardenas, Cuba, with the expectation of being joined by native Cubans. He was disappointed, and returned to the United States. In August, 1851, he again sailed from New Orleans, with about four hundred and eighty followers, and landed on the northern coast of Cuba. The leader and many of his followers were captured and executed.

2. The idea became prevalent in Cuba and in Europe that it had become the policy of the United States Government to ultimately acquire absolute possession of that island, and thus control the commerce of the gulf of Mexico (the door to California) and the trade of the West India islands. To prevent this, the cabinets of France and England asked the Government of the United States to enter with them into a treaty which should secure Cuba to Spain. France and England were plainly told by Mr. Everett, the Secretary of State, that the subject was not within the scope of their interference. This put an end to the matter.

3. The greater portion of the inhabitants of Utah are of the religious sect called Mormons, who, after suffering much in Missouri and Illinois from their opposers, penetrated the deep wilderness [1848] in the interior of our continent, and near the Great Salt Lake, in the midst of the savage Utah tribes, they have built a large city, made extensive plantations, and founded an empire almost as large, in territorial extent, as that of Alexander the Great.

4. Verse 3, page 255.

QUESTIONS.—5. What have you to say about "fillibustering" operations? What were they a part of? 6. What additions were made to the Union? What did the people believe and look for? What can you say about the Presidential election in 1852?

istered by Chief-Justice Taney, and the cabinet appointments were confirmed by the Senate three days afterward.[1]

PIERCE, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

2. Pierce's Administration is distinguished for the revival of the "slavery agitation" in all its intensity; and by explorations on land and sea, carried on by the National Government, and having reference to the future commerce of the Republic with Asia and the islands of the Pacific ocean. The future tracks of steamships across the ocean from our Western ports were thoroughly traversed. The land explorations were for the purpose of deciding upon the best route for the railway about to be constructed between the valley of the Mississippi and the Pacific ocean.

3. Good feeling marked the opening of Congress in December, 1853, but just as preparations were completed for carrying out measures for the national welfare, a bill was introduced in the Senate for the organization of a vast region in the interior of the continent into two Territories, to be called, respectively, *Nebraska* and *Kansas*. The bill contained a provision concerning slavery, which would annul the Missouri Compromise;[2] and the measure was regarded as a blow aimed by the Slave Power against universal freedom. It was vehemently opposed as such. The measure

1. William L. Marcy, Secretary of State; James Guthrie, Secretary of the Treasury; Robert McClelland, Secretary of the Interior; Jefferson Davis, Secretary of War; James C. Dobbin, Secretary of the Navy; James Campbell, Postmaster-General; Caleb Cushing, Attorney-General. Mr. Marcy and Mr. Dobbin left office at the close of Pierce's Administration, and both died the ensuing summer.

2. Verse 4, page 233.

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell about Pierce's inauguration and cabinet appointments? 2. For what is his Administration distinguished? What important work was done? 2. What have you to say about the opening of Congress in 1853? What measure disturbed their harmony, and revived slavery agitation?

was carried through, and the Missouri Compromise was virtually repealed.

4. Two years later, when the Territory of Kansas was organized, the friends of freedom and slavery there, contended for the mastery. Civil war ensued, but when the Presidential election came on in 1856, it quieted the storm for the time. Meanwhile, the "fillibustering" movements led to a conference of American ministers in Europe, at Ostend, who issued a paper known as the *Ostend Manifesto*, which was highly discreditable to the American character, for it was a plea for the abominable doctrine that "might makes right."[1]

www.mtool.com.cn

OCEAN STEAMSHIP.

5. Little else that is remarkable distinguished the Administration of Pierce, excepting the effort to connect America and Europe by telegraphic wires, beneath the waters of the Atlantic ocean, made under the auspices of the Governments of the United States and Great Britain. The effort was successful, when the bond was immediately broken.[2] At this time [1858], James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania, was President, having been elected in the autumn of 1856, over two rival candidates.[3] John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky, was elected Vice-President.

1. The ministers were Messrs. Buchanan, in England, Mason, in France, and Soulé in Spain. Ostend is in Belgium. Their conference was professedly to consider the serious misunderstanding between the United States and Spain, on account of the attempts of adventurers to seize Cuba. In that "manifesto" they said: "If Spain, actuated by stubborn pride and a false sense of honor, should refuse to sell Cuba to the United States, then, by every law, human and divine, we [United States] *shall be justified in wresting it from Spain, if we possess the power!*"

2. The insulated cable, composed of many wires, was stretched from Trinity bay, Newfoundland, to Valentia bay in Ireland, a distance of 1,600 miles. It was successfully laid between these places on the 5th of August, 1858, and on the 16th a message was sent from the Queen of England to the President of the United States, and a reply returned by him. Only one more message passed perfectly, when the cable was severed.

3. James Buchanan was nominated by the "Democratic" party, John C. Fremont by the "Republican" party, and Millard Fillmore by the "Know Nothing" or "American" party.

QUESTIONS.—4. What occurred in Kansas? What have you to say about Civil War and the presidential election? What about the "Ostend Manifesto"? 5. What else distinguished the Administration of Pierce? What have you to say about the "Atlantic Cable"?

SECTION XV.

BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION [1857–1861].

BUCHANAN, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

1. James Buchanan took the oath of office on the 4th of March, 1857, and two days afterward the Senate confirmed his nominations for cabinet officers.[1] The "slavery agitation" was aroused at the beginning of his Administration by the decision of the Chief-Justice of the United States [March 6, 1857], that a freed negro slave, or the descendant of a slave, could not become a *citizen* of the Republic—a decision which affected almost every man of African descent in the United States.[2]

2. This decision provoked much feeling and wide discussion. The President and the "Democratic" party agreed with the Chief-Justice (Taney); but in 1862, the National Government, in accordance with the decision of the Attorney-General, made a practical reversal of this judgment, by granting a passport to a negro to travel abroad, in which he was called "a *citizen* of the United States." The agitation caused by Judge Taney's decision

1. Lewis Cass, Secretary of State; Howell Cobb, Secretary of the Treasury; John B. Floyd, Secretary of War; Isaac Toucey, Secretary of the Navy; Jacob Thompson, Secretary of the Interior; Aaron V. Brown, Postmaster-General; and Jeremiah S. Black, Attorney-General.

2. This decision was in the case of Dred Scott, who had been a slave in Missouri, but claimed to be a freeman on account of an involuntary residence in a Free State. The Chief-Justice asserted that the fathers did not include the negro in the Declaration of Independence, and that they were regarded "as so far inferior that they had no rights which the white man was bound to respect."

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell about Buchanan's inauguration and cabinet appointments? What aroused the slavery agitation? 2. What followed the decision of the Chief-Justice? How was that decision reversed?

continued, in a violent form, throughout Buchanan's Administration.

3. Civil war again became imminent in Kansas. The President sided with the Slave Power, but the opponents of that Power, aided by Congress, succeeded in bringing Kansas into the Union as a Free State [January 30, 1860], and the controversy ceased.[1] Not so the "slavery agitation." That increased in intensity. The Fugitive Slave Act of 1850[2] was offensive to a large majority of the people of the Free States; and as it was evident that measures were perfecting to nationalize the system of slavery, it was opposed by legislative enactments, called "Personal Liberty Bills,"[3] and otherwise, most vehemently.

4. The excitement became intense in both sections of the Union; and the Slave Power was naturally maddened, in the autumn of 1859, by a foolish attempt of an enthusiast, named John Brown, to liberate the slaves of Virginia. He and a few followers seized the arsenal at Harper's Ferry, in the autumn of 1859 [October 16], but were overpowered by National and State troops. Brown was tried [October 29] and hung [December 2] by the authorities of Virginia. The politicians of the Slave States declared it to be the act of the people of the Free States,[4] and the alarm and exasperation in the former became intense. It continued to increase in volume until the next year [1860], when, in the autumn, Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois, an opponent of the system of slavery, was elected President of the United States, with Hannibal Hamlin, of Maine, as Vice-President. Buchanan retired to private life on the 4th of March, 1861.[5]

1. Two other States were admitted to the Union during Buchanan's Administration, namely *Minnesota*, in 1858, and *Oregon*, in 1859. The admission of Kansas was followed by the organization of the Territories of Nevada, Colorado, and Dakotah.

2. Note 3, page 255.

3. None of these assumed a position of a violation of the Fugitive Slave Act, which all were bound to obey so long as it was law; but they were intended as guardians of the natural rights of the fugitive, and to prevent the kidnapping of free negroes.

4. A committee of the United States Senate, with Mr. Mason (a conspirator in 1860) at its head, was appointed to investigate the matter, when it was proven that John Brown had no confederates or confidants in the Free States, other than those who were his immediate followers, and these did not exceed twenty in number.

5. During the year 1860, the crown prince of Great Britain, and embassadors from the empire of Japan, visited the United States. Such events never occurred before.

QUESTIONS.—3. What have you to say about Kansas? What about slavery agitation? 4. What can you tell about excitements on the subject of slavery? What about John Brown's attempt to release the Virginia slaves, and its result? What can you tell about the Presidential election in 1860?

SECTION XVI.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION [1861–1865].

LINCOLN, AND HIS RESIDENCE.

1. The oath of office was administered to Mr. Lincoln by Chief-Justice Taney on the 4th of March, 1861. He had been elected over three rival candidates[1] by a constitutional majority, in the regular way. The political leaders of the great proprietors or small ruling class in the Slave States, professing to regard Mr. Lincoln as the representative of the Abolitionists, who, for years, they alleged, had been trying to deprive them of their rights and property, and by whom these "fanatics," as they called them, now expected to accomplish the destruction of slavery, would not accept him. Making his election and its alleged menaces a pretext,[2] they at once adopted measures for seizing or destroying the Government, pleading the "right of revolution," and the law of self-preservation, in justification of their acts.

2. South Carolinians (as in 1832)[3] took the lead in rebellion. The politicians of that State, in convention at Charleston, declared

1. The wedge of slavery split the "Democratic" party at their convention in Charleston, in April, 1860. One wing of the party nominated John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky, and the other wing chose Stephen A. Douglas, of Illinois. A new organization, calling themselves the *Constitutional Union Party*, nominated John Bell, of Tennessee.

2. President Jackson, as we have seen (note 5, page 238), predicted that the politicians of the cotton-producing States would make the subject of slavery their next pretext for endeavoring to destroy the Union.

3. Verse 5, page 238.

QUESTIONS.—1. What have you to say about Lincoln's election? How did the ruling class in the Slave States act?

So-called "secession of States" from the Union. A confederacy of politicians.

[December 20, 1860] that commonwealth to be withdrawn from the Union forever. Similar action immediately followed in six other of the more southern Slave States;[1] and, on the 4th of February, 1861, a "Southern Confederacy" was formed at Montgomery, Alabama, by delegates from six States, with the title of CONFEDERATE STATES OF AMERICA.[2] Five days afterward, the Montgomery "Congress" chose Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, President of the "Confederation."[3] It was wholly the act of *politicians*, for no ordinance of secession, nor the question of a Confederacy, was ever submitted to the judgment or decision of the *people*."[4] The conspirators seized

JEFFERSON DAVIS.

1. Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas.

2. This name does not express the truth. No States, *as States*, had withdrawn from the Union, for the *people*, who compose a State in our Republic, had never been asked to sanction such change. Only certain persons in certain States were in rebellion against the national authority. They usurped the power and suspended the Constitutions of several of the States; but the confederation formed at Montgomery was only a band of *confederate rebels*, not of States. With this qualification, the name of Confederate may properly be given to the insurgents, and in the sense of that qualification it is used in the text. Secession ordinances were passed in conventions in eleven Slave States in the following order: *South Carolina*, December 20, 1860; *Mississippi*, January 8, 1861; *Florida*, January 10; *Alabama*, January 11; *Georgia*, January 19; *Louisiana*, January 26; *Texas*, February 1; *Virginia*, April 25; *Arkansas*, May 6; *North Carolina*, May 30; *Tennessee*, June 8.

3. The "Congress" at Montgomery adopted a provisional constitution. This was superseded a month later by a "permanent" one, and, by the votes of electors chosen in eleven States, Davis was elected President for six years, from the 22d of February, 1862.

4. The case of Arkansas is an example of the method of secession. The conspirators, by means of a secret organization known as *Knights of the Golden Circle*, procured the election of a disloyal legislature and governor, who called a convention to vote on secession. That convention voted for Union by a majority of over two-thirds. The foiled conspirators, by false promises, gained the consent of the Unionists to an adjournment subject to the call of the president, who pretended to be a loyal man, but was really one of the traitors. It was agreed to refer the question back to the people, and that the convention should not reassemble before the vote should be taken, in August. The president, in violation of that pledge, called the convention in May, soon after Fort Sumter was taken. The hall in which the members met was filled by an excited crowd. When the roll had been called, a conspirator offered an ordinance of secession, and moved that the "yeas" and "nays" on the question should be taken *without debate*. The president fraudulently declared the motion carried; and when the vote on the ordinance was taken, and it was found that there was a majority against it, he arose, and in the midst of cheers and threats of the mob, urged the Unionists to change their votes to "aye" immediately. It was evident that the mob were prepared to execute their threats, and the terrified Unionists complied. There was one exception. His name was Murphy. He was compelled to fly for his life. He is now [1864] the Union governor of the State. Thus, by fraud and violence, Arkansas was placed in the position of a rebellious State. The conspirators at once commenced a system of terrorism. Unionists were murdered, imprisoned, and exiled. Confederate troops from Texas and Louisiana were brought into the State, and Arkansas troops, raised chiefly by fraud and violence, were sent out of the State. The voice of opposition was silenced; and the usurpers, with their feet on the necks of the people, proclaimed the *unanimity of the inhabitants of Arkansas in favor of disunion!*

QUESTIONS.—2. What did South Carolinians do? What was done in other States? What can you tell about a Confederacy?

forts, arsenals, mints, ships, custom-houses, and other Government property; and armies were raised in support of this usurpation, and for the overthrow of the Republic. The President of the United States (Buchanan), paralyzed by fear, or restrained by pledges of complicity, made no serious effort to suppress the rising rebellion—the conspiracy against American nationality.[1]

3. In the midst of these excitements, Mr. Lincoln entered upon the duties of his office, and declared his intention to maintain the supreme authority of the National Government. The Senate, relieved of most of the conspirators, confirmed his cabinet appointments.[2] He found the offices swarming with disloyal men, and proceeded to purge them. Meanwhile, thousands of armed insurgents had assembled, under P. G. T. Beauregard, at Charleston. They had already fired [January 9, 1861] on a Government vessel (*Star of the West*), when making her way, with reënforce-

FORT SUMTER.

ments and food, to Fort Sumter; and they demanded the surrender of that fort. Its commander (Major Robert Anderson) refused, and on the 12th of April [1861] it was furiously bombarded. Its

1. On the 4th of February, 1861, there was an assemblage at Washington city of delegates from several States, which was called the *Peace Convention*. It was called on the recommendation of the Legislature of Virginia, for the professed object of settling all difficulties and preserving the Union. John Tyler, of Virginia, one of the conspirators, was chosen president. After a session of three weeks, it closed. Their action was not approved by Congress.

2. William H. Seward, Secretary of State; Salmon P. Chase, Secretary of the Treasury; Simon Cameron, Secretary of War; Gideon Welles, Secretary of the Navy; Caleb Smith, Secretary of the Interior; Montgomery Blair, Postmaster-General; Edward Bates, Attorney-General. Edwin M. Stanton succeeded Mr. Cameron in January, 1862. John P. Usher succeeded Mr. Smith (deceased) the same year; and at the beginning of July, 1864, Mr. Chase, having resigned his office, was succeeded by William Pitt Fessenden, a member of the Senate of the United States.

QUESTIONS.—2. What did conspirators do? What did President Buchanan fail to do? 3. What have you to say about Lincoln's entrance upon the duties of his office? What did he find? What had armed insurgents done?

interior was set in flames, and Anderson was compelled to evacuate it. It was never surrendered.[1]

4. The Confederates had intended to follow up this first blow by seizing the National capital. It was saved by the loyal people. The President called [April 15] for seventy-five thousand men, from the militia of the country, to serve for three months in putting down the insurrection.[2] The response in men and money was wonderful. Within thirty days, almost two hundred thousand citizens were ready to fight under the old flag for the life of the Republic. Then commenced a conflict which, in numbers engaged, territorial extent of operations, and destructive engines used, has no parallel in history. We will now consider some of the prominent events in

THE GREAT CIVIL WAR [1861].

5. The National army, at the beginning of the war, consisted of only about sixteen thousand men; and the navy was composed of only ninety vessels of all classes, carrying about twenty-four hundred guns, and seven thousand men. The land troops were mostly on the extreme Western frontier, professedly to check the Indians;[3] and the naval force was in distant seas. Only one steamship (*Brooklyn*),[4] of twenty-five guns, and a relief ship, of two guns, were available for the defense of the whole Atlantic coast of the United States. The late Secretary of War[5] had

1. Anderson had only three days' provisions left, and would have been compelled to surrender, if he had not been attacked. This the insurgents knew, but they hoped to "fire the Southern heart" against the Government, by bloodshed, and so they made haste to begin war. Fort Monroe and Fort Pickens were the only military works of great importance, excepting the one on the Dry Tortugas, at the southern extremity of Florida, that now remained in possession of the United States southward of the National capital. Fort Pickens had been saved by the prudence and valor of its commander, Lieutenant Slemmer.

2. The governors of several of the border Slave States refused to respond favorably to the call, and the Free States alone contributed the means for saving the Republic from instant assassination. There were thousands of true men in the Slave States, anxious to support the old flag, but they were generally restrained by their rulers.

3. In February, 1861, General Twiggs, commanding the Department of Texas, and having under him nearly one-half of the military force of the United States, surrendered them to the "authorities of Texas," one of the States professedly withdrawn from the Union, with public property valued at $1,250,000.

4. Her draught was too great, excepting at very high tides, to enter the harbor of Charleston, where it had been arranged for the war to begin.

5. John B. Floyd.

QUESTIONS.—4. What had the Confederates intended to do? What did the President do? What can you tell of the action of the people, and the beginning of war? 5. What can you tell about the National army and navy? What had late cabinet officers done to weaken the power of the Government?

transferred most of the arms from the forts and arsenals in the Free States to those of the Slave States;[1] and the late Secretary of the Treasury[2] had, months before, deliberately attempted to injure the public credit and bankrupt the Treasury. Thus, it will be seen, the conspirators had put far away from the immediate control of the Government every implement that might be used for its defense and protection.

6. The magnitude of the rebellion was soon perceived. The National capital was in great danger. It was surrounded by resident enemies. Troops, on their way for its defense, had been assailed and murdered.[3] The navy yard at Norfolk and the armory at Harper's Ferry were in the hands of the insurgents,[4] and armed men from the Gulf States were pouring into Virginia, for the purpose of seizing Washington city. In view of great and impending danger, the President, on the 3rd of May [1861], called for over sixty-four thousand more troops, to serve "during the war," and eighteen thousand men for the navy. Forts Monroe and Pickens were reënforced, and the blockade of the Southern ports was proclaimed.

7. The President had summoned [April 15] the Congress to meet on the 4th of July. When they assembled, there were two hundred and thirty thousand troops in the field under the old flag, independent of the three-months' men. The Congress authorized

1. The defensive fortifications within the "seceded States" were about thirty in number, mounting over 3,000 guns, and having cost at least $20,000,000. These had nearly all been seized before the close of Buchanan's Administration, excepting Forts Monroe, Sumter, Pickens (gallantly held by Lieutenant Slemmer), and those on Key West and the Tortugas off the Florida coast. It is estimated that the value of National property seized by the "conspirators" previous to the 4th of March, 1861, was at least $30,000,000.

2. Howell Cobb, afterward a general in the Confederate army.

3. While the 6th Massachusetts and 7th Pennsylvania volunteers were passing through Baltimore, on the 19th of April, 1861, they were attacked by a mob. Two men were killed, and eight were wounded. One of the latter afterward died. Nine of the mob were killed, and three wounded.

4. On the 17th of April, Governor Letcher, of Virginia, ordered the entrance to Norfolk harbor to be obstructed by the sinking of vessels, and on that day issued a proclamation recognizing the independence of the "Confederacy," and ordering Virginia troops to hold themselves in readiness to act in its defense. On that day a minority of the Virginia convention voted for the secession of that State, and the usurpers proclaimed the ordinance adopted. On the 18th of April, Lieutenant Jones, hearing of the approach of Virginia troops to Harper's Ferry, destroyed the armory, and greatly injured its contents, by fire, to prevent its falling into the hands of the insurgents. The Virginians took possession that night.

QUESTIONS.—6. What have you to say about the magnitude of the rebellion, and the perils of the National capital? What had occurred? What did the President do? 7. What can you tell about the meeting of Congress, and troops in the field? What did Congress do? What had the people done?

[July 10] the raising of five hundred thousand men, and appropriated five hundred millions of dollars to defray the expenses of the kindling war. In the mean time, towns, villages, cities, and States had made contributions of money for the public service, to the amount of almost fifty millions of dollars. Party spirit disappeared for the moment, and the people in the Free States were united in efforts to save the life of the Republic.

8. The veteran Scott,[1] general-in-chief of the armies of the Republic, gathered a greater portion of the troops eastward of the Alleghany mountains, at or near Washington city, for the defense of the capital; while the Confederate troops, estimated at more than one hundred thousand in number, occupied an irregular line from Harper's Ferry, by way of Richmond, to Norfolk. Their heaviest force was at Manassas Junction, within about thirty miles of Washington city, and there, very soon, the first heavy shock of war was felt. Montgomery was soon abandoned as the headquarters of the conspirators, and Richmond was established as such on the 20th of July, 1861.

9. The first invasion of a State in which rebellion existed, occurred on the 24th of May [1861], when National troops crossed the Potomac and seized Alexandria, and Arlington Heights opposite Washington city.[2] Already [May 10], Captain (afterward brigadier-general) Lyon had captured a "Confederate" camp near St. Louis, and, taking possession of the arsenal there, saved Missouri from actual secession. The theatre of the opening war rapidly widened, and by the first of June the whole country was in commotion from Maine to Texas.

10. On the 10th of June a severe battle occurred at Big Bethel, in South-eastern Virginia, in which the National troops were repulsed. This misfortune was atoned for the next day [June 11], when Colonel (afterward major-general) Lewis Wallace, with a few

1. Verse 6, page 243.

2. On the previous day, a Confederate flag displayed at Alexandria attracted attention. William McSpedon, of New York city, and Samuel Smith, of Queens county, N. Y., went over from Washington and captured it. This was the *first flag taken from the insurgents.*

QUESTIONS.—8. What did General Scott do? What can you tell about the Confederate forces? What about the headquarters of the conspirators? 9. What can you tell about the first invasion of a State in which rebellion was seen? What important event occurred at St. Louis? What was the effect? What was the state of the country?

Indiana troops, dispersed five hundred Confederates at Romney, in Virginia. Twenty-one days later [July 2], General Patterson, with a considerable force, crossed the Potomac and entered the Shenandoah valley, in Virginia. At the same time, National troops were advancing in Western Virginia, under General George B. McClellan; and on the 11th of July a severe engagement occurred at Rich mountain, in which the Nationals were successful.

www.imipool.com.cn

11. On the 18th of July, the National army, under General Irvin McDowell, marched from Fairfax Court House, in Virginia, to attack the Confederates at Manassas.[1] A severe fight occurred near Centreville. From that point the army moved forward on the 21st, and at Bull Run a very heavy battle was fought. The Confederates were commanded by Beauregard,[2] assisted by able generals. At a moment when they were about to give way, they received reënforcements from the Shenandoah valley. The National troops were utterly defeated and routed, with a loss of about three thousand men. The army fled back toward Washington city in the wildest confusion. On the following day, General McClellan was called to the command of the *Army of the Potomac*, as the forces around Washington were named.

GENERAL M'CLELLAN.

12. The disaster at Bull Run stimulated the loyal people to greater exertions, and volunteers flocked to the army in large numbers. There was an anxious desire for the capture of Richmond, the Confederate capital, distant from Washington about one hundred and thirty miles; but the *Army of the Potomac* did not move in that direction again until the next spring. The au-

1. Verse 8, page 267. 2. Verse 3, page 264.

QUESTIONS.—10. What can you tell of the battles at Big Bethel and Romney? What did General Patterson do? What occurred in Western Virginia? 11. What can you tell of events near Centreville, and the battle at Bull Run? What were the results? Who was called to the command of the Army of the Potomac? 12. How did the disaster at Bull Run affect the loyal people? What was their desire? What can you say about the Army of the Potomac?

tumn of 1861, and the following winter, were spent in preparations for an advance.[1]

13. In the mean time, the war was progressing elsewhere. There was a fierce struggle in Missouri for the control of that State. On the 5th of July a severe engagement took place near Carthage, between the Nationals, under Colonel (afterward major-general) Sigel, and Confederates, under Jackson, the disloyal Governor of Missouri. On the 2d of August, General Lyon fought the Confederates, under General Ben McCullough, at Day Spring, near the Arkansas border; and he lost his life while gallantly fighting a still more severe battle at Wilson's creek, on the 10th.

14. A considerable navy was created by the close of summer, composed chiefly of purchased vessels, which were changed into ships of war. A military and naval expedition, under General B. F. Butler and Commodore Stringham, captured the fortifications at Hatteras inlet, off the coast of North Carolina, on the 29th of August. It was an important victory, and led to others more important.

15. Early in September, General W. S. Rosecrans defeated the Confederate General Floyd [2] at Carnifex Ferry (Gauley river), in Western Virginia; and, ten days afterward [September 20], Lexington, Missouri, was surrendered, with a body of National troops, to General Price, of the Confederate army. It was retaken [October 16] by Major White, at the head of National cavalry.

16. On the 31st of October, General Stone's troops were badly beaten at Ball's Bluff, on the Upper Potomac, by Confederates under General Evans; and, a week later [November 7], the insurgents gained a victory over troops under General Ulysses S. Grant, at Belmont, Missouri, on the east bank of the Mississippi river. On the same day [November 7], the forts at Port

1. On the 31st of October, General Scott resigned his post at the head of the armies of the Republic, on account of physical infirmities. On his recommendation, General McClellan was appointed general-in-chief of the armies of the United States.

2. Secretary of War under President Buchanan. See verse 5, page 265. He died at Abingdon, Virginia, in August, 1863.

QUESTIONS.—13. What can you tell of the war elsewhere? What occurred in Missouri, and what have you to say of Sigel and Lyon? 14. What can you tell about the navy? Give an account of a military and naval expedition. 15. What did Rosecrans do in Western Virginia? What can you tell about events at Lexington, Missouri? 16. What can you tell about a battle at Ball's Bluff and Belmont? What can you tell about an expedition to Port Royal?

Royal entrance, on the Atlantic, hundreds of miles east of the Mississippi, were captured by the National navy, under Admiral Du Pont. This victory led to the permanent occupation, by Government troops, of the Sea islands along the South Carolina coast, so famous for the production of fine cotton.

17. We have mentioned only the most important warlike movements in 1861. There were a thousand others in a thousand places, for the line along which were disputes and conflicts was full two thousand miles in length, from the Susquehanna to the Rio Grande. There were struggles everywhere—in Maryland, Virginia, Kentucky, Missouri, Arkansas, Texas, on the rivers, and along three thousand miles of sea-coast, where blockading squadrons were rapidly closing up ports useful to the Confederates.

18. Our foreign relations were unpleasant. England declared her neutrality at the beginning,[1] and called the confederate rebels a "belligerent nation." Her ruling class, and that of most other European countries, sympathized with the Confederates; and the latter rightfully cherished such strong hopes of speedy recognition and aid from France and England, at least, that they were encouraged to persevere. At the close of 1861 their hopes were blasted, for the circumstance known as "the Trent affair" had led to action between the United States and Great Britain which promised peaceful relations.[2] From that time forward, the Governments of Europe seemed less and less inclined to interfere in the hot quarrel.

1. By proclamation of the Queen, dated 13th of May, 1861.

2. On the 7th of November, 1861, Captain Wilkes, U. S. N., in command of the steam sloop-of-war *San Jacinto*, overhauled the English mail steamer *Trent*, in the Bahama channel, and took from her James M. Mason and John Slidell, who were proceeding to Europe as commissioners of the "Confederates." They had been arch conspirators in the United States Senate. Wilkes brought them to the United States, and they were placed in Fort Warren, at Boston. The act was contrary to the American doctrine of the sanctity of a neutral vessel, and our Government promptly disavowed the act, and Mason and Slidell were sent on board an English vessel (*Rinaldo*) bound for Europe, on the 2d of January, 1861. Not expecting such an exhibition of national honor, the British Government had demanded the surrender of the commissioners and prepared for war. It was a shameful exhibition, which the English *people* speedily rebuked. That people have ever since curbed the desires of the Government and the ruling classes to aid the insurgents.

Questions.—17. What have you to say about war movements, and their extent? 18. What can you say about our foreign relations? What did England do? What can you say about foreign sympathy for the rebels? How were their hopes of aid blasted?

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

THE GREAT CIVIL WAR, CONTINUED [1862].

19. On the 19th of January [1862], the National troops, under General George H. Thomas, won an important victory over the enemy, under General Crittenden, in Somerset, Kentucky. The conflict is sometimes called the battle of Mill Spring.[1] A few days before [January 11, 1862], a heavy land and naval expedition, under General A. E. Burnside and Commodore Goldsborough, left Fortress Monroe. They passed through Hatteras inlet[2] on the 26th, and on the 8th of February, after a severe fight, captured Roanoke island, and over twenty-five hundred Confederates, with thirty-five hundred small arms. This victory gave the Nationals control over that region, and imperiled Norfolk.

20. A still more important victory was won by the Nationals on the 16th of February [1862], in the capture of Fort Donelson, near Dover, on the Cumberland river, in Tennessee, with over thirteen thousand prisoners, three thousand horses, sixty-two cannon, and twenty thousand small arms. The Nationals were commanded by General Grant, and the Confederates by General Buckner, at the time of the surrender.[3] This victory, in the accomplishment of which a flotilla of gun-boats, under Commodore A. H. Foote, bore a conspicuous part, opened the way to Nashville and the conquest of Western Tennessee, and caused the insurgents to abandon Kentucky.

21. Early in March, the National forces, under General S. R. Curtis, fought and conquered the Confederates, under General Van Dorn, at Pea Ridge, a portion of the Ozark mountains, in Arkansas.[4] The victory was won on the 8th, after a struggle of

1. The "Confederates" lost nearly 400 men, 1,200 horses, several cannon, 1,000 muskets, and other valuable property. General Zollicoffer, formerly a member of the National Congress, was killed.

2. Verse 14, page 269.

3. The siege commenced on the 13th, when the garrison, 18,000 strong, were under the command of Generals Pillow and Floyd. Grant's force was about 40,000 strong. His loss was over 2,000.

4. Van Dorn was assisted by Price and McCullough. The latter was killed.

QUESTIONS.—19. What can you tell about the battle at Mill Spring? What can you tell of the operations of a land and naval force at Roanoke island? 20. What can you tell about the capture of Fort Donelson? What were its effects?

three days, and the Confederates were dispersed. On the same day [March 8, 1862], the iron-clad "ram" *Merrimac*,[1] went down from Norfolk, sunk the frigates *Cumberland* and *Congress* in the mouth of the James river, and threatened the destruction of the National fleet in Hampton Roads. That night a newly invented floating battery, named the *Monitor*,[2] commanded by Lieutenant John H. Worden, arrived, attacked the *Merrimac* the next morning [March 9], drove her back to Norfolk disabled, and held command of Hampton Roads.

THE MONITOR.

www.libtool.com.cn

22. The President ordered [January 27] a general movement of the land and naval forces on the 22d of February.[3] When the Army of the Potomac advanced, the Confederates at Manassas fled [March 10] toward Richmond, and General McClellan prepared to approach that city by way of the Peninsula. On the 23d, National troops, under General Shields, gained a victory over the Confederates near Winchester, in Virginia. Already Newbern, in North Carolina, had been captured by Burnside [March 14]; and Grant's victorious army were preparing to ascend the Tennessee toward the heart of the rebellion. Early in April it was at Pittsburg landing, and on the 6th, while encamped near Shiloh Church, it was attacked by a large force of Confederates, under Beauregard and A. S. Johnston. Victory was with the assailants that night, but, after a desperate struggle the next day [April 7], it was won by the Nationals, and the Confederates fled

1. The *Merrimac* was a common steam frigate. The Confederates plated her with iron, and affixed to her bow an extension of iron with which she might push terribly. It was sharp, and could scarcely fail to destroy an ordinary vessel.

2. Invented by Captain J. Ericsson, a native of Sweden. This vessel was afterward foundered at sea, in a storm, while on her way to the Southern coast. Many vessels of her class, but improved, were afterward built for the Government.

3. At that time there were four distinct armies, namely, one at Fortress Monroe, the Army of the Potomac, the Army of Western Virginia, and the army near Mumfordsville, Kentucky. There was also an army and flotilla at Cairo, and a naval force in the gulf of Mexico.

QUESTIONS.—21. What can you tell about the battle of Pea Ridge, in Arkansas? What can you tell about the *Merrimac* and her doings? What about the *Monitor*? 22. What order did the President issue? What can you tell about the movements of the Army of the Potomac? What was done in North Carolina? What can you tell of Grant's army? What did it do at Shiloh? What can you tell about Island No. 10?

toward Corinth, in Mississippi.[1] On the same day, the important post of Island No. 10, in the Mississippi river, was surrendered to the National troops.[2] A fleet of gun-boats, under Commodore Foote, was chiefly instrumental in achieving this victory.

COMMODORE FOOTE.

23. On the 11th of April, Fort Pulaski, at the mouth of the Savannah river, was surrendered to Captain (afterward major-general) Q. A. Gillmore; and, on the same day, General O. M. Mitchell, after an extraordinary forced march from Kentucky through Tennessee, captured Huntsville, in Northern Alabama. Seven days afterward [April 18], General Augur drove the Confederates out of Fredericksburg, in Virginia, and took possession.

24. On the 28th of April, New Orleans was taken possession of by the National forces. Commodores D. G. Farragut and D. D. Porter, with a gun-boat and mortar fleet,[3] had bombarded Forts Jackson and St. Philip, below the city, for six days, when they ran by them [April 24] and passed up the river.[4] When they approached New Orleans, the Confederates set shipping and cotton on fire at the levees, and destroyed property to the amount of three millions of dollars. The Confederate troops, under General Lovell, twenty thousand strong, fled, and General Butler, with troops from Ship island, took possession of the city.

1. The Nationals lost during the two days over 13,000 men in killed, wounded, and prisoners. The Confederates left 8,000 dead on the field. This is known as the battle of Shiloh.

2. This was a very important victory. The attack and bombardment had continued daily for twenty-three days, by Commodore Foote. The works, consisting of nine batteries, were very strong. The total number of guns captured was seventy. The total loss to the Confederates was about $378,000. The operations on the land, at the same time, were carried on by General Pope. Commodore Foote was wounded in the ankle at Fort Donelson (verse 20, page 271), but remained in service until the conclusion of the affair at Island No. 10, when he was compelled to leave on account of the painfulness of his unhealed wound. The command of the fleet devolved upon Captain Davis. In June, 1863, while preparing to take command of the South Atlantic squadron, Foote died at the Astor House, in New York.

3. The combined Union fleet was comprised of two flag-ships, seven steam sloops-of-war, fourteen gun-boats, one sailing schooner, twenty-one mortar schooners, and six tow-boats and steamers; in all fifty-one, with two hundred and eighty-six guns.

4. When they rushed by the forts, Confederate rams, gun-boats, floating batteries, fire-ships, and rafts attacked them. A most destructive naval engagement ensued, in which the Nationals lost thirteen gun-boats and three transports.

QUESTIONS.—23. What can you tell about Fort Pulaski? What about Mitchell's expedition? What did General Augur do? 24. What can you tell about the capture of New Orleans?

Confederates, with eleven thousand men and all its vast munitions of war.

30. On the 17th of September a great battle was fought near the Antietam creek (which name it bears), in Maryland, between the forces of McClellan and Lee. The latter was defeated, with a loss of twenty thousand men, and then fell back to the Potomac, which they slowly crossed, and retired toward Richmond, without being pursued. Three weeks afterward, a Confederate cavalry force made a sweeping raid around the entire National army, carrying away one thousand horses, and destroying property to the amount of sixty thousand dollars.

GENERAL LEE.

31. A portion of the Army of the Potomac, under Burnside,[1] crossed into Virginia on the 27th of October, and moved southward along the eastern base of the Blue Ridge. McClellan and the remainder crossed the Potomac on the 31st; and on the 5th of November he was relieved of the command and succeeded by Burnside. The latter led the army slowly forward, and appeared on the Rappahannock, opposite Fredericksburg, on the 17th. He attempted the capture of that city and the Confederate works beyond, on the 13th of December, but was repulsed with a loss of nearly eight thousand men. He withdrew across the river, and there the army remained until near the close of the following April.

32. While the events just related were occurring eastward of the Alleghany mountains, very important events were transpiring westward of them. We have already considered some of these.[2] The last one mentioned was that of Shiloh, on the 6th and 7th of April, 1862. All summer long the Confederates tried to regain

1. Verse 19, page 271.

2. The capture of Fort Donelson, February 16; battle of Pea Ridge, March 8; battle of Shiloh, April 7–8; the surrender of Island No. 10, April 7; surrender of Fort Pulaski, April 11; capture of Huntsville, April 18, and the capture of New Orleans, April 28.

QUESTIONS.—30. What can you tell about the battle at Antietam creek? What followed? What can you tell about a raid? 31. What have you to say about the movements of the Potomac army into Virginia? What change in commanders occurred? What did Burnside do? What occurred at Fredericksburg?

what they had lost in Kentucky and Tennessee. They unsuccessfully attacked Fort Donelson [August 25], and then invaded Eastern Kentucky in considerable force. They defeated the National troops, under General Nelson, at Richmond, Kentucky [August 29–30], and then pushed rapidly toward the Ohio, to seize, plunder, and destroy Cincinnati. Their design was frustrated by General Wallace,[1] and they fled southward. General Bragg (Confederate) invaded the more western portion of Kentucky, at about the same time, and penetrated almost to Louisville, at the close of September, watched and foiled by General D. C. Buell, with National troops. Soon after a severe fight near Perryville, with Rousseau and others, Bragg was compelled to retreat southward.

33. General Halleck[2] besieged Corinth, and drove out the Confederates on the 26th of May. Little else of importance occurred in that region until September. The naval vessels, under Farragut, Davis, and others, on the Mississippi, were not idle meanwhile. Farragut captured Natchez on the 12th of May; and on the 6th of June, Memphis was surrendered to Flag-officer Davis, after a severe naval engagement. Other movements, tending to the final opening of the Mississippi, took place. Finally, General Rosecrans, with a National force, fought and dispersed [September 19] the Confederates, under Price, at Iuka, in Mississippi. Early in October, there were severe battles in the vicinity of Corinth, which resulted in favor of the Nationals, and the partial rescue of all West Tennessee from the insurgents.

34. During the season, there had been National successes in Texas. Pensacola, on the gulf of Mexico, had been taken possession of; and over many places on the Lower Mississippi river, the flag of the Republic was floating. The last days of the year were signalized by some severe struggles. On the 27th of December, General W. T. Sherman attempted to capture Vicksburg, on

1. Verse 10, page 267. 2. Note 3, page 275.

Questions.—32. What have you to say of affairs westward of the Alleghany mountains? What did the rebels do? Give an account of the invasions of Kentucky. 33. What did General Halleck do? What was done on the Mississippi river? What did General Rosecrans do? 34. What can you tell about National successes? What did General Sherman attempt to do? What can you tell about a battle near Murfreesboro'?

the Mississippi, but was repulsed, after severe fighting. At Murfreesboro', in Tennessee, General Rosecrans had a terrible conflict with the Confederates, beginning on the 29th of December [1862], and ending on the 4th of January, 1863. Rosecrans was victorious, but at the cost of almost twelve thousand men.

35. While military and naval contests were waging during 1862, the National Government was devising and executing measures for the suppression of the great insurrection. Congress made ample provisions for money and men, the latter by draft, if not otherwise obtained. Believing that a heavy blow at slavery had become a military necessity, they authorized the President to proclaim the emancipation of the slaves.[1] He did not do so immediately; but, by proclamation [September 22, 1862], he assured the Confederates that unless they should lay down their arms within a hundred days, he should issue an edict which would proclaim the freedom of all bondmen in territory wherein rebellion existed.

36. The year [1862] closed gloomily for the National cause. The rebellion was as rampant as ever, and the area of its operations had been very little diminished. Party spirit was diverting the public attention from the great business in hand, namely, the suppression of the insurrection; and menaces of foreign interference were loud and somewhat alarming. The National army, at that time, numbered about seven hundred thousand men, while that of the Confederates was probably larger than at any time before or since.

THE GREAT CIVIL WAR CONTINUED [1863].

37. The Confederates scorned the warning of the President [September 22, 1862], and on the first of January, 1863, he proclaimed forever free all the slaves in Arkansas, Texas, Louisiana,

1. Early in April, slavery was abolished in the District of Columbia, by an act of Congress. It was signed by the President and became law on the 16th of that month. Congress also passed a bill in June, forever prohibiting slavery in the Territories of the Republic. It was signed by the President on the 20th of June.

QUESTIONS.—35. What did the National Government do? What can you tell about measures for the emancipation of slaves? 36. What was the situation of affairs at the close of 1862? What can you say of the two armies?

Mississippi, Alabama, Georgia, Florida, South Carolina, North Carolina, and Virginia, excepting West Virginia and portions of those States that were occupied by the National troops at that time. The friends of the Administration regarded the Proclamation of Emancipation as just, necessary, and efficacious; the opponents of the Administration regarded it as wrong, unnecessary, and futile. It doubtless increased the number and strengthened the faith of the friends of the Republic in Europe.

38. The military movements during 1863 were vast in number and the area of operations.[1] We may take only a general view of them. The different armies and their duties were then so well defined, that we may consider the doings of each separately. That of the *Potomac* was commanded by Burnside.[2] He was relieved on the 25th of January [1863], and was succeeded by General Joseph Hooker. That commander led his army across the Rappahannock toward the end of April, and on the 2d and 3d of May they had a severe contest with Lee in the "Wilderness," which is known as the battle of Chancellorsville. It was indecisive. The National army fell back to the left bank[3] of the Rappahannock on the 5th.

39. Early in June, Lee advanced in full force to the Potomac, and invaded Maryland at the middle of the month.[4] Hooker followed on his right flank to cover Washington and Baltimore; and on the 28th of June he was relieved, and succeeded in com-

1. The Congress, during its session that ended on the 3d of March, 1863, placed the Sword and Purse of the Republic in the hands of the President. The financial resources and the military power of the country were placed at the disposal of the Government. A Conscription Act was passed, and became law on the 3d of March, by which the able-bodied men of the nation might be called to the field, at the discretion of the President. On the 8th of May following he proclaimed his intention to enforce the Conscription Act, and preparations were made throughout the country for a draft. There was much opposition to the measure manifested, and the public mind became much excited. On the day when the draft was to commence in the city of New York [July 13, 1863], a fearful riot broke out there, which continued about three days. The rioters were chiefly of foreign birth, and their violence was mainly directed against the negro population, and persons supposed to be their friends. A colored orphan asylum was burned, and several colored people were murdered. Many lives were lost during the riot, and a vast amount of property was destroyed.

2. Verse 31, page 276.

3. The "right" or "left" bank of a stream is that to the right or left of the observer who, on its surface, is looking toward its mouth.

4. On the 15th of June the President issued a proclamation which announced the invasion, and called for 100,000 militia to oppose it, to serve six months, as follows: from Maryland, 10,000; Pennsylvania, 50,000; West Virginia, 10,000; Ohio, 30,000.

QUESTIONS.—37. What did the Confederates do? What did the President do? How was his act regarded? 38. What have you to say about the military movements during 1863? What can you say about the doings of the Army of the Potomac?

mand by General G. G. Meade. Lee pushed on into Pennsylvania, and at Gettysburg he and Meade struggled desperately for victory from the 1st to the 3d of July. Meade won it on the afternoon of the 3d, and Lee fled toward Virginia. By the middle of August, the Confederates were beyond the Rappahannock. The battle of Gettysburg [July 1, 2, and 3, 1863] was one of the most severe and important of the war.[1]

40. For a long time the two armies confronted each other. In September, Lee sent General Longstreet with reënforcements to the army of Bragg, on the Tennessee and Georgia border; and on the 8th of October he boldly advanced and compelled Meade to fall back to the line of Bull Run, and, after destroying the railway from Manassas[2] to the Rapid Anna,[3] took post behind that stream, near Orange Court House. During these maneuvers there was heavy skirmishing [October 8 to 23], and on the 7th of November, Generals John Sedgwick and W. H. French captured two thousand Confederates at Kelly's ford. The Army of the Potomac then crossed the Rappahannock, and advanced upon the Confederate camp. They skirmished heavily, and then fighting was suspended for a long time.

41. At the close of 1862, the National forces in North Carolina, under General J. G. Foster, were very active in the vicinity of the Neuse, Tar, and Roanoke rivers. In March and April following [1863], they struggled with Confederates under Hill and Pettigrew for the mastery of that region, and succeeded. At the same time, Longstreet, one of the best of Lee's generals, was trying to drive the Nationals from the vicinity of Norfolk.[4]

---

1. The loss of the National forces during this invasion by the Confederates was a little more than 23,000 men. That of the insurgents is not known. It is believed to have been full 30,000 men. Almost 14,000 prisoners, with 3 cannon, 41 standards, and over 28,000 small arms, fell into the hands of the Nationals.
2. Verse 8, page 267.
3. The name of this stream has been generally written, during the war, Rapidan, and occasionally Rapid Ann. Its correct name is Rapid Anna. There are three streams in that portion of Virginia named Anna, namely, North Anna, South Anna, and Rapid Anna.
4. Verse 25, page 274.

QUESTIONS.—39. What can you tell of another invasion of Maryland by the Confederates? What did Hooker do? Who succeeded him in command? What can you tell about the battle of Gettysburg? 40. What have you to say about the two armies? What did Lee do? What did a portion of the Army of the Potomac do? What movement was made by the whole army? 41. What can you tell about movements in North Carolina and Lower Virginia?

He failed; and at the close of the year the latter held a firm grasp upon Eastern North Carolina and Virginia, from the Neuse northward to the Potomac.

www.libtool.com.cn

42. In the Department of the South, the principal operations were near Charleston. Admiral Du Pont attacked Fort Sumter[1] on the 7th of April [1863], with his iron-clad fleet, but was repulsed. It was found necessary to have a coöperating land force. General Gillmore was ordered there for the purpose. He landed, with a competent force, on Morris island, and at once commenced a siege of the works defending Charleston harbor. On the 23d of August, after a terrible bombardment for seven days, Fort Sumter was reduced, it was reported, to a "shapeless and harmless mass of ruins."[2] Shells were afterward thrown into Charleston; and Gillmore, with a waiting fleet of iron-clads, continued the siege the remainder of the year, and longer.

43. In the Department of the Gulf, General N. P. Banks was in command at the close of 1862, with headquarters at New Orleans. He at once commenced operations in Louisiana, west of the Mississippi river; and between January and May he swept victoriously across the wealthy country from New Orleans to Alexandria, on the Red river. He captured two thousand prisoners, twenty-two cannon, several steamboats, and a large amount of public property. Banks returned; went up the Mississippi, and invested Port Hudson, above Baton Rouge. He captured that post on the 8th of July, with over six thousand prisoners, fifty-one cannon, two steamboats, and a large quantity of small arms, ammunition, and stores. He soon afterward sent an expedition by water to Texas; and at the close of the year [1863] the National troops occupied the line of the Rio Grande, from its mouth to Brownsville,[3] opposite Matamoras.

44. General Grant was in command of the Department of Ten-

1. Verse 3, page 264.
2. Not precisely so. It was made "shapeless," but not altogether "harmless." It has maintained a garrison ever since [Sept. 1864], and its guns have given the National forces some hard blows.
3. This place was named in honor of Major Brown, who built a fort there and lost his life in its defense, at the beginning of the war with Mexico. See verse 5, page 247.

QUESTIONS.—42. What was done in the Department of the South? Tell what took place near Charleston. 43. What have you to say about the Department of the Gulf? What did General Banks do? What was effected?

nessee at the close of 1862, and his chief business was the opening of the Mississippi river. Vicksburg, the strongest Confederate post on that river, was considered impregnable by them. Grant commenced movements for its capture, by the destruction of its railway communications. Sherman, as we have seen,[1] unsuccessfully attacked its outworks at the close of December, 1862, when he crossed the Mississippi, went up the Arkansas river, and, with Admiral Porter, captured [January, 1863] Arkansas Post, with five thousand prisoners, seventeen cannon, and a large quantity of small arms and ammunition. This was a severe blow for the insurgents.

45. Grant now took the immediate command of the Army of the Mississippi, in coöperation with the fleet of Admiral Porter.

ADMIRAL PORTER.

He first attempted to cut a new and straight channel for the Mississippi, across a neck, which might leave Vicksburg inland. He failed. Other attempts to pass around the city also failed. He then moved his army down the west side of the Mississippi, while Porter boldly ran by Vicksburg with his fleet, and met Farragut, who had passed Port Hudson, coming up. On the 14th of April, the army recrossed the Mississippi, defeated the Confederates in two battles, not far from Port Gibson, and pushed on rapidly to the rear of Vicksburg.

46. After a series of brilliant and successful battles,[2] Grant, late in May [1863], invested Vicksburg, where General Pember-

1. Verse 34, page 277.

2. Battle of Raymond, May 12; of Jackson, May 14; of Champion Hill, May 16; and of Big Black river bridge, May 17. In order to facilitate Grant's movements and keep reënforcements and supplies from Johnston in his rear, a considerable force of cavalry under Colonel (now general) Grierson was sent to cut the railway communications in Mississippi. This was effectually done. Grierson left La Grange, in South-western Tennessee, and after making a wide circuit with destructive effect, he reached Baton Rouge, Louisiana, on the 2d of May.

QUESTIONS.—44. What have you to say about General Grant and the Mississippi? What did he attempt? What can you tell about Sherman in Arkansas? 45. Give an account of Grant's attempt to take Vicksburg.

ton was in chief command. A severe struggle ensued, for General Johnston was in his rear with a strong Confederate force. Vicksburg at length yielded to starvation and the force of arms. On the 4th of July it was surrendered, with over thirty thousand prisoners,[1] and arms and munitions of war for an army of sixty thousand men; also steamboats, cotton, and other property of immense value. Besides the prisoners, the Confederates lost ten thousand killed and wounded.[2] The fall of Port Hudson followed[3] [July 8], and the Mississippi was speedily opened to commerce. These victories, coincident with that at Gettysburg,[4] produced the liveliest joy among the loyal people of the Republic. The rebellion had received a crushing blow.

47. The capture of Vicksburg, and other successes in the vicinity, enabled Grant to send troops to the aid of General Steele, in Arkansas, and General Banks, in Louisiana. General J. B. McPherson was placed in command at Vicksburg; and, on the 19th of October [1863], Grant was called to the command of the Army of the Cumberland, in place of Rosecrans, who had steadily pursued the Confederates southward, after the severe battle of Murfreesboro', at the close of 1862.[5]

48. After their defeat at Murfreesboro', the Confederates were very active in efforts to destroy Rosecrans's communications with the North, and he was compelled to be very cautious. He remained quiet, but not inactive, until the following summer, when he moved forward [June 25, 1863] vigorously, drove the Confederates, under General Bragg, from their strong position on the Duck river, and, by a series of heavy blows, compelled them to abandon Middle Tennessee, cross the Cumberland mountains, and take position at Chattanooga, which they strongly fortified.

1. These were paroled, when the Confederate Government, in violation of the principles of honor and the usages of war, it is said, placed most of them in their armies again. After that, the Nationals refused to parole any prisoners whom they could hold. They were sent to appointed stations in the Free States, for confinement until exchanged.

2. Grant's loss in the several battles from Port Gibson to the capture of Vicksburg, in killed, wounded, and missing, did not exceed 10,000 men.

3. Verse 43, page 281. 4. Verse 39, page 279. 5. Verse 34, page 277.

QUESTIONS.—46. Give an account of the investment and capture of Vicksburg. What was the result? 47 What was Grant enabled to do? Who took command at Vicksburg? Where was Grant called to? 48. What have you to say about the Confederates after their defeat at Murfreesboro'? What did Rosecrans do? What important movements took place?

49. Rosecrans followed Bragg over the Cumberland mountains at the middle of August, and, by a flank movement, compelled him to march on in the direction of Georgia. Some of the National troops took possession of Chattanooga, while the remainder pressed forward through the passes of the great Lookout and Missionary mountains, to flank the Confederates. Longstreet and his corps, from Lee's army,[1] now reënforced Bragg, who turned suddenly and furiously upon his pursuer [September 19]. They fought until night. The Confederates renewed the battle fiercely in the morning. The conflict was terrible, and disastrous to both parties.[2] The National troops were compelled to fall back to Chattanooga, and seek safety behind the fortifications there. This is known as the Battle of Chickamauga.

50. Rosecrans was in a perilous position. Grant hastened to his relief with reënforcements, and, at the close of October, the Confederates were driven from Lookout mountain and valley, and communication with Chattanooga was restored. Supplies were now moved rapidly to that point. Late in November, General W. T. Sherman, in command of the Department of Tennessee, joined Grant, who attacked the Confederates on the 23d. Then commenced that remarkable and fierce conflict, known as the Battle of Chattanooga. It continued until the 25th, when the Confederates were completely routed and driven into Georgia. Both parties lost heavily.[3]

51. The victory at Chattanooga gave immense advantages to the National cause. The key to the military resources of Alabama and Georgia was thus placed in the hands of the patriots. At the same time, Burnside was struggling for the possession of East Tennessee, and the railway communications with Richmond

1. Verse 40, page 280.

2 The loss of the Nationals in the battles of September 19th and 20th, was 16,351 men, 36 cannon, over 8,000 small arms, and a large amount of munitions of war. The Confederates lost, in killed, wounded, and missing, according to their own statements, about 20,000. Of these, 2,000 were prisoners in the hands of Rosecrans. This conflict occurred on the Chickamauga creek, and is known as the Battle of Chickamauga.

3. The National loss, in killed, wounded, and missing, was about 4,000 men. The Confederate loss is not known. Over 6,000 prisoners, besides the wounded, 42 cannon, about 6,000 small arms, and a large supply-train fell into the hands of the Nationals.

Questions.—49. What did Rosecrans do? What occurred at and near Chattanooga? 50. What have you to say about Rosecrans's position? How was he relieved? What victory and advantages were gained? What can you say about the great battle at Chattanooga? 51. What were the effects of the battle of Chattanooga? What was Burnside doing?

in that direction. He was besieged in Knoxville [November 29] by Longstreet, who went up from Bragg's broken army, for the purpose of driving him out of that region. Grant sent troops, under Sherman, to relieve him. Longstreet fled eastward, and, finally, made his way back to Lee's army in Virginia.

www.tibtool.com.cn

52. There was much activity in the Department of Missouri during 1863. No considerable battle occurred, but there were many skirmishes, in which the Nationals were generally successful. The Confederates were repulsed at Springfield, Missouri, early in January; and were also driven away in confusion when they attacked the National forces [July 4, 1863], under General Prentiss, at Helena, Arkansas. On the 1st of September, General Blunt took Fort Smith from them; and on the 10th of the same month, General Steele attacked and captured Little Rock, the capital of Arkansas. The power of the insurgents was now completely broken in that State.

53. At the time of Lee's invasion of Maryland and Pennsylvania [June, 1863], a large guerrilla[1] band, under General Morgan, a famous leader, composed of about three thousand cavalry, with six cannon, crossed the Ohio river into Indiana, and moved rapidly eastward, plundering as they went. Their intention, doubtless, was to cross into Western Virginia, and join Lee in Pennsylvania. They were foiled by the valor of home troops, who killed or captured almost the entire band of invaders. Morgan, with a remnant of eight hundred, surrendered to General Shackleford in Morgan county, Ohio, on the 26th of July.

54. The National army had made large progress at the close of 1863. Missouri, Arkansas, Kentucky, Tennessee, a large portion of Louisiana, Mississippi, and Florida, the Rio Grande frontier of Texas, and the control of the Mississippi river, had been wrested from the Confederates. Some of these districts were great food-producing regions, which made their loss to the insur-

1. Guerrilla is the Spanish word signifying "little war." It is a term applied to an irregular mode of carrying on war by the constant attacks of independent bands.

QUESTIONS.—51. What can you tell about the siege of Knoxville? 52. What have you to say about affairs in Missouri? What can you tell of battles at Springfield and Helena? What did Generals Blunt and Steele do? 53. Can you give an account of Morgan's raid into Indiana and Ohio? What was its probable object? What was the result? 54. What can you tell about the progress of the National army during 1863?

gents very serious. The friends of the Government had cause for joy and firm hope.[1]

55. The National navy, divided into six squadrons,[2] and employed in the blockading service and in coöperation with armies, was very active and successful during the year, on the coasts and on the rivers inland. Those in the coast service were chiefly employed in blockading Confederate ports, and in coöperation with land forces in attacking harbor defenses. We have already alluded to the unsuccessful attack on Sumter. On the 17th of June, the *Weehawken* captured the Confederate "ram" *Atlanta*, on the Georgia coast; and in July, several of the iron-clad steamers joined Gillmore's land forces in an attack on the defenses of Charleston, and lay there, for that purpose, a whole year or more. In the mean time, the squadrons under Farragut and Porter were doing noble service on the Mississippi and its tributaries.[3]

56. The thirty-seventh Congress closed its last session on the 4th of March, 1863. It had placed the entire resources of the country in the hands of the President, and adopted measures for the increase and efficiency of the army. All distinctions between regular and volunteer troops were removed. Arrangements were made for the organization of colored troops;[4] and on the 3d of

1. The Secretary of War, in his report in December, 1863, said: "The success of our armies during the last year, has enabled the Department to make a reduction of over $200,000,000 in the war estimates for the ensuing fiscal year."

2. The whole number of vessels owned by the Government, at the close of 1863, was 588, carrying about 4,500 guns, and about 26,000 seamen. Of these vessels, 384 were in actual service, of which number, 75 were iron-clad steamers. Of these steamers, 46 were engaged in the coast service, and 29 on the rivers in the interior. The squadrons were geographically designated as follows: Potomac Flotilla, North Atlantic Squadron, South Atlantic Squadron, Eastern Gulf Squadron, Western Gulf Squadron, Mississippi Flotilla, West India Squadron, East India Squadron, Mediterranean Squadron, Pacific Squadron; besides half a dozen vessels on special service, and about as many engaged in miscellaneous duties. There were only six vessels on foreign stations; the remainder were engaged in home service.

3. The Mississippi flotilla, at the close of the year, numbered over a hundred vessels, carrying 462 cannon, and about 5,500 men. The blockading service was performed with great vigilance, generally. The number of vessels captured from the beginning of the war until November, 1863, was 1,045. These were chiefly fitted out in England or her colonies, for the purpose of running the blockade. The four principal coast squadrons captured over three hundred prizes during 1863, about one third of which were steamers.

4. At the close of the year 1863, there were about 60,000 colored troops regularly mustered into the armies of the Republic. The Emancipation Proclamation (verse 37, page 278) had caused immense numbers of slaves to flock into the lines of the National army, and measures were taken to give them employment as soldiers or laborers. Measures were also taken for their instruction and moral discipline. The results have been wonderful. There are large communities of these freedmen and their families in different parts of the Southern States held by the National arms, where may be seen promises of the most radical improve-

QUESTIONS.—55. What have you to say about the National navy? What were its duties? What can you tell about the capture of a "ram," and the siege of Charleston? 56. What did the National Congress do? What can you tell about colored troops?

March [1863] a Conscription Act became law.[1] The President at once summoned [March 10] all enlisted or drafted troops to their places in the field or camp; and, early in May, he called for a draft of three hundred thousand men. Violent opposition was excited against the measure; and, on the day when the draft was to commence in New York city, a great riot broke out there, and lasted three days. Many lives and much property were sacrificed.[2] The Government, sustained by every right-minded citizen, went steadily on in its duty. The draft was enforced in twelve States. Fifty thousand men were added to the army by it, and ten and a half millions of dollars to the Treasury,[3] by the first of December, 1863.

THE GREAT CIVIL WAR CONTINUED [1864].

57. The National armies were strong, cheerful, and well-appointed, at the opening of the year, and the money affairs of the nation were in a healthful condition.[4] The patriotic war-spirit of the people was increasing; and there were many indications to inspire confidence that the great insurrection would be subdued before the close of the year. On the 1st of February, the President ordered preparations for a draft for three hundred thousand men; and, on the 15th of March, he called for two hundred thou-

ments in the condition and character of their race. They are also highly commended as soldiers. It is estimated that at midsummer, 1864, there were 100,000 colored troops under arms in the United States service.

1. A compulsory enrollment of individuals for military or naval service. From these a certain number are chosen by lot for service in the field. This is performed by placing the name of each man enrolled on a card, and, putting these into a revolving cylinder, the required number of names are drawn out by a person with his eyes bandaged. This is commonly called a *draft*, and cannot but be impartial.

2. About 100 lives, and property valued at $2,000,000, were destroyed.

3. There was a provision in the Conscription Act, that any drafted person might be exempted from duty, by paying three hundred dollars. A large number of the drafted men availed themselves of this privilege.

4. The National debt at the close of 1863, amounted to about 1,400 millions of dollars. This was due chiefly to the citizens of the United States who held Government bonds or circulating Treasury notes, familiarly known as "greenbacks," because on the backs of the bills there were figures and devices printed in green ink. Congress had levied taxes and impost duties sufficient to form a safe promise of redemption, and the people had the fullest confidence in the ability of the Government to meet all demands that might be made upon it. On the 1st of September, 1864, the exact amount of the public debt was $1,878,565,233, of which $519,111,267 bore no interest. The actual amount of the interest, a year, of the debt at the above date, was $77,795,000. The amount of fractional currency in circulation was $24,490,000.

QUESTIONS.—56. What about a draft for the army, and a riot in New York city? What was the result of the draft? 57. What can you say about the National armies at the beginning of 1864? What about money affairs, the war-spirit of the people, and promises of success? What did the President do in February and March? What did General Averill do?

sand volunteers, to serve in the army and navy. At about the same time, the National troops, everywhere, were ready to begin the campaign. Preparatory to the movement of the Army of the Potomac, General W. W. Averill, with cavalry, had struck [January 16, 1864] the Virginia and Tennessee railway, at Salem, westward of Lynchburg, and destroyed fifteen miles of the track between Lee and Longstreet.[1]

58. On the 3d of February, General Sherman[2] left Vicksburg, with a heavy column, and made a most destructive invasion of the country eastward, almost to the borders of Alabama. In the space of twenty-four days he marched four hundred miles, and destroyed an immense amount of property of every kind, useful to the Confederates, and liberated about ten thousand slaves.[3] On the 5th of February [1864], General T. Seymour left Port Royal, South Carolina, at the head of an expedition to invade Florida. At Jacksonville he fought and defeated the Confederates, toward the middle of the month, and then pushed on, with about five thousand men, to Olustee, on the Florida Central railway, where he was met by a heavy force of insurgents [February 20] and thoroughly defeated. He retreated in good order to Jacksonville, and abandoned the enterprise.

59. On the 10th of March, General A. J. Smith left Vicksburg, with a considerable body of troops, and, with the fleet of Admiral Porter, went up the Red river. On the 13th, he captured Fort de Russey from the Confederates under General Taylor. This opened the way to Alexandria, and the invaders pushed forward to that place [March 15, 1864]. There they were joined by General Banks, with a heavy column from New Orleans, and the fleet and a portion of Smith's army advanced toward Shreveport.[4] The Nationals were met at Cane river on the 26th, where they fought and defeated the Confederates who opposed them.

60. Onward the National troops moved, and on the 8th of

1. Verse 51, page 284. 2. Verse 50, page 284.
3. About 6,000 of these accompanied the army back to Vicksburg.
4. Shreveport is on the Red river, in Louisiana, near the borders of Texas.

QUESTIONS.—58. Give an account of Sherman's invasion of Mississippi and Alabama. What can you tell about Seymour's expedition to Florida? 59. Can you give an account of an expedition up the Red river? What was accomplished? What did Banks do? What occurred?

April they were again met, at Pleasant Hill, by a large Confederate force. In the battle that ensued, the Nationals were defeated; but they retrieved their fortunes the next day by winning a substantial victory over their conquerors of the day before. The patriots now fell back to Alexandria, and Banks ordered Porter, who had gone on toward Shreveport, to return, as he could afford him no support. The task was difficult. The Confederates swarmed on the banks of the narrow stream. The water was rapidly falling; and when Porter approached Alexandria, it was too shallow to allow his vessels to pass the rapids near there. Under the direction of Lieutenant-Colonel Bailey, of Wisconsin, the river was dammed up, and, by a process well known to lumbermen, the fleet was passed in safety on the 11th of May. The army and navy then hastened to the Mississippi.

61. There were misfortunes elsewhere. General Steele, in Arkansas,[1] had attempted to coöperate with the Red river expedition. When he heard of its retreat, he fell back toward Little Rock,[2] continually annoyed by attacking Confederates on the way, who captured two thousand of his men, and a train of two hundred wagons. In March, the Confederate General Forrest, with several thousand men, made a raid into Tennessee and Kentucky. He captured Union City, Tennessee, on the 24th, and, on the following day, five thousand of his troops nearly destroyed Paducah, on the Ohio river. On the 12th of April, they captured Fort Pillow, on the Mississippi, and committed dreadful atrocities there.

62. The grand Army of the Potomac, in the mean time, had fully prepared for the campaign, under the immediate command of General Meade;[3] and three Western armies, concentrated under General Sherman,[4] were equally ready. In March, Grant was made a lieutenant-general,[5] and he became the general-in-chief of

1. Verse 52, page 285.
2. Verse 52, page 285.
3. Verse 39, page 279.
4. Verse 58, page 288.
5. This rank in the army, which had been conferred only on General Scott (verse 6,

Questions.—60. What can you tell about the movements of the National troops on Red river? Tell how Porter was ordered back, and what took place. 61. What can you tell about the movements of General Steele, and his misfortunes? What can you tell about a raid into Tennessee and Kentucky by Forrest? 62. What can you say about the Army of the Potomac under Meade, and those of the West under Sherman? What can you tell about General Grant?

LIEUTENANT-GENERAL GRANT.

www.libtool.com.cn

the armies of the Republic. He entered upon the duties of his office with vigor, and, on the morning of the 3d of May, he issued an order[1] for the Potomac and the Western armies, several hundred miles distant from each other, to move forward.

63. The Army of the Potomac immediately crossed the Rapid Anna,[2] and moved toward Richmond on the right flank of General Lee, who was behind strong intrenchments in Orange county, Virginia. This movement compelled Lee to leave his works; and, in the Wilderness,[3] not far from the Chancellorsville battle-ground,[4] the two great armies, numbering together not less, probably, than two hundred and fifty thousand men, fought a severe battle on the 5th. Longstreet's corps[5] had reached and strengthened Lee. For three days the combatants fiercely contended for the mastery, when the Confederates withdrew [May 7, 1864] in the direction of Richmond. Near Spottsylvania Court House heavy battles were fought; and, at the end of six days of conflict, the Nationals had gained decided advantages.[6]

64. By attacks and flank movements, Grant compelled Lee to

page 208), had been extinguished by that officer's retirement from the service. It was now revived, with special reference to General Grant, whose services had been of the greatest importance.

1. These orders were sent by the magnetic telegraph, which was a most wonderful instrumentality in the conduct of this war. During the year 1863, over 1,700 miles of land and submarine telegraph were constructed under the direction of the military authorities; and at least 3,000 despatches each day were sent and received over the military lines, during the year. These messages varied in length from 10 to 1,000 words and upward.

2. Note 3, page 280.

3. Verse 38, page 279. This is a broken, sterile tract of country in Spottsylvania county, Virginia, about fifteen miles in extent, commencing not far from the south bank of the Rapid Anna. It is intersected by gullies, and dotted with swamps. It is covered by a thick growth of stunted pines, dwarf oaks and underbrush, dense and almost impenetrable. Only rough paths go through it, and it is almost impassable after a rain.

4. Verse 38, page 279. This was the site of a tavern on the eastern edge of the Wilderness.

5. Verse 51, page 284.

6. At that time, Grant sent the following despatch to the Secretary of War: "We have now ended the sixth day of very heavy fighting. The result, to this time, is very much in our favor. Our losses have been heavy as well as those of the enemy. I think the loss of the enemy must be greater. We have taken over 5,000 prisoners in battle, while he has taken from us few except stragglers. I propose to fight it out on this line, if it takes all summer."

QUESTIONS.—63. Can you give an account of the movements and doings of the Army of the Potomac from the Rapid Anna to Spottsylvania Court House? What battles occurred?

leave one strong position after another, and fall back to the defences of Richmond, at the beginning of June. In the mean time, a large force, under General Butler, had gone up from Fortress Monroe and seized and fortified a strong position[1] near the mouth of the Appomattox river, on the south side of the James, by which he held in check reënforcements under Beauregard,[2] then hastening from the Carolinas to the army under Lee. This was to aid a movement already planned for placing the Army of the Potomac on the south side of the James river. This plan was successfully executed at the middle of June, and placed Grant in an advantageous position before Petersburg, a strongly intrenched town on the Appomattox river, twenty miles south of Richmond, and commanding, in a degree, the railway communication with North Carolina by way of Weldon.

65. Lee crossed the James river with the bulk of his army, and took a position to defend Petersburg, that being essential to the security of Richmond. Grant at once commenced a siege. He sent out cavalry expeditions in various directions to cut the railway communications with Lee's army and the Confederate capital. Early in July, these were placed in great peril.[3]

66. While the Army of the Potomac was achieving these successes, that in Northern Georgia, under Sherman, was equally victorious.[4] Sherman advanced from Chattanooga[5] at the beginning of May. The Confederates, under J. E. Johnston, were then at Dalton, in Georgia. Steadily Sherman pressed forward, day after day, over a rugged mountain region, fought battle after battle, captured or passed round one stronghold after another

1. Bermuda Hundred. 2. Verse 11, page 268.

3. A force under General David Hunter captured Staunton, and then proceeded to cut the Virginia and Tennessee railway eastward of Lynchburg. Another force, under General J. H. Wilson, destroyed many miles of the Richmond and Danville railway; and another, under General Philip H. Sheridan, destroyed a portion of the railway between Gordonsville and Richmond. The Weldon road was also severed (but not seriously), as well as the road leading from Petersburg to Richmond. The James river was now in complete control of the Nationals, from its mouth to above the Appomattox river.

4. Sherman's force was composed of three armies, namely, that of the *Tennessee*, under General McPherson; of the *Ohio*, under General Thomas, and of the *Cumberland*, under General Schofield. 5. Verse 50, page 284.

QUESTIONS.—64. What did Grant do? What did Butler do? What was the object of his movement? What great achievement was effected? 65. What did Lee do? What expeditions were sent out by Grant, and what did they effect? 66. What have you to say about movements elsewhere? Can you give an account of Sherman's progress in Georgia? What can you tell of events near Atlanta?

(the Confederates as steadily falling back), until the middle of July, when he had crossed the Chattahoochee river with his whole army, and advanced upon Atlanta, one of the most important military positions in the South. Near that strong post three heavy battles were fought [July 20, 22, and 28], in which the Confederates were defeated with immense losses, when the National army closely invested the place.[1] Cavalry expeditions, in the mean while, had destroyed all the railway communications with Atlanta.[2]

GENERAL SHERMAN.

67. While the hearts of loyal men were joyful because of the success of the National arms, news came of the destruction, in the British channel, of the pirate ship *Alabama*, which had, for almost two years, been the terror of American commerce. Two days after the President called for seventy-five thousand men to put down the insurrection,[3] the chief of the Confederates offered [April 17, 1861] letters-of-marque[4] to anybody who might choose to fit out a vessel to make war on the commerce of the Republic on the high seas. The Confederates organized a navy department, and gave places to the officers who had deserted the National flag;[5] but their means for the creation of a marine force were insignificant.[6] So they looked to Europe for aid, and, in the greed

1. In the battle of the 22d, General McPherson was killed. Two days after [July 20], Johnston had been relieved of the command of the Confederate army in Georgia, and was succeeded by General Hood.

2. General Rousseau, a Kentuckian, with a cavalry force, swept down from Decatur, in Northern Alabama, almost to Montgomery, and then along the line of the railway between that city and Atlanta, destroying thirty-one miles of the track, many bridges, consuming station-houses and a vast amount of public property, capturing and paroling a large number of Confederate soldiers, and freeing many negroes. He arrived at Marietta, after a march of four hundred miles in the course of thirteen days. Already the railway between Atlanta and Augusta had been made useless to the Confederate army in Georgia; and at the beginning of August, a force under General Stoneman destroyed many miles of the railway between Atlanta and Macon.

3. Verse 4, page 265.

4. Such is the European title of the commissions given to the commanders of private armed vessels, to capture or destroy the property of an enemy. See note 5, page 228.

5. A large number of the officers of the National navy, who were natives or residents of the Slave States, deserted their flag when the war broke out, and some resigned before. They all joined the Confederates, but found little to do in the way of their legitimate profession.

6. R. S. Mallory, formerly a member of the National Senate, from Florida, was made

QUESTIONS.—67. What news made loyal men rejoice? What can you tell about a Confederate navy and letters-of-marque? Where did the Confederates look for aid and find it?

of England for the "supremacy of the seas," they found a steadfast friend and helper.

68. The first formidable pirate ship put afloat was the *Sumter*, (Captain Semmes,) whose destructive career was ended at the close of 1861.[1] Meanwhile, arrangements were made by the Confederates with Laird, a member of the British Parliament and a ship-builder, at Liverpool, to construct several powerful steamships for their use. The *Oreto* (afterward *Florida*) was soon at sea, and, in September, 1862, she ran the blockade at Mobile under English colors. She went to sea again in December, and made havoc among American merchantmen. She was never again in a Confederate port, but always found a welcome in British colonial harbors.

69. Semmes was soon in command of a powerful vessel, built by Laird, called the *Alabama*. She was essentially a British pirate ship, with a Confederate commander and flag;[2] and she fulfilled the expectations of the British shipping interest, by frightening American commerce into British vessels, and giving them a monopoly of the carrying trade.[3] She always avoided our national vessels sent after her. She was finally blockaded in the French port of Cherbourg, by the *Kearsarge*, Captain Winslow. The French Government ordered the pirate to leave their waters. She went out on the 15th of June [1864], met the *Kearsarge*, and, after a short conflict, was sent to the bottom of the sea. Her commander and others were picked up by an English vessel in attendance, which carried them to England to save them from their conqueror.[4]

Confederate Secretary of the Navy. They built a few iron-clad gun-boats, for the defense of their rivers, and "rams," for the protection of their harbors. Most of them perished.

1. She was blockaded at Gibraltar, and was finally sold.

2. She was built, armed, and furnished in England, and almost wholly manned by British subjects, several of them from the Royal navy. She sailed out of England under a British flag, and was always welcomed into British ports. And before she went into battle with the *Kearsarge*, her commander, in a little speech to her officers and crew, repeated the words of Lord Nelson, "*England* expects every man to do his duty!" She was not allowed to carry her prizes into British ports, and so her commander generally plundered and burnt them at sea. The Alabama captured and destroyed 64 American vessels.

3. The estimated value of property destroyed by the Alabama was $10,000,000. It was also estimated that nearly two thirds of the carrying trade enjoyed by citizens of the United States was transferred to British vessels. During 1863, about 1,000 American ships were sold to foreign merchants, chiefly British.

4. One of the English aristocracy, named Lancaster, was near the scene of action, in his

Questions.—68. What can you tell about the *Sumter*? What have you to say about British ship builders, and their aid of the Confederates? What about the *Oreto* or *Florida*? 69. What can you tell about the *Alabama*? Give an account of her destruction What did her English friends do?

70. The joy produced by the sinking of the *Alabama* was succeeded by alarm, caused by a sudden invasion of Maryland, early in July, by way of the Shenandoah valley, by about fifteen thousand Confederate soldiers, under General Early, whose chief object seems to have been the seizure of supplies for the use of the army at Richmond. They were held in check on the Monocacy river, near Frederick, by General Wallace[2] and a few hastily assembled troops (about one third the number of the invaders), who fought them gallantly [July 9] for seven or eight hours, and saved Baltimore and Washington from capture or destruction. Overwhelming numbers caused Wallace to fall back. After threatening the two cities and securing a considerable amount of plunder,[3] including many horses, the Confederates fled across the Potomac, pursued by National troops, who struck them a severe blow [July 20] at Winchester.[4]

71. Gathering force, the Confederates pushed the National troops back to the Potomac, and, at the close of July, some of them crossed the river, swept through Northern Maryland into Pennsylvania, and burned [July 30, 1864] the village of Chambersburg.[5] They soon fled back to Virginia, closely pursued, but

yacht, the *Deerhound*, evidently by previous arrangement with the pirate commander, to afford him any assistance in his power. He took Semmes and other officers, who were the legal prisoners to Winslow, on board his yacht, and carried them to England out of harm's way. A public dinner was offered Semmes at Southampton; and a British admiral (Anson) headed a list of subscribers to a fund to purchase an elegant sword, to be presented to the corsair!

1. It was estimated that the whole number detached from Lee's army for the great forage raid, was about 20,000, a fourth of whom remained in Virginia, at different points from the Potomac to Lynchburg.

2. Verse 10, page 267.

3. While the main portion of the invaders were engaged in plundering, a body of horsemen, under a renegade Marylander, named Gilmor, swept through the country, spreading destruction, alarm, and confusion among the people. An old man, seventy-three years of age, named Ishmael Day, said to some of them who came to plunder his house, over which waved the national flag: "Gentlemen, you may burn my barn, and rob my house, but I will shoot the first man who touches that flag." Two of Gilmor's raiders attempted to tear it down. The old man mortally wounded one of them with the contents of a duck-gun, when the other fled. The old patriot escaped to the woods. A body of Gilmor's horsemen came up, turned Day's family out of doors, and burned his house and barn.

4. The National troops were commanded by General Averill. He killed or wounded three hundred of the Confederates, made two hundred prisoners, captured four cannon, and a large quantity of their plunder.

5. The marauding force that destroyed Chambersburg, a town of 6,000 inhabitants, did not exceed, it is estimated, 400 men. They were led by General McCausland, who acted under the written instructions of his commander, General Jubal Early. He demanded a bribe of $500,000 to spare the village. It was not given, and 260 buildings were soon in flames. The loss to the citizens of Chambersburg was estimated at $2,000,000.

QUESTIONS.—70. Give an account of a Confederate invasion of Maryland. How were Baltimore and Washington saved? What then occurred? 71. What can you tell about the return of the Confederates to Maryland and Pennsylvania, and the destruction of Chambersburg?

were strong enough to halt and gather food in the Shenandoah valley, which they sent off to Richmond. In the meantime, heavy reënforcements were sent by Grant to the opposers of the raiders, and all were placed under the command of General Sheridan,[1] who kept near the Potomac until the army before Petersburg had achieved an important success, when he moved forward [September] to press the Confederates up the Shenandoah valley back in their track toward Richmond.

72. While these movements were going on near the Potomac, General Grant was making important ones on the borders of the James and Appomattox rivers;[2] and during the months of July and August he gained substantial advantages, but not without heavy losses. He formed a mine under one of the strongest forts in the Confederate lines of defenses in front of Petersburg, and at dawn on the 30th of July it was exploded with fearful effect.[3] The fort, with about two hundred men, was destroyed. The explosion was followed by a vigorous assault. The assailants were repulsed, and the well-devised plan for breaking the Confederate line and seizing Petersburg was foiled.

73. Three weeks later Grant secured a very important advantage by seizing the Weldon railway below Petersburg. That road was of vital importance to Lee's army, as the chief avenue through which he could receive supplies of men, munitions, and food, from the Southern portions of the Confederacy, or hold military communication with it. As early as the middle of August, Grant was aware that Lee had sent reënforcements to Early in the Shenandoah valley, and he at once commenced strategic movements which were eminently successful. The Weldon road was seized [August 18], and every attempt (and they were desperate)

1. Note 3, page 291. 2. Verses 64 and 65, page 291.

3. The construction of this mine was suggested by Lieutenant-Colonel Pleasants, of the 48th Pennsylvania Regiment, and was performed by his men, who were mostly coal-miners. He excavated a nearly horizontal shaft about 500 feet in length, at the end of which, 16 feet below the surface of the earth, and directly under the fort to be destroyed, a large chamber was excavated. In this were four connected magazines, containing, in the aggregate, between five and six tons of powder. These were ignited by means of a fuse. The explosion produced an immense crater.

QUESTIONS.—71. What did the Confederates then do? What can you tell about reënforcements and Sheridan's operations? 72. What was Grant doing? Can you give an account of the destruction of a Confederate fort? What was the result? 73. Give an account of the seizure of the Weldon Railway. What was its importance to the Confederates, and what did they attempt to do? What was the result?

made to retake it [August 19, 20, 21, and 25] was defeated. The road was destroyed a distance of twelve miles, and the National troops, strongly intrenched, held a firm grasp upon it.

74. During the whole of August [1864] Sherman closely besieged Atlanta,[1] making his hold upon the Confederate forces there firmer and closer every day, and continually diminishing their ability to escape or endure a long siege, while his ample guards kept his own communications free from any serious damage by the guerilla parties and Confederate cavalry. At length, by a skillful flank movement, he severed the Confederate army that opposed him, seized their only remaining railway communication between Atlanta and the surrounding country, and compelled Hood[2] to fly from that city [September 2], in despair, toward the heart of Georgia. "So Atlanta is ours, and fairly won," Sherman modestly wrote in his despatch to his government. He announced one of the most important victories of the war, for, in connection with recent events near Mobile, it promised to the National arms the speedy control of the entire region of the Gulf States from the Atlantic to the Mississippi,[3] as well as of Georgia and South Corolina.

75. While the two great National armies of Meade[4] and Sherman were struggling in close conflict with the two great Confederate armies of Lee and Hood,[5] the Western Gulf squadron,[6] under Admiral Farragut,[7] was performing brilliant exploits near Mobile, assisted by a land force under General Gordon Granger. Early in the morning of the 5th of August [1864], the squadron sailed into Mobile bay past Forts Morgan and Gaines, at its entrance. The vessels went in in pairs, lashed together,[8] and all

1. Verse 66, page 291. 2. Note 1, page 292.

3. The States bordering on the Gulf of Mexico, namely, Mississippi, Alabama, and Florida. By this victory, the armed Confederates in the Southern States were driven into the narrow compass of the seaboard portion of Georgia and South Carolina, the principal cities of which are Savannah and Charleston.

4. It must be remembered that Meade remained the commander of the *Army of the Potomac*, but under the immediate direction of Lieutenant-General Grant, whose headquarters were with that army.

5. Note 1, page 292. 6. Note 2, page 286. 7. Verse 24, page 273.

6. The *Brooklyn*, with the *Octarora*, led the way, followed by the *Hartford* (the Admiral's flag-ship), and the *Metacomet* as her consort. The Admiral was lashed to the maintop of the

Questions.—74. What was Sherman doing at Atlanta? Give an account of his victory there. What were its promised effects? 75. Can you give an account of how a National naval victory was won near Mobile?

passed the forts in safety excepting the "monitor" *Tecumseh*, which was sunk by a torpedo. A brief and furious engagement with the Confederate naval force then quickly ensued, and resulted in the capture of the formidable Confederate "ram" *Tennessee*, with the commanding admiral (Buchanan), and the seizure or dispersion of the rest of the fleet.

www.ibook.com.cn

76. General Granger landed with troops on Dauphin island, in the rear of Fort Gaines; and on the 8th [August, 1864] that post, with its garrison, guns, and provisions for a year, was surrendered to Farragut. Fort Morgan, on Mobile Point, was next attacked. Farragut's vessels took position on both sides of the Point, and poured a terrific storm of shot and shell upon the doomed fortress,[1] while the land troops assailed it in the rear. It was surrendered unconditionally, with its garrison, on the 23d of August,[2] when the preliminary work for the speedy capture of Mobile was accomplished.[3]

77. The victories at Mobile and Atlanta, minor successes elsewhere, and the noble response given to the call of the President for more men to reënforce the two great armies in the field,[4] and the equally efficient navy,[5] gave assurance at the beginning of September that the end of the Civil War, and the return of peace were nigh.[6] Because of these triumphs and this hopeful aspect of

---

Hartford, that he might overlook his whole fleet and not be thrown down by the shocks of battle; and by means of a speaking-tube from his perch to the deck, he gave his orders.

1. About 3,000 shells were thrown into the fort.

2. It was officially reported that after the white flag had been raised in token of surrender, the Confederates spiked most of the cannon, and wantonly injured the carriages, small arms, ammunition, and provisions; and that the officers, with General Page at their head, destroyed their swords that they might not be surrendered. Subsequent investigation proved this report to have been entirely unfounded.

3. The captured forts at the entrance to the bay are about 30 miles below Mobile.

4. On the 18th of July, the President issued an order for a draft for 500,000 men at the end of 50 days, should the number asked for not be enrolled by volunteering before that time. About 200,000 were credited in consequence of enlistments in the navy and other causes, according to an act of Congress, and the number actually called for was reduced to 300,000. A large proportion of this number had volunteered, or been supplied in the form of substitutes, at the end of the 50 days.

5. The operations of the navy, during the war, have been of the highest importance. Its services have not been thoroughly appreciated, because of its having acted merely as an auxiliary to the army. Its achievements have been wonderful, and it should receive equal credit with the army.

6. On the 5th of September, the joyful news reached New York that the pirate ship *Georgia*, which had done much damage to American commerce, had been captured off the port of Lisbon, Portugal, by the National steamship *Niagara*, and was on her way to the

---

Questions.—76. Can you give an account of the captures of Forts Gaines and Morgan at the entrance to Mobile Bay? 77. What caused the President to recommend public thanksgivings?

affairs, the President issued a proclamation [September 3, 1864], in which he requested the people to make a special recognition of Divine Goodness, by offering thanksgivings in their respective places of worship, on the following Sunday, the 11th of September.[1]

78. Whilst Sherman was resting his wearied troops at Atlanta,[2] and Grant was holding Lee fast near Richmond,[3] General Sheridan was giving the Confederates heavy blows in the Shenandoah Valley.[4] On the 19th of September he gained a great victory over Early, not far from Winchester. After that he held the Valley under complete control.

79. Late in September, Hood,[5] with his Confederate Army, moved toward Tennessee for the purpose of destroying Sherman's communication with Chattanooga and invading that State. The watchful Sherman was soon on his track, and gave him such heavy blows that he was compelled to flee toward Northern Alabama, where he prepared to invade Tennessee and push on toward the Ohio river.

80. Leaving General Thomas in Tennessee to oppose Hood, Sherman, early in November, commenced a grand march with his army through the heart of Georgia, for the Atlantic coast. Atlanta was abandoned on the 14th. Threatening Macon and Augusta,[6] he moved forward, captured Milledgeville [November 20], the capital of the State, and finally, on the 21st of December, he entered Savannah in triumph. The Confederates there un-

GENERAL THOMAS.

United States in charge of a prize crew. The *Florida* and *Tallahassee* were the only pirates known to be afloat at the beginning of September. The latter was captured soon after.

1. On the same day the President issued orders for salutes of a hundred guns to be fired on the 5th and the 7th, at Washington, New York, Boston, Philadelphia, Pittsburg, Baltimore, Newport (Ky.), and St. Louis; and at New Orleans, Mobile, Pensacola, Hilton Head, and Newbern, the day after the receipt of the order.

2. Verse 66, page 291.
3. Verse 65, page 291.
4. Verse 71, page 294.
5. Note 1, page 292.
6. These towns were important as depositories of munitions of war, but of little account in a military point of view.

QUESTIONS.—78. What can you tell about Sheridan in the Shenandoah Valley? 79. What did Hood do? What did Sherman do? What did Hood prepare to attempt to do? 80. What can you tell about Sherman's march through Georgia? What was the result?

der Hardee crossed the Savannah river and fled toward Charleston.

81. Hood, in the mean time, invaded Tennessee with an army of about forty thousand men. Thomas slowly fell back toward Nashville. A heavy battle was fought by Schofield and Hood at Franklin [November 30], and then the latter besieged Nashville. On the 15th of December, Thomas marched out, attacked the besiegers, and drove them southward with great loss of men and materials of war. Hood, greatly crippled, fled across the Tennessee into Alabama.[1]

82. At the middle of December a military and naval expedition was sent against Wilmington, the only seaport of importance then in possession of the Confederates.[2] An unsuccessful attack was made on the forts at the mouth of the Cape Fear river, on Christmas Day; but on the 15th of January [1865], they were captured by land troops under General Terry, assisted by the navy under Admiral Porter. Wilmington was captured by the National forces on the 21st of February.

83. General Foster coöperated with Sherman from Beaufort, South Carolina; and at the middle of January the latter moved his army into that State. They made their way through the swamps to the borders of the Upper Country. On the 17th of February they entered Columbia, the capital of South Carolina, in triumph. Thus flanked, the Confederates fled from Charleston, and on the following day [February 18] colored troops marched in and took possession of that cradle of the Rebellion. Sherman pushed on toward North Carolina without much opposition, whilst Schofield from Newbern and Terry from Wilmington were coöperating with him. After some fighting, the three armies

1. During this invasion, Hood lost one third of his army, and nearly all of his cannon.
2. From the beginning of this war, the Confederates received a vast amount of supplies through Wilmington, by blockade runners, and sent out cotton in return.

QUESTIONS.—81. What can you tell about Hood's invasion of Tennessee? What battle was fought, and where? What occurred at Nashville? What became of Hood? 82. What can you tell about expeditions against Wilmington? 83. Who coöperated with Sherman in South Carolina? What can you tell about Sherman's march through South Carolina, and the result? How came Charleston to be abandoned? What can you tell of the junction of armies in North Carolina?

met at Goldsboro'[1] [March 22], while General J. E. Johnston, with the Confederate troops, were kept at bay near Raleigh.[2]

84. In the mean time Sheridan marched, with a heavy cavalry force, up the Shenandoah Valley, and in the neighborhood of Charlottesville he almost annihilated Early's army[3] at the beginning of March. He then swept over the country toward Lynchburg, destroying the railway and canal communications with Richmond. Moving swiftly around to the north of that city, he broke up the railway communications with Fredericksburg, and without much opposition joined the Army of the James under General Ord toward the middle of March.

GENERAL SHERIDAN.

85. During the nine months that Grant and Lee faced each other on the James and Appomattox rivers,[4] hostile movements were frequent, and sometimes resulted in battles, which were almost always favorable to the Nationals. Finding his supplies cut off by Sheridan's operations, Lee prepared to abandon Richmond, march into North Carolina, and join Johnston.[5] The watchful Grant would not allow it. Sheridan had joined him, and at the close of March [1865] the whole Army of the Potomac, with a part of that of the James, were in motion. After three days of hard fighting, during which time he lost more than 20,000 men, Lee was compelled to abandon his works at

1. Schofield's troops had a battle with the Confederates under Bragg, at Kinston, and were victorious. Two of Sherman's columns had conflicts with Johnston's troops after the former left Fayetteville. The cavalry of Kilpatrick and Wade Hampton also had some combats, in which the former were successful.

2. The capital of North Carolina.

3. Verse 70, page 294.

4. Verses 64 and 65, page 291.

5. Beauregard superseded Hood in the command of the remnant of the Army of the Tennessee, after its disastrous expulsion by Thomas, and he in turn was superseded by Johnston, who was restored to the command of what was left of his old army.

QUESTIONS.—84. Give an account of Sheridan's attack on Early and his destructive raid around Richmond. 85. What can you tell about the armies of Grant and Lee? What did Lee attempt, and why? How was he prevented from joining Johnston? What can you tell of his flight and surrender?

Petersburg and Richmond, and fly westward, for the National troops were across his path to North Carolina. On the 9th of April he surrendered the remainder of his army to Grant.

86. On the morning of the 3d of April, General Godfrey Weitzel, at the head of his colored troops, marched into Richmond.[1] The mayor surrendered the city, and the people received them with joy. The Confederate "President," Cabinet, and Congress had fled, and with that flight the active power of the Rebellion passed away for ever. On the following day [April 4, 1865], President Lincoln, who had been at Grant's headquarters at City Point for several days, went up to Richmond, and in the parlor of the fugitive, Jefferson Davis, held a public reception of army officers and citizens.[2]

87. The surrender of Lee's army gave assurance that the war was at an end; and there was great joy everywhere. This joy was suddenly turned into mourning when intelligence went over the land that the President had been assassinated [April 14] in a public place in Washington City,[3] and that the Secretary of State (Mr. Seward) had been terribly wounded, at his house, at the same time.[4] It was suspected that assassins had been hired by the so-called "Confederate Government," or its agents, to murder the

1. His corps (the Twenty-fifth), attached to the Army of the James, was composed wholly of colored troops. A portion of these were the first national troops that marched into Richmond.

2. Just one month before [March 4], Mr. Lincoln had been inaugurated President of the United States for the second time, having been reëlected by an overwhelming vote of the people, with Andrew Johnson, of Tennessee, as Vice-President. His opponent, nominated by the Democratic party, was George B. McClellan [see page 268], who received the electoral votes of three of the thirty-five States, namely, New Jersey, Delaware, and Kentucky.

3. On the 14th of April it was announced that the President and General Grant, by invitation, would visit Ford's theatre in the evening. General Grant did not remain in Washington that evening. The President, unwilling to disappoint the public, went to the theatre with Mrs. Lincoln, and while sitting in a private box, J. Wilkes Booth, formerly an actor in that theatre, approached from behind, shot him through the head, leaped upon the stage brandishing a knife and exclaiming, in the motto of Virginia, *Sic semper tyrannis*—So always with tyrants—and escaped at the back of the building. He was afterward found in a barn, which was fired, and the culprit was shot [April 26] when he appeared, by a sergeant named Boston Corbett. Some of Booth's associates in crime were discovered, arrested, and received proper punishment.

4. Mr. Seward was then almost helpless, in bed, from the effects of a fall when thrown from his carriage.

QUESTIONS.—86. Give an account of Weitzel's entrance into Richmond and the President's visit there. 87. What did the surrender of Lee's army promise? What can you tell about the assassination of President Lincoln? What other murders were attempted? Tell how Mr. Lincoln was succeeded in office.

President, the Vice-President, the Cabinet Ministers, General Grant, and other distinguished men, with the hope that in some way, in the midst of the confusion that might ensue, their wicked cause might gain an advantage. Their plan failed. Only the President was killed. In less than six hours after his death,[1] Andrew Johnson, the Vice-President, was inaugurated President of the United States, and the Government went steadily on in its course. President Johnson retained President Lincoln's Cabinet.[2]

ANDREW JOHNSON.

88. The only remaining large army of the Confederates, under General Joseph E. Johnston,[3] surrendered to General Sherman, in North Carolina, on the 26th of April. Other armies and guerilla bands[4] speedily followed this example. In the mean time, Jefferson Davis,[5] the leader of the conspirators, was fleeing toward the sea-coast to escape from the country, with a large amount of specie, taken from the "Confederate Treasury" and the banks of Richmond. He was captured in Georgia on the 10th of May, whilst flying to the swamps, disguised as a woman by the garments of his wife.[6]

89. By the middle of May, armed rebellion had ceased, and

1. The President died at twenty minutes past seven on the morning of the 15th of April.
2. William H. Seward, Secretary of State; Hugh McCullough, Secretary of the Treasury; Edwin M. Stanton, Secretary of War; Gideon Welles, Secretary of the Navy; John P. Usher, Secretary of the Interior; James Speed, Attorney-General; William Dennison, Postmaster-General.
3. Verse 66, page 291. 4. Note 1, page 285. 5. Verse 2, page 262.
6. The Government had offered $100,000 for his arrest. He was captured by a portion of the Fourth Michigan Cavalry, under Col. B. D. Pritchard, near Irwinsville, capital of Irwin county, Georgia.

QUESTIONS.—88. What can you tell of the surrender of Johnston's and other armies, and the flight and capture of "President" Davis?

End of the Rebellion.

the National Government, stronger than ever in moral and material power, was left free to resume its career of peace and prosperity. The terrible war had purified and strengthened the Republic, and made it, indeed, in the eyes of the nations,

"THE LAND OF THE FREE AND THE HOME OF THE BRAVE."

www.ibtool.com.cn

QUESTIONS.—89. What can you say about the Government and the effect of the war upon the nation?

www.libtool.com.cn

SECTION XVII.

THE NATIONAL CONSTITUTION AND GROWTH OF THE REPUBLIC [1789–1864].

www.libtool.com.cn

We have considered the causes which led to the construction of the National Constitution, in 1787; its adoption by the people of the United States as the organic law of the land, and the establishment of a National Government in accordance with its plan.[1] Let us now take it up and study it carefully, for it is the Great Charter of our Liberties. We will begin with the introductory remarks, or

PREAMBLE.

WE the People of the United States,[2] in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity,[3] do ordain and establish this CONSTITUTION for the United States of America.

Objects.

ARTICLE I.

SECTION I.

All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a

1. See pages 193 and 194. Previous to the Revolution, there were three forms of government in the colonies, namely, *Charter*, *Proprietary*, and *Provincial*. The charter governments were Massachusetts, Connecticut, and Rhode Island. They had power to make laws not inconsistent with those of England. The proprietary governments were Maryland, Pennsylvania, and Delaware. Their governors were appointed by their proprietors, and these and the proprietors usually made the laws. The provincial were New Hampshire, New York, New Jersey, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia. In these the governor and his council were appointed by the crown, and these, with chosen representatives of the people, made the laws.

2. The Union is older than the Constitution. It was formed in the first Continental Congress (page 127), by the representatives of thirteen separate but not independent nor sovereign provinces, for they had ever been subject to the British crown. Then the inhabitants of those colonies were solemnly leagued as one people, and two years later (verse 9, page 142) they declared themselves collectively independent of Great Britain, and recognized the supremacy of the Continental Congress as a central government. See Curtis's *History of the Constitution*, i. 39, 40. The plan of Independent State governments then adopted having failed (verse 6, page 193), a national one was formed, and the framers of the Constitution, to give emphasis to the fact, said in the preamble of the instrument, "We the people of the *United States*," instead of "We the people of Massachusetts, New York," et cetera. So argued the Supreme Court. See *Wheaton's S. C. Reports*, i. 304.

3. Six objects, it is seen, were to be obtained, each having a national breadth of purpose.

QUESTIONS.—What have we considered? What are the remarks introductory to the National Constitution called? Recite the Preamble to the Constitution. Who ordained and established the Constitution? For what purposes?

Legislative powers. Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a senate and house of representatives.

SECTION II.

www.libtool.com.cn

House of Representatives. 1*st Clause.*—The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States, and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State legislature.[1]

Qualification of Representatives. 2*d Clause.*—No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.[2]

Apportionment of Representatives. 3*d Clause.*—Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers,[4] which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons.[5] The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term

---

1. The members of the House of Representatives are elected to seats therein for two years, and they hold two regular sessions or sittings during that time. Each full term is called a Congress. Senators are elected by the State legislatures, to serve for six years.

2. There is a Senate and House of Representatives, or Assembly, in each State. Any person qualified to vote for a member of his State Assembly, may vote for a member of the National House of Representatives.

3. A person born in a foreign country, may be elected a representative after he has been for seven years a citizen of the United States.

4. It has been decided that this does not restrict the power of imposing direct taxes, to States only. The Congress of the United States has power to do so, but only for the purpose of paying the national debts and providing for the national welfare. See Kent's *Commentaries on the Constitution*, abridged edition, page 330. Direct taxes had been laid three times by the National Congress, previous to the Great Civil War that broke out in 1861, namely, in 1798, 1813, and 1815.

5. The "other persons" here mentioned were slaves. In making the apportionment, every five slaves are accounted three persons.

QUESTIONS.—ART. I. *Legislative Department.* SEC. I. Recite Section I. In what body are all legislative powers vested? Of what does Congress consist?

SEC. II. Recite the 1*st Clause.* How is the House of Representatives composed? How often and by whom are the Representatives chosen? What are the qualifications for an elector or voter? Recite the 2*d Clause.* What is said about the age of a Representative? How long must he have been a citizen of the United States? What is required in regard to his residence? What three qualifications must a Representative possess? Recite the 3*d Clause.* How are Representatives and direct taxes apportioned among the several States? How are the respective numbers of the representative population to be determined? When was the first enumeration or census to be made, and how often thereafter?

of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.[1]

4th Clause.—When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies. **Vacancies, how filled.**

5th Clause.—The House of Representatives shall choose their speaker and other officers;[2] and shall have the sole power of impeachment.[3] **Speaker, how appointed.**

SECTION III.

1st Clause.—The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each State, chosen by the legislature thereof, for six years;[4] and each senator shall have one vote. **Number of Senators from each State.**

2d Clause.—Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the **Classification of Senators.**

1. The apportionment is made as soon as practicable after each enumeration of the inhabitants is completed. The ratio based on the census of 1790, was one Representative for every 33,000 persons. The ratio according to the census of 1860, is one for every 127,316 persons.

2. The presiding officer is called the speaker. The other officers of the House, alluded to, are clerk, sergeant-at-arms, door-keeper, and postmaster.

3. That is to say, to declare unfit for duty, any civil officer of the United States. This clause gives the Representatives of the people the right to inspect, inquire into, and supervise the several departments of the Government, from the President down.

4. This gives perfect equality to the States, in one portion of the legislative branch of the Government. The small States of Rhode Island and Delaware have as much power in the National Senate as the large ones of New York and Ohio.

QUESTIONS.—SEC. II. *3d Clause.* How many inhabitants, at least, are required for one representative? What shall each State have? What number of representatives respectively were the States then in the Union entitled to? Of how many members, consequently, did the first House of Representatives consist? Recite the *4th Clause.* How are vacancies in the representation of a State to be filled? Recite the *5th Clause.* Who shall choose the officers of the House of Representatives?

SEC. III. Recite the *1st Clause.* Of whom shall the Senate be composed? By whom are the Senators chosen, and for what space of time? How many votes is each Senator entitled to?

expiration of the second year, of the second class at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year;[1] and if vacancies happen by resignation, or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any State, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

www.libtool.com.cn

3d Clause.—No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States,[2] and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

Qualification of Senators.

4th Clause.—The Vice-President of the United States shall be president of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.[3]

Presiding officer of the Senate.

5th Clause.—The Senate shall choose their other officers,[4] and also a president pro tempore, in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

6th Clause.—The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments:[5] When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the chief-justice[6] shall preside: and no person shall be

Senate, a court for trial of impeachments.

1. This is a wise provision. It leaves representatives of the people in that branch, at all times, familiar with the legislation thereof, and therefore more efficient than if an entirely new delegation should be chosen at the end of six years.

2. This was to allow a foreign-born citizen to make himself familiar with our institutions, before he should be eligible to a seat in that highest legislative hall.

3. He is not a representative of any State. By this arrangement, the equality of the States is preserved.

4. Secretary, clerk, sergeant-at-arms, door-keeper, and postmaster.

5. Note 3, page 301. The House of Representatives, it will be observed, impeach the alleged offender, that is to say, are his accusers, and the Senate constitutes the court wherein he is tried.

6. Verse 2, page 196.

QUESTIONS.—SEC. III. *2d Clause.* Recite the *2d Clause.* Into how many classes were the Senators at first divided? In what order were their seats vacated? What proportion of Senators are chosen every second year? Under what conditions may the Executive or Governor of a State fill a vacancy in the Senate? How long may a Senator so appointed fill the office? How shall the vacancy then be filled? Recite the *3d Clause.* At what age is a person eligible to be a Senator? How long must he have been a citizen of the United States? What is required concerning his residence? What are the three requisites of a Senator? Recite the *4th Clause.* Who shall be the President of the Senate? When may he vote? Recite the *5th Clause.* What officers shall the Senate choose? What officers may they choose *pro tempore*, or for the time being, and under what conditions? Recite the *6th Clause.* What sole power has the Senate? What sole power is given to the House of Representatives by the 5th Clause, Section II., Article I., of the Constitution? Under what conditions shall the Senate sit for the trial of impeachment? When shall the Chief-Justice of the United States preside in the Senate?

convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

7th Clause.—Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust or profit under the United States: but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment and punishment, according to law.[1]

Judgment, in case of conviction.

SECTION IV.

1st Clause.—The times, places and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives, shall be prescribed in each State by the legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.[2]

Elections of Senators and Representatives.

2d Clause.—The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.[3]

Meeting of Congress.

SECTION V.

1st Clause.—Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may ad-

Organisation of Congress.

1. This was a modification of the British Constitution, giving greater exclusive jurisdiction to the National Judiciary. (Verse 2, page 196.) In Great Britain, the House of Commons accuses, and the House of Lords (answering to our Senate) tries the offender. The latter is also invested with power to punish in every form known to the laws, by ordering the infliction of fines, imprisonments, forfeiture of goods, banishment, and death.

2. This provision was to prevent the mischief that might arise at a time of intense party excitement, when the very existence of the National Congress might be at the mercy of the State legislatures. The place of choosing the Senators is where the State legislature shall be in session at the time.

3. This secured an annual meeting of the National legislature beyond the control of State legislation. The second, or last session of every Congress (note 1, page 300,) expires at twelve o'clock at noon on the 4th of March.

QUESTIONS.—SEC. III. *6th Clause.* What proportion of the Senate shall be necessary to a conviction? Recite the *7th Clause.* In cases of impeachment, how far may judgment extend? To what is the convicted person further liable?

SEC. IV. Recite the *1st Clause.* What prescription is allowed to each State legislature in regard to elections for members of the Congress? What may the Congress do in the matter? Recite the *2d Clause.* How often and at what time shall the Congress assemble? How may a different day be appointed?

SEC V. Recite the *1st Clause.* Of what may each House of Congress be the judge?

journ from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner, and under such penalties as each house may provide.

Rules of proceeding.

2d Clause.—Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

Journal of Congress.

3d Clause.—Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same,[1] excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy,[2] and the yeas and nays of the members of either house on any question shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.[3]

Adjournment of Congress.

4th Clause.—Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.[4]

SECTION VI.

Compensation and privileges of members.

1st Clause.—The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States.[5] They shall in all cases, except treason, felony and breach of the peace, be privileged from

1. The object is to preserve, for the use of the sovereign people, and make public for their benefit, every act of Congress.

2. There are occasions when the public good requires secret legislation, and a withholding from the people a knowledge of measures discussed and adopted in Congress, as in a time of war, of insurrection, or of very important diplomatic negotiations.

3. The object of this is to make a permanent record of the votes of members, so that the constituents of each may know their action on important questions. It is a salutary regulation.

4. This is to prevent a majority, in either House, from interrupting, for more than three days, the legislation of Congress.

5. Formerly the members were paid a certain amount per day, with a specified amount for each mile traveled in going to and returning from the National capital. The present compensation is six thousand dollars for each Congress, or three thousand for each session, with mileage.

QUESTIONS.—SEC. V. *1st Clause.* What proportion shall constitute a quorum to do business? What power is given to a smaller number? What power is given these concerning absent members? Recite the *2d Clause.* What powers are given each House over its rules of proceedings? What power is given to each for enforcing its own rules? Recite the *3d Clause.* What is required of each House concerning its proceedings? What discretionary power is given to each House concerning its journals? When shall the yeas and nays in each House be entered on the journal? Recite the *4th Clause.* What requirement is made concerning the adjournment of either House? How are they restricted as to the place to which either may adjourn?

SEC. VI. Recite the *1st Clause.* What provision is made for the compensation of the members of Congress? What privileges are members of Congress entitled to?

arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.[1]

www.libtool.com.cn

2d Clause.—No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States, shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.[2]

Plurality of offices prohibited.

SECTION VII.

1st Clause.—All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments as on other bills.[3]

Bills, how originated.

2d Clause.—Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of the United States. If he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his objections to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it.[4] If after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass

How bills become laws.

1. This was to prevent the interruption of their duties, during the session of Congress, and to give them perfect freedom of speech.

2. This serves as a check to the increase of the power of the executive over the legislative department of the Government, by the means of appointment to office. It prevents wide spread political corruption. A person holding an office, when elected to Congress, is compelled to resign it before he can take his seat.

3. The members of the House of Representatives are more immediately elected by the people, and are supposed to better understand the wishes and wants of their constituents, than those of the Senate. The Senate, being the representative of the equality of the States, stands as a check to legislation that might impose too heavy taxation on the smaller States.

4. This power is given to the President to arrest hasty or unconstitutional legislation, and to operate as a check on the encroachment on the rights and powers of one department over another, by legislation. It is not absolute, as the context shows, as it may be set aside by a vote of two-thirds of the members of the Senate and House of Reprentatives, who passed it.

QUESTIONS.—SEC. VI. *1st Clause.* What are the exceptions? How is freedom in speech and debate secured to members of Congress? Recite the *2d Clause.* How are members of Congress restricted concerning the holding of civil offices? What will prevent a person being a member of Congress?

SEC. VII Recite the *1st Clause.* In which House of Congress shall revenue bills originate? What may the Senate do? Recite the *2d Clause.* What shall be done with a bill after it has passed both Houses of Congress? What must the President do with it? What shall the House to which the bill may be returned with the President's objections or *veto* do?

the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays; and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively.[1] If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

www.libiool.com.cn

Approval and veto powers of the President.

3d Clause.—Every order, resolution, or vote to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.[2]

SECTION VIII.

Powers vested in Congress.

1st Clause.—The Congress shall have power to lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;[3]

1. Note 3, page 304.

2. This requirement is made that Congress may not pass, with the name of order, resolution, or vote, what, as a bill, the President has already *vetoed*, as his method of returning a bill, with his objections, is called.

3. The power of Congress to *lay and collect duties*, etc., for national purposes, extends to the District of Columbia, and to the Territories of the United States, as well as to the States; but Congress is not bound to extend a direct tax to the District and Territories. The stipulation that the taxes, etc., shall be uniform throughout the United States, is to prevent favors being shown to one State or section of the Republic, and not to another.

QUESTIONS.—SEC. VII. *2d Clause.* When shall the bill be sent to the other House? What shall accompany the bill? What shall the other House do? If the bill shall be approved by two-thirds of both Houses, what then? How shall the votes of the Houses be determined, in such cases? What shall be entered in the journals? Under what other conditions may a bill become a law? What is the exception? Recite the *3d Clause.* What must be done with every order, resolution, and vote, requiring the concurrence of both Houses, before they shall take effect? What is the exception? How may such orders, resolutions, and votes be made effective, notwithstanding the President's veto?

SEC. VIII. Recite the *1st Clause.* What powers are given to the Congress concerning taxes, duties, imposts, excises, debts and the common defense of the United States? What is said about the uniformity of duties, imposts, and excises?

2d Clause.—To borrow money on the credit of the United States;[1]

3d Clause.—To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes;[2]

4th Clause.—To establish an uniform rule of naturalization,[3] and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States;[4]

5th Clause.—To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures;[5]

6th Clause.—To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States;

7th Clause.—To establish post-offices and post-roads;

8th Clause.—To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times, to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries;[6]

9th Clause.—To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court;[7]

10th Clause.—To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offenses against the law of nations;[8]

---

1. This was to enable the Government to provide for its expenses at a time of domestic insurrection or a foreign war, when the sources of revenue by taxation and impost, might be obstructed.

2. This power was lacking, under the *Articles of Confederation* (verse 2, page 150). It is one of the most important powers delegated by the people to their representatives, for it involves national development and prosperity.

3. The power of naturalization was possessed by each State under the Confederation. There was such want of uniformity of laws on the subject, that confusion was already manifested, when the people, by the Constitution, vested the power exclusively in Congress. Thus a State is prohibited from discouraging emigration, or casting hinderances in the way of obtaining citizenship. By a recent decision of the attorney-general of the Republic, every person born within its borders is entitled to the rights of citizenship. It is a birth-right.

4. Since the adoption of the Constitution of the United States, a State has authority to pass a bankrupt law, provided such law does not impair the obligations of contracts within the meaning of the Constitution (art. i., sec. 10), and provided there be no act of Congress in force to establish a uniform system of bankruptcy conflicting with such law.

5. This was to insure uniformity in the metallic currency of the Republic, and of weights and measures, for the benefit of the people in commercial operations.

6. The first copy-right law was enacted in 1790, on the petition of David Ramsay, the historian, and others. A copy-right, or patent-right to an invention, is given for a specified time. A copy-right is granted for 28 years, and a renewal for 14 years. Patents are granted for 17 years, without the right of extension.

7. Verse 2, page 196.

8. Congress has power to provide for the punishment of offenses committed by persons on board of an American ship, wherever that ship may be.

QUESTIONS.—SEC. VIII. What power is given to Congress by the *2d Clause*? What power is given to Congress by the *3d Clause*? What power is given to Congress by the *4th Clause*? What power is given to Congress by the *5th Clause*? What power is given to Congress by the *6th Clause*? What power is given to Congress by the *7th Clause*? What power is given to Congress by the *8th Clause*? What power is given to Congress by the *9th Clause*? What power is given to Congress by the *10th Clause*?

11*th Clause.*—To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water;

12*th Clause.*—To raise and support armies, but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years;

www.libtool.com.cn

13*th Clause.*—To provide and maintain a navy;

14*th Clause.*—To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces;

15*th Clause.*—To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections and repel invasions;

16*th Clause.*—To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively, the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;[1]

17*th Clause.*—To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the government of the United States,[2] and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dockyards, and other needful buildings;—And

18*th Clause.*—To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

1. Clauses 11 to 16 inclusive, define the war powers of the Government, such as granting licenses to privateers (note 5, page 228), raising and supporting armed forces on land and sea, calling out the militia, etc. See Article II. of the Amendments to this Constitution. These powers, used by the hand of an efficient and judicious Executive, are quite sufficient. The President cannot exercise any of them, until the power is given him by Congress, when he is bound by his oath to take care that all the laws shall be executed.

2. Congress has authority to impose a direct tax on the District of Columbia (note 3, page 306), in proportion to the census directed by the Constitution to be taken.

QUESTIONS.—SEC. VIII. What power is given to Congress by the 11*th Clause*? What power is given to Congress by the 12*th Clause*? What power is given to Congress by the 13*th Clause*? What power is given to Congress by the 14*th Clause*? What power is given to Congress by the 15*th Clause*? What power is given to Congress by the 16*th Clause*? What is reserved to the States respectively? What power is given to Congress by the 17*th Clause*? What power is given to Congress by the 18*th Clause*?

SECTION IX.

1*st Clause.*—The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.[1]

Immigrants, how admitted.

2*d Clause.*—The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.[2]

Habeas Corpus.

3*d Clause.*—No bill of attainder[3] or ex post facto law[4] shall be passed.

Attainder.

4*th Clause.*—No capitation, or other direct, tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.[5]

Taxes.

5*th Clause.*—No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State.

6*th Clause.*—No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another: nor shall vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.[6]

Regulations regarding duties.

1. The object of this clause was to end the slave-trade, or the importation of negroes from Africa, to become slaves in the United States, after the first of January, 1808. The Articles of Confederation allowed any State to continue the traffic indefinitely, for the States were independent of each other, and the organic law was silent on the subject. The importation of slaves after the beginning of 1808, was prohibited under severe penalties by the Act of March 2, 1807. Acts on the subject have since been passed by Congress from time to time. That of 1820 declared the foreign slave-trade to be piracy. In July, 1862, Congress made provisions for carrying into effect a treaty with Great Brittain for the suppression of the slave-trade. A domestic slave-trade was kept up until the beginning of the Civil War, in 1861. It was Virginia's largest source of revenue.

2. This is a writ for delivering a person from false imprisonment, or for removing a person from one court to another. The act of suspending the privilege of the writ must be done by the Executive, in the cases specified, under the authority of an Act of Congress.

3. A deprivation of power to inherit or transmit property, a loss of civil rights, etc.

4. Declaring an act criminal or penal, which was innocent when committed.

5. This was to secure uniformity in taxes laid on persons or on lands.

6. To secure free trade between the States, that one might not have an advantage over another, was the object of these two clauses.

QUESTIONS.—SEC. IX. Recite the 1*st Clause*. What restrictions were imposed upon Congress concerning the migration or importation of certain persons, meaning slaves, from Africa or elsewhere? What was the limit of that restriction? What tax or duty might be laid? Recite the 2*d Clause*. What is said concerning the suspension of the privilege of the writ of *habeas corpus*? What does the 3*d Clause* prohibit? What is said in the 4*th Clause* about taxation? What does the 5*th Clause* prohibit concerning exportation from any State? What does the 6*th Clause* provide concerning the commerce between the States?

7th Clause.—No money shall be draw from the treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.[1]

Money, how drawn.

www.libtool.com.cn

8th Clause.—No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States: And no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.[2]

Titles of nobility prohibited.

SECTION X.

1st Clause.—No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, ex post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

Powers of States defined.

2d Clause.—No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any impost or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress.

3d Clause.—No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops, or ships-of-war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State,

1. This gives to Congress the control of the money belonging to the Republic, and places it beyond the reach of the Executive.

2. This was to secure equality of rights and privileges among the citizens, and to check the bad effects of foreign influences in the form of aristocratic distinctions.

QUESTIONS.—SEC. IX. What is provided in the *7th Clause* in relation to the drawing of money from the Treasury, and a statement and account of receipts and expenditures? Recite the *8th Clause*. What is said concerning titles of nobility? What restrictions concerning favors from foreigners are laid upon National officers?

SEC. X. What restrictions are laid upon each State by the *1st Clause*? What restrictions are laid upon each State by the *2d Clause*? What restrictions are laid upon each State by the *3d Clause*?

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY

or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.[1]

www.libtool.com.cn

ARTICLE II.

SECTION 1.

Executive power, in whom vested.

1st Clause.—The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America.[2] He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be elected, as follows:

Presidential electors.

2d Clause.—Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress: but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.[3]

---

1. By this section the people of the several States who, in conventions, ratified the National Constitution invested the General Government with the supreme attributes of sovereignty exclusively, while reserving to themselves, or their respective commonwealths, the powers peculiar to the municipal authority of a State, which are essential to the regulation of its internal affairs, and the preservation of its domestic institutions from interference by another State, or by the National Government in a time of domestic tranquillity. The National Government is hereby empowered to act for the people of the whole Republic as a nation. Having no superior, it is sovereign. See Story's *Commentaries on the Constitution*, chapter XXXV.

2. The Executive is a coördinate but not coequal branch of the Government with the legislative, for he is the agent provided in the Constitution for executing the laws of a superior, the Congress or legislature.

3. This clause was followed by another, defining the method of choosing a President and Vice-President of the United States. It was afterward annulled, and Article XII. of the Amendments to this Constitution was substituted for it. Originally the electors voted by ballot, for two persons, one of whom, at least, should not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves. The one who received the highest number of votes was declared to be President, and the one receiving the next highest number was declared to be Vice-President. For an example, see verse 4, page 202, and explanatory foot-note number 1.

QUESTIONS.—ART. II. *Executive Department.* SEC. I. Recite the *1st Clause.* In whom is the executive power of the Republic vested? What is the term of office of the President and Vice-President? Recite the *2d Clause.* What shall each State do? What shall be the number of electors? Who may not be an elector?

Now turn to the Twelfth Amendment of the Constitution, on page 324. Where shall the electors meet? How shall they vote? What restriction is made? How shall their ballots be made out? What lists shall they make? What shall they do with them? What shall the President of the Senate do? Who shall be declared the President under certain conditions? What are those conditions? When no choice shall be made by the electors, by whom is the President chosen? From how many and what candidates must the House of Representatives choose a President? How shall the votes be taken? What shall constitute a quorum? What is necessary to a choice? In the event of the House not choosing a President before the 4th of March following, who shall act as President? How shall the Vice-President be chosen? In the event of no choice by the electors, how shall he be chosen? Under what conditions may the Senate make the choice? What is said about the eligibility of a person for Vice-President?

3d Clause.—The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.[1]

Time of choosing electors.

www.ibook.com.cn

4th Clause.—No person except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States, at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years resident within the United States.

Qualifications of the President.

5th Clause.—In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President,[2] and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the President and Vice-President, declaring what officer shall then act as President, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.[3]

Resort in case of his disability.

6th Clause.—The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services, a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.[4]

Salary of the President.

1. See Amendments to the Constitution, Article XII. By an Act passed in 1845 (January 23), the electors must be chosen, in each State, on the Tuesday next after the first Monday in the month of November of the year in which they are to be elected. In the preceding portion of this history, when the election of a President is spoken of, it is meant that electors favorable to such candidates were chosen at that time.

2. For examples, see verse 2, page 243, and verse 3, page 255.

3. Provision has been made for the President of the Senate, for the time being, or if there shall be no such officer, the Speaker of the House of Representatives, shall perform the executive functions.

4. The salary of the President was fixed by the first Congress at $25,000 a year, and that of the Vice-President at $8,000, and such they are at present. The salary for each entire term was so fixed, that the executive might be independent of the legislative department for it.

QUESTIONS.—Recite the *3d Clause* of Section I., Article II. What may Congress determine concerning electors? What is said about the day on which electors shall vote? Recite the *4th Clause*. What is said about the birth-place of a person being eligible for the office of President? What shall be his age, at least, and the time of his residence in the United States? Recite the *5th Clause*. On whom shall the office of President devolve, in the event of the death or disability of that officer? What power is given to Congress for filling the places of President and Vice-President? Recite the *6th Clause*. What is said concerning the President's compensation? What restrictions are laid upon him? What does the *7th Clause* declare that the President shall do?

7th Clause.—Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:—

Oath of Office.

"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will to the best of my ability, preserve, protect and defend the Constitution of the United States."

www.libtool.com.cn

SECTION II.

1st Clause.—The President shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States;[1] he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices,[2] and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offenses against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.[3]

Duties of the President.

2d Clause.—He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law:[4] but the Congress may by law vest

His power to make treaties, appoint ambassadors, judges, etc.

1. This was to insure unity and efficiency in action, when foreign war or domestic insurrection should call for the services of the army and navy. His large powers as Executive are directed by constitutional provisions. He is the arm of the nation to execute its bidding.

2. Verse 2, page 196.

3. It is presumed that the Executive is above the personal, local, or sectional influences that might be brought to bear, in these cases, on the courts or on legislative bodies. The Executive, according to a decision of the Supreme Court, has power to grant a pardon before trial or conviction. See Brightley's *Analytical Digest of the Laws of the United States*, page 7, note (*e*).

4. The President is presumed to be more fully informed concerning the foreign relations of the Republic, and the fitness of men for the highest offices. The Senate represents the legislative department of the Government in treaty-making and the appointment of high officers, and is a check on the Executive against any encroachments on the rights of Congress in the matter.

QUESTIONS.—SEC. II. Recite the *1st Clause*. Of what, and under what circumstances, shall the President be a commander-in-chief? What may he require of the officers of the executive departments? What powers are given him concerning reprieves and pardons? What is the exception? What power is given to the President by the *2d Clause*? What proviso is made? What officers of the government shall he nominate, and, by and with the advice of the Senate, appoint? What may the Congress do concerning appointments?

the appointment of such inferior officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

3d Clause.—The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.[1]

May fill vacancies.

www.hbook.com.cn

SECTION III.

He shall from time to time give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient;[2] he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them,[3] and in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers;[4] he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

Power to convene Congress.

SECTION IV.

The President, Vice-President and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.[5]

How officers may be removed.

---

1. This limitation to executive appointments is to prevent the President from neutralizing the action of the Senate as a coördinate power.
2. It is the practice of the President to submit to Congress, at the opening of each session, a statement of national affairs. This is called his Annual Message. Washington and John Adams read their messages in person to the assembled Congress. Jefferson first sent his message to them, by his private secretary. That practice is still kept up.
3. The President, with his better information concerning national affairs, can best judge when an extraordinary session of Congress may be necessary.
4. He may also refuse to receive them, and thereby annul or prevent diplomatic relations between the United States and any country.
5. See note 5, page 302.

QUESTIONS.—SEC. II. Recite the *3d Clause*. What power is given to the President for filling vacancies? What is the duration of such commissions?

SEC. III. What information is the President required to give to the Congress? What recommendations shall he make? What may he do on extraordinary occasions? When may the President adjourn the Congress? What is his duty respecting ambassadors? What is his duty concerning the execution of the laws, and the commissioning of government officers?

SEC. IV. For what crimes may all civil officers of the Government be removed, and by what method?

ARTICLE III.

SECTION I.

www.libtool.com.cn

The judicial power of the United States, shall be vested in one supreme court,[1] and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services, a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

Judicial power, how vested.

SECTION II.

1*st Clause.*—The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority;—to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls;—to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction;—to controversies to which the United States shall be a party;—to controversies between two or more States;—between a State and citizens of another State;—between citizens of different States;[2]—between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States, and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens or subjects.

To what cases it extends.

2*d Clause.*—In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public

1. Verse 2, page 196. This section provides that the Supreme Court shall be a coördinate branch of the National Government, yet independent of and distinct from both the legislative and executive departments. The powers of the National Government, it will be seen, are threefold, namely, *legislative*, *judicial*, and *executive*. The first enacts laws; the second interprets them, and the third enforces them. The Supreme Court consists of one chief-justice and several associate justices, who hold an annual session at the national capital, commencing on the day when Congress meets—first Wednesday in December.

2. A citizen of the District of Columbia (verse 3, page 196) is not a citizen of a State, within the meaning of this Constitution. The District is under the immediate control of Congress, and has neither a legislature or governor.

QUESTIONS. ART. III. *Judicial Department.* SEC. I. In what body or bodies is the judicial power of the Republic vested? By what tenure do the judges hold their offices? What is said about compensation for their services?

SEC. II. Recite the 1*st Clause.* How many subjects are named, in which the United States courts have jurisdiction? Name the 1st? Name the 2d? Name the 3d? Name the 4th? Name the 5th? Name the 6th? Name the 7th? Name the 8th? Name the 9th?

ministers and consuls, and those in which a State shall be party, the supreme court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the supreme court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

Jurisdiction of the Supreme Court.

www.lifetool.com.cn

3*d Clause.*—The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment,[1] shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.[2]

Rules respecting trials.

SECTION III.

1*st Clause.*—Treason against the United States, shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort.[3]

Treason defined.

2*d Clause.*—No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

3*d Clause.*—The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture except during the life of the person attainted.[4]

How punished.

---

1. Note 5, page 302.
2. See Amendments to the Constitution, Articles V., VI., VII., VIII.
3. At the trial of Aaron Burr (verse 4, page 295), Chief-Justice Marshall said "Any combination to subvert by force the Government of the United States; violently to dismember the Union; to compel a change in the administration, to coerce the repeal or adoption of a general law, is *a conspiracy to levy war.* And if conspiracy be carried into effect by the actual employment of force, by the embodying and assembling of men for the purpose of executing the treasonable design which was previously conceived, it amounts to levying war."
4. See note 3, page 309. The limit as to forfeiture applies only to the real estate of the criminal, which, at his death, must be restored to his heirs or assigns. The dower right of his wife also remains untouched. See Kent's *Commentaries on American Law*, ii. 464. This is more humane than the English law of treason. It does not punish the innocent wife and children of a criminal on account of his crimes.

QUESTIONS.—SEC. II. Recite the 2*d Clause.* In what cases shall the Supreme Court have original jurisdiction? What is its jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, in all the other cases mentioned? What may be exceptions? Recite the 2*d Clause.* By whom shall all crimes be tried? What is the exception? Where shall such trials be held? What may the Congress direct?

SEC. III. Recite the 1*st Clause.* In what does treason consist? Recite the 2*d Clause.* What is required to convict a person of treason? Recite the 3*d Clause.* What power is given to Congress in the matter of treason? How are the consequences of attainder of treason limited?

ARTICLE IV.

SECTION I.

www.libtool.com.cn

Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State.[1] And the Congress may by general laws prescribe the manner in which such acts, records and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.[2]

Rights of States to public faith, defined.

SECTION II.

1st Clause.—The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States.[3]

Privileges of citizens.

2d Clause.—A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.[4]

Executive requisition.

3d Clause.—No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or

Law regulating service or labor.

---

1. A judgment of a State court has the same credit, validity, and effect, in every other court within the United States, which it had in the court where it was rendered; and whatever pleas would be good to a suit thereon in such State, and none others, can be pleaded in any other court within the United States.

2. On the 26th of May, 1790, Congress, by act, gave effect to this section.

3. This is a recognition of nationality—the supreme rights of the people as citizens of the United States. It decrees the right to all fundamental privileges and immunities which any State grants to its citizens, excepting those granted to corporations, or conferred by special local legislation. It is intended to secure and perpetuate a friendly intercourse throughout the Republic. It sets aside the erroneous assumption that national citizenship is subordinate to State citizenship.

4. This is to aid the claims of justice, by preventing one portion of the Republic becoming an asylum for the criminals of another portion.

QUESTIONS.—SEC. I. Recite this section. How are the public acts of the several States to be treated in each State? What may Congress do in relation to them?

SEC. II. What does the *1st Clause* declare concerning the privileges and immunities of citizens? Recite the *2d Clause*. Who shall be delivered up for removal from one State to another, on the demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled? Where shall he be removed to? What does the *3d Clause* declare about fugitives from service or labor, meaning slaves, and apprentices bound by indentures?

labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.[1]

SECTION III.

www.libtool.com.cn

1*st Clause.*—New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union;[2] but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.[3]

New States, how formed and admitted.

2*d Clause.*—The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular State.[4]

Power of Congress over public lands.

SECTION IV.

The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government,[5] and shall protect each of them against invasion, and on

Republican government guaranteed.

1. This is the clause of the Constitution, on which is based the provisions of the Fugitive Slave Law of 1850. See note 3, page 255. It applies to runaway slaves and apprentices. Congress gave effect to it by an act on the 12th of February, 1793, and another on the 18th of September, 1850. At the time when the Constitution was framed, slavery existed in all the States of the Union, excepting Massachusetts.

2. The Congress is not compelled to admit a new State. It is left to the option of that body, whether any new State shall be admitted.

3. States have been admitted in three ways: 1. By joint action of the Congress and a State, by which a portion of a State has been made a separate commonwealth, as in the case of Vermont, Kentucky, and Maine. 2. By an act of Congress, creating a State directly from a Territory of the United States, as in the case of Tennessee. 3. By a joint resolution of Congress and a foreign state, such State may be admitted, as in the case of Texas.

4. This provides for the establishment, under the authority of Congress, of Territorial governments, which is the first step toward the formation of a State or States. The first government of the kind was that of the North-western Territory (note 6, page 197), established in 1787, and adopted by Congress under the National Constitution on the 7th of August, 1789.

5. No other form of government could exist within the United States, without peril to the Republic. By this section, the National Government is empowered to assume positive sovereignty as to the fundamental character of the State government, leaving to the State territorial sovereignty, as to its municipal laws and domestic institutions, so long as they are consonant with a republican form of government.

QUESTIONS.—SEC. III. Recite the 1*st Clause*. By whom may new States be admitted into the Union? What restrictions are applied in the formation of new States? Recite the 2*d Clause*. What power is given to Congress by this clause? What construction, as to claims, is not to be put upon any part of the Constitution?

SEC. IV. Recite this section? What shall the United States, or National Government, guarantee to every State? In what two ways is the National Government bound to protect each State?

application of the legislature, or of the executive (when the legislature cannot be convened), against domestic violence.[1]

ARTICLE V.

www.libtool.com.cn

The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the legislatures of two-thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress,[2] provided that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article;[3] and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.[4]

Constitution, how to be amended.

ARTICLE VI.

1*st Clause.*—All debts contracted and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the confederation.[5]

Validity of debts recognized.

1. The States are prohibited from keeping troops as a standing army, or ships of war, in time of peace, individually; therefore it is made the duty of the sovereign power of the United States to protect the States against invasion and "domestic violence," such as treason, rebellion, or insurrection. When these exist in any State, it is the duty of the National Government to use its power in suppressing it.

2. This article effectually checks any fundamental change in the Constitution, excepting in a way which recognizes the source of all true sovereignty, the PEOPLE, unless it be by sudden and violent revolution.

3. See section ix., page 309. The first clause relates to the slave-trade. As the proviso in this article is no longer operative, those portions of the Constitution are subject to amendment. In the spring of 1864, the Senate of the United States passed a proposition for an amendment of the Constitution, by which slavery should be forever excluded from the Republic. The House of Representatives refused to agree to it.

4. Here, again, is a provision for securing the smaller States from encroachments on their rights by the larger States.

5. This was for the security to the creditors of the United States, of the payment of debts incurred during the Revolution. It was a national and positive recognition of the postulate in international law, that "Debts due to foreigners, and obligations to other creditors, survive a change in the Government."

QUESTIONS.—ARTICLE V. Of what does this article treat? In what ways may amendments to the Constitution be proposed? How shall amendments be made a part of the Constitution? What restrictions were imposed concerning the 1*st* and 2*d Clauses* of the ninth section of the first article? Recite those clauses. Have those restrictions any force now? Why not? What is said of the equality of the States in the Senate?

ARTICLE VI. Recite the 1*st Clause*. What is said of the validity of former public debts?

2d Clause.—This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof; and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, anything in the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.[1]

Supreme law of the land defined.

3d Clause.—The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation, to support this Constitution;[2] but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.[3]

Oath, of whom required, and for what.

ARTICLE VII.

The ratification of the conventions of nine States, shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.[4]

Ratification.

Done in convention by the unanimous consent of the States present the seventeenth day of September in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven and of the independence of the United States of America the

1. A clear and positive declaration of the supremacy of the National Government, resistance to which is treason.

2. State officers are bound to support the Constitution because they may be required to perform some service in giving effect to that "supreme law of the land," in other words, of the Republic.

3. This is to prevent a political union of church and state, which is always prejudicial to the best interests of both.

4. See verse 9, page 194. The conventions of the people in the several States ratified the Constitution in the following order: *Delaware*, December 7, 1787; *Pennsylvania*, December 12, 1787; *New Jersey*, December 18, 1787; *Georgia*, January 2, 1788; *Connecticut*, January 9, 1788; *Massachusetts*, February 6, 1788; *Maryland*, April 28, 1788; *South Carolina*, May 23, 1788; *New Hampshire*, June 21, 1788; *Virginia*, June 26, 1788; *New York*, July 26, 1788; *North Carolina*, November 21, 1789; *Rhode Island*, May 29, 1790.

QUESTIONS.—ARTICLE VI. Recite the *2d Clause*. What is declared to be the supreme law of the land? By what are the judges in every State bound? Recite the *3d Clause*. Who shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support the National Constitution? What is said concerning religious tests?

ARTICLE VII. What does this article declare? Where, and by whose consent, and when was the National Constitution formed? Who were the witnesses to it?

twelfth.[1] In witness whereof we have hereunto subscribed our names.[2]

AMENDMENTS.[3]

www.ibtool.com.cn

At the first session of the First Congress, begun and held in the city of New York, on Wednesday, the 4th of March, 1789, many amendments to the National Constitution were offered for consideration. The Congress proposed ten of them to the legislatures of the several States. These were ratified by the constitutional number of State legislatures[4] in the middle of December, 1791. Another was proposed on the 5th of March, 1794,[5] and still another on the 12th of December, 1803.[6] These were duly ratified, and became, with the other ten, a part of the National Constitution. A thirteenth amendment was proposed by Congress on the 1st of May, 1810, but has never been ratified.[7] The following are the amendments:

---

1. Verse 10, page 143.
2. The following are the names of the deputies representing the several States, and the order in which they signed their names:

GEORGE WASHINGTON,
President, and Deputy from Virginia.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.
JOHN LANGDON,
NICHOLAS GILMAN.

MASSACHUSETTS.
NATHANIEL GORHAM,
RUFUS KING.

CONNECTICUT.
WILLIAM SAM'L JOHNSON.
ROGER SHERMAN.

NEW YORK.
ALEXANDER HAMILTON.

NEW JERSEY.
WILLIAM LIVINGSTON,
DAVID BREARLEY,
WILLIAM PATERSON,
JONATHAN DAYTON.

PENNSYLVANIA.
BENJAMIN FRANKLIN,
THOMAS MIFFLIN,
ROBERT MORRIS,
THOMAS CLYMER,
THOMAS FITZ SIMONS,
JARED INGERSOLL,
JAMES WILSON,
GOUVERNEUR MORRIS.

DELAWARE.
GEORGE READ,
GUNNING BEDFORD, JR.,
JOHN DICKINSON,
RICHARD BASSETT,
JACOB BROOM.

MARYLAND.
JAMES MCHENRY,
DANIEL OF ST. THOS. JENIFER,
DANIEL CARROLL.

VIRGINIA.
JOHN BLAIR,
JAMES MADISON, JR.

NORTH CAROLINA.
WILLIAM BLOUNT,
RICHARD DOBBS SPAIGHT,
HUGH WILLIAMSON.

SOUTH CAROLINA.
JOHN RUTLEDGE,
CHARLES C. PINCKNEY,
CHARLES PINCKNEY,
PIERCE BUTLER.

GEORGIA.
WILLIAM FEW,
ABRAHAM BALDWIN.

Attest: WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary.*

3. The Amendments to the Constitution, excepting the Twelfth, are authoritative declarations securing to the people and the several States, certain rights, against any possible encroachments of the Congress. They form a Bill of Rights.
4. Article VII., page 320. 5. Ratified in 1798. 6. Ratified in 1804.
7. It was to prohibit citizens of the United States accepting, claiming, receiving, or re-

---

QUESTIONS.—AMENDMENTS. When and where were amendments to the Constitution offered to the Congress? What did the Congress do? How many amendments were ratified? What others were proposed, and when were they ratified? What can you tell about a thirteenth amendment?

ARTICLE I.

Freedom in religion and speech, and of the press.

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for redress of grievances.[1]

www.libtool.com.cn

ARTICLE II.

Militia.

A well-regulated militia, being necessary to the security of a free state, the right of the people to keep and bear arms, shall not be infringed.

ARTICLE III.

Soldiers.

No soldier shall, in time of peace be quartered in any house, without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.[2]

ARTICLE IV.

Search warrants.

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.[3]

---

taining any title of nobility or honor, or any present, pension, office, or emolument of any kind whatever, from any "person, King, Prince, or foreign Power," without the consent of Congress, under the penalty of disfranchisement, or ceasing to be a citizen of the United States.

1. This article gives an additional assurance of religious freedom. See clause 3d, Article VI., of the Constitution. It also secures the invaluable right of the freedom of speech and of the press; and the privilege for the people of making their grievances known to the National Government.

2. This is to protect citizens, in time of peace, from the oppressions of military power, and to secure uniformity in the rules for quartering soldiers upon citizens in time of war.

3. The security of the private citizen from an infringement of his rights by public officers, herein guaranteed, is in accordance with the English maxim that "Every man's house is his castle." See verse 4, page 116.

QUESTIONS.—ARTICLE I. Recite the first amendment to the Constitution? What subjects are the Congress prohibited from making laws upon?

ARTICLE II. Recite this article? What is declared concerning the militia, and rights of the people?

ARTICLE III. Recite this Article.

ARTICLE IV. Recite this article? What right are the people to be secure in? What is declared concerning warrants?

ARTICLE V.

No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service in time of war and public danger;[1] nor shall any person be subject for the same offense to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor to be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.[2]

Capital crimes.

www.libtool.com.cn

ARTICLE VI.

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defense.

Trial by jury.

ARTICLE VII.

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise reëxamined in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of common law.

Suits at common law.

---

1. In such cases offenses are within the jurisdiction of the military and naval courts martial.

2. These prohibitions do not relate to State governments, but to the National Government, according to a decision of the Supreme Court. The several States make their own laws on these subjects.

QUESTIONS.—ARTICLE V. What is declared concerning the holding of persons to answer for alleged offenses? What is said about a second trial for the same offense? In what case shall a person not be compelled to testify in court? What guarantee of protection is promised? When only can private property be taken for the public use?

ARTICLE VI. What right shall a person accused of crime enjoy? What right as to the witnesses that may appear against him? What method is secured to him for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and the obtaining of counsel?

ARTICLE VII. In what civil cases shall the right of trial by jury be preserved? In what way shall the reëxamination of facts tried by a jury, be made?

ARTICLE VIII.

Bail.

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.[1]

www.hbtool.com.cn

ARTICLE IX.

Certain rights defined.

The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.[2]

ARTICLE X.

Rights reserved.

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.[3]

ARTICLE XI.

Judicial power limited.

The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.[4]

ARTICLE XII.

Amendment respecting the election of President and Vice-President.

The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as

1. These several amendments concerning the operations of law through the instrumentality of the courts, are all intended to secure the citizen against the arbitrary exercise of power on the part of the judiciary.

2. That is to say, because certain rights and powers of the people are not enumerated in the Constitution, it is not to be inferred that they are denied.

3. This is simply an enunciation of the broad democratic principle, that the people are the true sources of all political power.

4. This is to limit the judicial power of the National courts. Previous to the adoption of this amendment, the Supreme Court had decided that the power of the National judiciary extended to suits brought by or against a State of the Republic. Now, no person has a right to commence a personal suit against a State, in the Supreme Court of the United States, for the recovery of property seized and sold by a State.

QUESTIONS.—ARTICLE VIII. What does this article declare?
ARTICLE IX. What does this article declare?
ARTICLE X. What does this article declare?
ARTICLE XI. What does this article declare?

President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the Government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate;—the President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted;—the person having the greatest number of votes for President, shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President, shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed, and if no person have a majority, then, from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majorty of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.[1]

1. This amendment is a substitute for the 3d clause, Section II., of Article I. of the Constitution. See note 3, page 311.

QUESTIONS.—ARTICLE XII. What does this article declare? In what connection have we considered the Twelfth Article of the Constitution, which relates to the election of President and Vice-President of the United States?

THE NEW STATES.

1. When the National Government was established, in 1789, under the Constitution that we have just been considering,[1] the number of the States in the Union was thirteen; namely, New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia. These were the colonies whose people were united in the Revolutionary struggle, and who, for a national purpose, collectively declared themselves independent of Great Britain.[2] In each of these colonies State Governments were formed in 1776 and 1777, on the recommendation of the Continental Congress, and these formed the Old Confederation, or League of States,[3] which ended on the 4th of March, 1789, when the Nation commenced its career under the new Constitution.

2. Stability being given to the Government, private enterprise began its work. A stream of emigrants flowed into the rich wilderness west of the Alleghany mountains,[4] and materials for new States were speedily organized. From that time the Republic has grown rapidly, and the number of States has increased from thirteen to thirty-five, while no less than nine organized and immense Territories—each large enough to make several States—are preparing to ask for admission into the Union.

3. Lying east of Lake Champlain was a territory called the New Hampshire Grants. It was claimed by New York and New Hampshire. It was finally organized into an independent State, with the name of VERMONT, and was admitted into the Union on the 4th of March, 1791. At the same time, a vast region west of the Alleghany mountains, forming a part of Virginia, was becoming populous, and a portion of it was admitted as a State on the 1st of June, 1792, with the name of KENTUCKY. Four years later, a large territory south of Kentucky was ceded to the United States by North Carolina, and on the 1st of June, 1796, it was admitted into the Union as a State, with the name of TENNESSEE.

1. Page 299. 2. Verse 10, page 143. 3. Verse 2, page 150. 4. Note 6, page 98.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the number of the States when the National Constitution was formed? Name them. What were they? What had they done? 2. What was the consequence of Government stability? What have you to say about emigration? What about the growth of the Republic? 3. What can you tell about Vermont? What can you tell about Kentucky? What can you tell about Tennessee?

4. In the year 1802, OHIO was admitted as a State. It was formed from a part of the North-western Territory,[1] which Virginia and Connecticut had ceded to the United States. Ohio was organized as a separate government in May, 1800, and admitted as a State on the 29th of November, 1802. Ten years elapsed before another State took its place in the cluster of the great commonwealths that form our Republic. That State was LOUISIANA, formed of a portion of the magnificent domain purchased from France in April, 1803.[2] It was admitted as a State on the 8th of April, 1812.

5. INDIANA was formed out of a portion of the North-western Territory. A Territorial government was first organized in May, 1800, simultaneously with that of Ohio, when it included Illinois. It was divided in 1809, and the western portion became the Territory of Illinois. It was admitted as a State on the 11th of December, 1816. One year later, MISSISSIPPI was added to the Union. It was formed from territory ceded to the United States by South Carolina and Georgia, and was admitted as a State on the 10th of December, 1817.

6. The Territory of ILLINOIS, separated from Indiana in 1809, steadily increased in population, and on the 3d of December, 1818, was admitted as a State. ALABAMA followed, a year later. It had been a part of the Territory of Mississippi. It was organized as a separate government in the spring of 1817, and was admitted as a State on the 14th of December, 1819. Up to that time, MAINE had been a District of Massachusetts, and under the jurisdiction of that State, when, with the concurrence of that commonwealth, its people asked for its admission as a State. The request was granted by Congress on the 15th of March, 1820.

7. MISSOURI was a part of the domain of Louisiana, and was under the jurisdiction of the governor and judges of the Indiana Territory. It was formed into a separate Territory in 1812. In 1819 it was divided, and the southern part was organized into the Territory of Arkansas. Missouri was admitted to the Union as a

1. Note 6, page 197. 2. Verse 1, page 203.

QUESTIONS.—4. What can you tell about Ohio? What can you tell about Louisiana? 5. What can you tell about Indiana? What can you tell about Mississippi? 6. What can you tell about Illinois? What can you tell about Alabama? What can you tell about Maine? 7. What can you tell about Missouri?

State on the 10th of August, 1821.[1] And now, for the space of fifteen years, no new State was added to the Union. Then, on the 15th of June, 1836, ARKANSAS was admitted, and the growth again commenced. MICHIGAN, formerly a part of the Territory of Indiana,[2] was given a separate government in 1805, and on the 26th of January, 1837, it was admitted into the Union as a State.

8. The Spanish Territory of the Floridas was ceded to the United States in 1819.[3] They were called *East* and *West* Florida. They were made one Territory in 1823; and on the 3d of March, 1845, it was admitted as a State, with the name of FLORIDA. On the 19th of December, 1845, TEXAS, which for nine years had been a sovereign state and independent republic,[4] was admitted into the Union as a State, by the joint action of the legislature of each National Government. In the resolution of annexation, it was provided that four new States might be formed of the territory of the State of Texas, and admitted into the Union.

9. In 1836, a Territory named Wisconsin was formed of a part of the Michigan Territory,[5] and in 1838 a portion of that domain, lying west of the Mississippi, was formed into a separate Territory. It was admitted into the Union as a State, with the name of IOWA, on the 28th of December, 1846. WISCONSIN was admitted as a State on the 29th of May, 1848; and, three years and a half later, a part of the territory on the Pacific ocean, acquired by conquest and purchase from Mexico, was organized as a State, and admitted into the Union as such on the 9th of September, 1850, with the name of CALIFORNIA.[6]

10. Eight years now passed by before another State was added, when, on the 11th of May, 1858, a part of the ancient domain of Louisiana, lying on the Mississippi river, was admitted as a State, with the beautiful Indian name of MINNESOTA. A few months later, another portion of that magnificent domain of Louisiana, lying on the Pacific ocean, which had been organized into a Territory in 1848, was admitted [February 14, 1859] as a

1. Verse 4, page 233. 2. Verse 5, page 327. 3. Verse 3, page 232.
4. Note 2, page 245. 5. Verse 7, page 327. 6. Verses 2 and 8, page 255.

QUESTIONS.—7. What can you tell about Arkansas and Michigan? 8. What can you tell about Florida? What can you tell about Texas? 9. What can you tell about Iowa? What can you tell about Wisconsin? What can you tell about California? 10. What can you tell about Minnesota?

State, with the title of OREGON. Still another portion of ancient Louisiana was erected into a Territory in 1854, with the name of KANSAS, and was admitted as a State on the 29th of January, 1861.

www.libtool.com.cn

11. The Civil War produced a new State by the division of VIRGINIA. It was admitted into the Union as the thirty-fifth State. The people of that part of the State which lies chiefly between the Alleghany mountains and the Ohio river, and contained, in 1860, a population of about three hundred and thirty-five thousand souls, were generally loyal to the National Government when the rebellion broke out in 1861. They met in convention at Wheeling, in June of that year, and organized a State government. A constitution was adopted in convention, in November following, and was ratified by the people in May, 1862. WEST VIRGINIA was admitted into the Union as a State on the 20th of June, 1863, by the authority of an act of Congress, passed on the 31st of December, 1862. On the 31st of October, 1864, NEVADA was admitted as a State (the thirty-sixth) by the proclamation of the President.

12. There are eight organized Territories belonging to the Republic, in which regular governments have been established by acts of Congress, passed respectively at the following dates: For the admission of *New Mexico* and *Utah*, September 9, 1850; *Washington*, March 2, 1853; *Nebraska*, May 30, 1854; *Colorado* and *Dakota*, March 9, 1861; *Arizona*, February 24, 1863, and *Idaho*,[1] March 3, 1863. *The District of Columbia*, lying on the Potomac,[2] is the seat of the National Government, and is under the immediate control of Congress.[3]

1. Pronounced I-dah'-o. 2. Verse 3, page 196.
3. Note 2, page 315. The District originally comprised territory on each side of the Potomac, ten miles square, which was ceded to the United States by the States of Maryland and Virginia. The portion on the Maryland side, on which the city of Washington was situated, was a county named Washington, and that on the Virginia side was a county named Alexandria. On the 9th of July, 1846, Alexandria county was retroceded to Virginia, and the area of the District was diminished by so much.

QUESTIONS.—10. What can you tell about Oregon? What can you tell about Kansas? 11. What can you tell about West Virginia? 12. How many organized Territories are there within the domain of this Republic? Name them, and give the dates of their respective organization. What can you tell about the District of Columbia?

www.libtool.com.cn

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

THE ABORIGINES.

PAGE

1. WHAT can you tell about the people found in America by the Europeans? 5
2. What can you tell about their language and physical character? 5
3. What were their dwellings, implements, food, dress, money, and records? 6
4. What were their pursuits, weapons, and dealings with prisoners? and what was the method of peace-making, and the condition of the women? 7
5. What can you tell about their funerals and burials? . . 7
6. What was their religion? 8
7. What was their government, and what appears to be their destiny? 9

DISCOVERIES.

1. What can you tell about alleged discoveries by Northmen? . 10
2. What circumstances kept Western Europe from the commerce of the East? 11
3. What can you tell about the movements of Columbus? . . 11
4. Who aided Columbus? and how? 12
5. Give an account of his first exploring voyage. . . . 12
6. How came this continent to be called AMERICA? 13
7. What settlements and what other discoveries were made by the Spaniards? 14
8. What occurred in Florida and Mexico? 14
9. What can you tell about De Soto's expedition? 15
10. What can you tell about the king of England, and the expedition of the Cabots? 15
11. Give an account of other voyages and discoveries by Sebastian Cabot. 16
12. What can you tell of a voyage and discoveries by Verazzani? . 16
13. Give an account of the first voyage and the discoveries of Cartier. 16
14. Give an account of the second voyage and the discoveries of Cartier. 17
15. What important religious movement took place in France? . 17
16. What emigration from France occurred? 18
17. What can you tell about the attempts at settlement by the Huguenots, and their misfortunes? 18
18. What now occurred in England? 18

PAGE
19. What can you tell about Raleigh's efforts and expeditions? . 19
20. What did Gosnold do? 20
21. What can you tell about Captains Pring and Weymouth? . 20
22. What can you tell of De Mont's expeditions, and the discovery of Lake Champlain? 21
23. What did English merchants and mariners do? 21
24. What can you tell about the voyages and discoveries of Henry Hudson? 22
25. What great movements now took place? 22

SETTLEMENTS.

1. What is a settlement, and what a colony? 24
2. What territory was embraced in North and South Virginia? . 24
3. What can you tell about social changes, and the charters given by King James? 25
4. What did the London Company do in 1606? 25
5. What can you tell of Newport's voyage? 26
6. What eminent men were with Newport? 26
7. What occurred in Virginia? 26
8. Give an account of distress in Virginia, and how it was relieved. 27
9. Tell the story of Captain Smith and Pocahontas 27
10. What kind of immigrants afterward came to Virginia, and what was the aspect of the colony? 28
11. What became of a new governor and commissioners? . . 29
12. What sad events occurred in Virginia? 29
13. What can you tell about a change in affairs in Virginia? and the marriage of Pocahontas? 30
14. What political change occurred? 31
15. What occurred on the Hudson river and the New England coasts? 32
16. What can you tell about the founding of the province of New Netherland by the Dutch? 33
17. What can you tell about Captain Smith, New England, and the Council of Plymouth? 34
18. What was the origin of the Puritans? 34
19. Give an account of the Pilgrims in Holland, and their emigration to America. 35
20. What can you tell about the voyage of the Mayflower, and the Pilgrims in Massachusetts? 36
21. When and how was New Hampshire settled? 37
22. Under what circumstances was Maryland settled, and by whom? 38
23. Give an account of the first settlement, and the character of the charter. 38
24. Give an account of the discovery of the Connecticut river, and the beginning of settlements in the valley. . . . 39
25. Give an account of emigrations to the Connecticut valley. . 40
26. How and by whom were the settlers troubled? 40
27. What can you tell about a war between the New Englanders and the Indians? 41
28. How came the New Haven settlement to be formed, and in what manner? 41

PAGE
29. Can you give an account of the settlement of Rhode Island? . 42
30. What can you tell about a charter for Rhode Island? . . 43
31. What can you relate concerning settlements on the Delaware river? 43
32. What happened to the settlers? 44
33. What did the Dutch do in New Jersey? 44
34. Give an account of the settlement of New Jersey. . . 44
35. What can you tell about the Quakers, and the movements of their founder? 45
36. What did William Penn do? 45
37. Give an account of the founding of Pennsylvania, and Penn's visit to the colony. 45
38. Can you give an account of the first settlements in North Carolina? 46
39. Relate the circumstances of the settlement of South Carolina. . 47
40. What can you tell about the efforts of Oglethorpe, and the settlement of Georgia? 48
41. Give an account of what occurred on the site of Savannah. . 49

COLONIES.

1. What have you to say about the colonial history of the United States? 50
2. Which colony was first founded? 50
3. What have you to say about government and society in Virginia? 51
4. Give an account of emigration to Virginia, and troubles with the Indians. 51
5. What change in government took place? 52
6. What can you tell about the growth of democracy in Virginia? . 53
7. Give an account of "Bacon's Rebellion" in Virginia. . 53, 54, 55
8. What can you tell about the Plymouth settlement in Massachusetts? 56
9. How did the colony suffer? 56
10. Give an account of other settlements, and a change in ownership. 56
11. Give an account of the settlement of a colony under John Endicot. 57
12. Relate the circumstances of the settlement in which John Winthrop was engaged. 58
13. What have you to say about the Puritans in New England? . 58
14. What caused the banishment of Roger Williams? . . . 59
15. What can you tell about emigration from England, and attempts to stop it? 60
16. What confederacy was formed? 60
17. What have you to say about Massachusetts? 60
18. Give an account of Quakers in Massachusetts. . . . 61
19. What occurred in Massachusetts on the restoration of monarchy in England? 61
20. Give an account of the origin of King Philip's War. . . 62
21. Relate the principal occurrences of that war. . . 62, 63
22. Tell how the king of England attempted to control the people of Massachusetts. 64
23. What can you tell about Governor Andros in Massachusetts? . 64

PAGE
24. Relate the principal occurrences of King William's War. . . 65
25. What change of government took place in New England? . 66
26. What can you tell about a delusion in Massachusetts? . . 66
27. Give an account of Queen Anne's War. 67
28. What was the condition of affairs in Massachusetts for thirty years after Queen Anne's War? 67
29. Give an account of King George's War, and the capture of Louisburg? 68
30. What happened to a French fleet? 69
31. What did Peter Minuit do in New Netherland? 69
32. What was the origin of the manorial estates in New York? . 70
33. What can you tell about Governor Kieft? 70
34. How was the germ of representative government in New Netherland produced? 70
35. Give an account of war between the Dutch and Indians. . . 71
36. What can you tell about Peter Stuyvesant? 71
37. How did the people of New Netherland trouble him with their democratic notions? 72
38. What can you tell about the change from Dutch to English rule in New Netherland? 73
39. What further changes took place there? 73
40. Give an account of affairs in New York under Leisler, Bellemont, and Hyde? 74
41. How was the liberty of the press vindicated in New York, and by whom? 74
42. What can you tell about the establishment of government in Maryland? 75
43. What of Indian wars and insurrection there? 75
44. What have you to say about toleration, and a change of government in Maryland? 76
45. Give an account of civil war in Maryland. 76
46. What other troubles ensued? 77
47. When was Maryland made a royal province? 77
48. What can you tell about the establishment of government in Connecticut? 78
49. Give an account of the New Haven colony, and the consolidation of that and the Connecticut colony. 78
50. What can you tell about the preservation of the Connecticut charter? 79
51. Give an account of Governor Fletcher's visit to Hartford. . 80
52. What can you tell about Rhode Island and its charter? . . 81
53. When did New Jersey become a colony? 82
54. Give an account of its settlement, and the organization of government in New Jersey. 82
55. What can you tell about the Quakers there? . . . 82, 83
56. When were East and West Jersey united, and made a royal province? 83
57. When did Pennsylvania become a colony? 84
58. Give an account of Penn in America, the founding of Philadelphia, and a representative government. 84
59. Give an account of Penn's difficulties in England and America. . 85

PAGE
60. What can you tell about a government framed for the Carolinas? 85
61. What did the people do? 86
62. What have you to say about Sothel, and other governors? . 86
63. What can you tell about the Southern Carolina colony, and Charleston? 86
64. When was Charleston founded? 87
65. What immigrants came to South Carolina? 87
66. What can you tell of a revolution in South Carolina, a change in North Carolina, and one governor for both of the colonies? 87, 88
67. What can you tell about immigrants who settled in North Carolina? 88
68. Give an account of an Indian war in that colony. . . . 88
69. Give an account of hostilities between the South Carolinians and the Spaniards. 89, 90
70. Give an account of another revolution in South Carolina. . 90
71. When did South Carolina become a royal province? and when were the two provinces united? 90, 91
72. Give an account of the colonists in Georgia. 91
73. What did Oglethorpe do? 91
74. What military events occurred? 92
75. How many English colonies were planted in America? . . 93
76. Give an account of the character of the several people who formed the colonies. 93
77. What have you to say about agriculture and commerce? . . 94
78. What about education? 95

FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

1. What was the comparative strength of the English and French in America in 1750? 96
2. What movements caused hostile feelings between them? . . 96
3. Give an account of young Washington's mission to the French military commander. 96
4. What can you tell about the origin and progress of a military expedition against the French, and its results? . . 97
5. What can you tell about Colonel Fry, Washington, and Fort Necessity? 97
6. Describe an important civil event at Albany in 1754. . . 98
7. What was the plan of campaign for 1755, and who were to be chief actors in it? 99
8. Give an account of Braddock's movements, and his defeat. . 99
9. What can you tell about Johnston's expedition? 100
10. What occurred near and at Lake George? 101
11. When and by whom was war declared? 101
12. What can you tell about the capture of Oswego by Montcalm? . 102
13. What have you to say about Lord Loudon? 103
14. Give an account of the siege and capture of Fort William Henry. 103
15. What have you to say about the American colonists, in their relations to military commanders, and William Pitt? . . 104
16. Give an account of the capture of Louisburg in 1758. . . 105
17. Give an account of Abercrombie's expedition against Ticonderoga. 105, 106

PAGE
18. What did Colonel Bradstreet do? 106
19. Can you give an account of an expedition against Fort du Quesne, and its results? 107
20. What magnificent scheme of conquest did Pitt conceive? . 107
21. What was the plan of campaign for 1759? 108
22. Give an account of expeditions against Ticonderoga, Crown Point, and Niagara? 108
23. Give an account of Wolfe's expedition, and the capture of Quebec. 109, 110
24. What did the French attempt to do? 110
25. When, where, and how was the death-blow to French dominion in America given? 111
26. What can you tell about the Treaty of 1763? 111
27. Can you name the battles, and their dates, of the French and Indian War? 111
28. What can you tell about Indian hostilities, and Pontiac's doings? 113

THE REVOLUTION.

1. What have we observed in the course of our studies? . . 115
2. What have you to say about the American colonists? . . 115
3. What principle were the colonists ready to contend for? . . 116
4. What can you tell about the cause of the emptiness of the British treasury, and the necessity for taxation? . . . 116
5. Give an account of Writs of Assistance, and the commotion they gave rise to. 116
6. What can you tell about a Stamp Act? 117
7. What movements did the Stamp Act cause? . . 118, 119
8. How did some of these movements affect British merchants? . 119
9. Give an account of the repeal of the Stamp Act. . . . 120
10. What measures of the British Parliament offended the Americans? 120
11. What did the Assembly of Massachusetts do? . . . 121
12. What occurred in Boston? 121
13. What can you tell about troops in Boston? . . . 122
14. How did the home Government attempt to punish Massachusetts? 122
15. What can you tell about a mob and a massacre at Boston? . 123
16. What can you tell about the administration of law and justice in Massachusetts? 123
17. What can you tell about the levying of a tax on tea? . . 124
18. What can you tell about the Regulators in North Carolina? . 124
19. What did Lord North and the East India Company do about tea? 125
20. Give an account of the destruction of tea in Boston harbor. . 125
21. Give an account of the Boston Port Bill, and other measures obnoxious to the Americans. 126
22. What were their effects in America? 126
23. How did the people of Massachusetts behave? . . . 127
24. What can you tell about a Continental Congress? . . . 127
25. What preparations were made for war? 128
26. Give an account of the formation of a Provincial Congress in Massachusetts. 129

PAGE
27. Give an account of the skirmishes at Lexington and Concord, and retreat of the British. 130
28. What did the Americans do? 130
29. Give an account of the capture of forts on Lake Champlain. . 131
30. What can you tell about American and British troops at Boston? 131
31. What can you tell about fortifications cast up by the Americans? 132
32. Give an account of the battle of Bunker Hill. . . 132, 133
33. What can you tell about the progress of revolution in Virginia? 134
34. What can you tell about the doings of the Second Continental Congress? 135
35. When and where did Washington take command of the Continental army? 135
36. What can you tell about an expedition to invade Canada? . 135
37. Give an account of Ethan Allen, and the capture of St. Johns and Montreal. 136
38. Give an account of Arnold's expedition through the Wilderness. 136
39. Give an account of the siege of Quebec, and the results. . . 137
40. What can you tell about operations in Lower Virginia? . . 138
41. What have you to say about the hoisting of the Union flag, and the doings of Congress? 139
42. What did the British Parliament do? 139
43. Give an account of the siege and capture of Boston by the Americans. 140
44. What can you tell about the movements of the Americans at New York? 140
45. Give an account of events at Charleston. 141
46. What was done in Congress concerning a declaration of the independence of the colonies? 142
47. What can you tell about the Declaration of Independence? . 143
48. Give an account of the British at New York, and a battle on Long island. 143, 144, 145
49. What can you tell about Washington in New York, and the retreat of the Americans from Brooklyn? 145
50. What movement did the American army next make? . . . 146
51. What did the British do? 146
52. Give an account of the battle at White Plains, and capture of Fort Washington. 147
53. Give an account of Washington's retreat across New Jersey, and defeat of the enemy at Trenton. 148
54. What did Congress and Washington now do? 149
55. What have you to say about the British Parliament and American Congress? 150
56. What did Silas Deane do? 150
57. Give an account of Washington's escape from Trenton, and the battle of Princeton. 151
58. What did the American army do in New Jersey in the spring of 1777? 152
59. Give an account of Tryon's movements. 153
60. What bold acts did the Americans perform? 153
61. Give an account of the movements of the armies of Washington and Howe, in the summer of 1777. 154

PAGE
62. What can you tell of a battle on the Brandywine? . . 154
63. What can you tell about the battle at Germantown, and the British in Philadelphia? 155, 156
64. Give an account of events on Lake Champlain and its vicinity, and the movements of the Americans under St. Clair and Schuyler. 157
65. What occurred near Bennington, and at Fort Schuyler, in August, 1777? 158
66. Give an account of the battles at Bemis's Height and Saratoga, and the surrender of Burgoyne. 159
67. What were the effects of the victory by the Americans? . . 159
68. What did the British do in the Hudson Highlands, and above? . 160
69. Give an account of the American army at Valley Forge, and events there. 161
70. What caused the British to leave Philadelphia? . . . 162
71. Give an account of Washington's pursuit, and the battle of Monmouth. 162
72. What have you to say about the American army and French fleet at Rhode Island? 163
73. What terrible event occurred in the Wyoming valley in the summer of 1778? 164
74. What can you tell of the British and French forces, and events at Savannah? 165
75. What was the American plan of campaign for 1779? . . . 166
76. Give an account of events in Georgia, near the Savannah river, in the winter of 1779. 167
77. What can you tell of an attempt to take Charleston in 1779? . 168
78. Give an account of the capture of Stoney Pont by the British. . 168
79. Give an account of the capture of Stoney Point by the Americans. 169
80. What can you tell about Daniel Boone? 169
81. Give an account of Sullivan's chastisement of the Indians. . 170
82. Give an account of the siege of Savannah. . . . 171
83. What did John Paul Jones do? 172
84. What can you tell about the siege of Charleston, in 1780? 174, 175
85. What partisans appeared in the South? 176
86. What can you tell about their exploits in South Carolina and Georgia? 176
87. What can you tell about a battle near Camden, and defeat of the Americans, in August, 1780? 177
88. What can you tell about Cornwallis, and the battle at King's Mountain? 178
89. What aid for the Americans came from abroad? 179
90. What have you to say about General Arnold and his treason? 179, 180
91. Give an account of mutinies, and the patriotism of some of the mutineers. 181
92. How did Arnold do service for the British? 182
93. What have you to say about Greene in South Carolina, and the battle of the Cowpens? 182
94. Give an account of Greene's retreat. 183
95. Give an account of the battle of Guilford. . . . 184

PAGE
96. What have you to say about Greene, and a battle near Camden? 184
97. Give an account of the siege of Ninety-Six, and the capture of Augusta. 185
98. Give an account of the battle of Eutaw Springs. . . . 186
99. Give an account of Cornwallis in Virginia. . . . 186
100. What can you tell about the American and French armies on the Hudson, and their march southward? 187
101. Give an account of the siege of Yorktown, and surrender of Cornwallis. 189
102. Can you give an account of the closing events of the Revolution? 190
103. What can you tell about the treaty of peace? . . . 191
104. Give the names and dates of the principal battles of the Revolution. 191
105. Give an account of movements at Newburg, and Washington's surrender of his commission. 192
106. What can you tell about the Articles of Confederation, and the formation and adoption of a National Constitution? . 193, 194

THE NATION.

1. What can you tell about the first President of the United States? 195
2. Give an account of the organization of the National Government. 196
3. What have you to say about the public debt, the seat of the National Government, the public credit, a bank and mint? . 197
4. Give an account of troubles with the Indians. . . . 198
5. How and when were two distinct political parties formed? . 198
6. What can you tell about Genet, the representative of French democracy? 199
7. What insurrection occurred in Pennsylvania, and how was it put down? 199
8. What have you to say about Jay's treaty, the Algerine pirates, and Washington's Administration? 200
9. Give an account of troubles with the French. . . 201, 202
10. What additions were made to the Republic during Jefferson's Administration? 203
11. Give an account of war with the piratical powers on the Mediterranean Sea. 204
12. What can you tell about the movements of Aaron Burr in the region of the Mississippi? 205
13. When and by whom was navigation by steam introduced? . 206
14. Relate how the hostilities between Napoleon and Great Britain injured the world's commerce. 206
15. Tell what caused ill feeling in the United States against Great Britain. 207
16. Give an account of the affair of the *Chesapeake* and *Leopard*. . 207
17. What caused an embargo? 208
18. What can you tell about the relations between the United States and Great Britain at the beginning of Madison's Administration? 209
19. Tell the story of the *President* and *Little Belt*. . . . 209
20. What circumstances brought on the battle of Tippecanoe? . 210

PAGE
31. When was war against Great Britain proclaimed? . . 210
32. What preparations for war were made? 211
33. Give an account of Hull's campaign, and the surrender of Detroit. 211
34. What stirring events occurred at Queenstown? . . . 212
35. Give an account of naval operations in 1812. . . . 213
36. What was the plan of campaign for 1813? . . . 214
37. What was done by the people of the West? . . . 214
38. Give an account of the attacks on Forts Meigs and Stephenson. 215
39. Relate the story of Perry's victory. 216
40. Give an account of Harrison's invasion of Canada. . . 216
41. What occurred at York or Toronto, and Fort George, in April and May, 1813? 217
42. Give an account of events at Sackett's Harbor, and at Williamsburg, in Canada. 218
43. What occurred on the Niagara frontier? 218
44. Give an account of war with the Creek Indians. . . . 219
45. What have you to say about Lawrence and the *Chesapeake*? . 220
46. What naval operations took place in 1813? . . . 221
47. Give an account of British marauders on Chesapeake bay. . 221
48. What took place in the spring of 1814? 222
49. Give an account of the battles at Chippewa, Niagara Falls, and Fort Erie. 223
50. Give an account of land and naval movements near Plattsburg, and the battles there. 224
51. What were the circumstances of the capture and destruction of Washington city, and the repulse of the British at Baltimore? 226
52. Relate the story of the defense of New Orleans, and the defeat of the British there. 227
53. Give an account of naval operations in 1814. . . . 228
54. Recite the names and dates of the principal battles during the Second War for Independence. 229
55. What can you tell about war with Algiers, and Decatur's successes? 230, 231
56. What can you tell about the breaking up of piratical establishments? 232
57. What did Jackson do in Florida, and what was the result? . 232
58. Give an account of slavery agitation, and the Missouri Compromise. 233
59. For what was John Quincy Adams's Administration remarkable? 234
60. What remarkable coincidence was observed in 1826? . . 235
61. Give an account of the *American System*, and the discontent of cotton growers. 235
62. Give an account of Jackson's opposition to the United States Bank, and the result. 237
63. Give an account of rebellious movements in South Carolina, and the result. 238
64. Relate the story of the war with the Seminole Indians. . 239, 240
65. What marked the beginning of Van Buren's Administration? . 241
66. What can you tell about disputes on the borders? . . 242
67. What have you to say about President Harrison, his death, and his successor? 243

PAGE
58. What was done at the extraordinary session of Congress in 1841? 244
59. What difficulties occurred in Rhode Island? 245
60. What important questions occupied the early attention of President Polk? 246
61. What hostile movements toward Mexico were made? . . 247
62. Give an account of the battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma? 247, 248
63. Describe the plan of campaign made by the Secretary of War and General Scott. 248
64. Give an account of Taylor's invasion of Mexico. . . . 248
65. Give an account of the battle of Buena Vista. . . . 249
66. Relate how California was wrested from Mexico. . . . 250
67. Give an account of Doniphan's movements. . . . 250
68. Relate how Vera Cruz was taken, and the Mexicans defeated at the Sierra Gordo. 251
69. Give an account of Scott's triumphant march toward the Mexican capital. 252
70. What can you tell about battles near the city of Mexico, and the final capture of the capital? 252, 253
71. What can you tell about a treaty? 253
72. Name the principal battles in the war with Mexico, and the dates of their occurrence. 254
73. Give an account of the admission of California as a State, and the Compromise of 1850. 255
74. What have you to say about fillibustering movements? . . 257
75. For what was Pierce's Administration distinguished? . . 258
76. How was the Missouri Compromise virtually repealed? . . 258
77. What have you to say about Kansas, also about the Atlantic Telegraph cable? 259
78. How was slavery agitation aroused at the beginning of Mr. Buchanan's Administration? 260
79. What did Chief-Justice Taney declare? 260
80. Give an account of John Brown's raid, and its results. . . 261
81. What have you to say about Mr. Lincoln, and his opponents in the Slave States? 262
82. Give an account of the formation of a confederacy in the Slave States. 263
83. Who formed it, and what did they do? 263
84. What occurred at Charleston in the spring of 1861? . . 264
85. What did the Confederates intend to do, and how were they foiled? 265
86. Give an account of the National Army and Navy, and the doings of the conspirators. 265, 266

THE GREAT CIVIL WAR.

1. Give an account of the beginning of the great Civil War. . 266
2. What did Congress do? 266
3. What were the positions of the two principal armies in July, 1861? 267

PAGE

4. Where was the first invasion by national troops? and where the first battle? 267
5. Give an account of the first battle of Bull Run. . . . 268
6. What have you to say about the war in Missouri? . . 269
7. Give an account of the capture of Hatteras, and fighting in Western Virginia, on the Upper Potomac, in Missouri, and at Port Royal entrance. 269
8. What was the extent of the war? 270
9. What have you to say about our foreign relations? . . 270
10. Give an account of the capture of Roanoke island. . . 271
11. Give an account of the capture of Fort Donelson, and the battle of Pea Ridge. 271
12. What can you tell about the *Merrimac* and *Monitor*? . . 272
13. What can you tell about the battle of Shiloh, and capture of Island No. 10? 272
14. Give an account of the capture of Fort Pulaski, and of New Orleans. 273
15. Give an account of the capture of Norfolk, and the movements of the *Army of the Potomac* on the Peninsula. . . . 274
16. How was the *Army of Virginia* formed? 275
17. What did it do and suffer? 275
18. Give an account of an invasion of Maryland, and the surrender of Harper's Ferry. 275
19. What can you tell about battles in Maryland, and the doings of Confederate cavalry? 276
20. What did the *Army of the Potomac* afterward do in Virginia? . 276
21. What can you tell about operations in Kentucky, Tennessee, and Upper Mississippi? 277
22. What great battle did Rosecrans fight? 277
23. What can you tell of an attempt to capture Vicksburg? . . 277
24. What did Congress do? 278
25. What have you to say about the President's Emancipation Proclamation? 279
26. Give an account of the doings of the *Army of the Potomac*. . 279
27. Give an account of another invasion of Maryland and Pennsylvania, and the battle at Gettysburg. 280
28. What further have you to say of the two armies in Virginia? . 280
29. What occurred in North Carolina? 280
30. What occurred at Charleston in the summer of 1863? . . . 281
31. Give an account of operations in Louisiana under General Banks. 281
32. Give an account of the doings of Sherman and Porter in Arkansas. 282
33. Relate the story of the siege and capture of Vicksburg and Port Hudson, and the result. 283
34. What did Rosecrans do in Southeastern Tennessee? . . . 283
35. Give an account of operations near Chattanooga. 284
36. Give an account of the great battle of Chattanooga, and its advantages. 284
37. What was done in Arkansas by Steele and Blunt? . . . 285
38. What had the National armies accomplished at the close of 1863? 285
39. What have you to say about the National navy? 286
40. What did the National Congress do? 286

PAGE
41. What occurred in New York city? 287
42. What was the aspect of affairs at the beginning of 1864? . 287
43. Give an account of Sherman's invasion of Mississippi, and Seymour's invasion of Florida. 288
44. Give an account of an expedition up the Red River. . . 288
45. What have you to say about the doings of the expedition up the Red River, and its result? 289
46. What have you to say about General Steele's misfortunes, and Confederate doings at Paducah and Fort Pillow? . . 289
47. To what office was Grant promoted? 289
48. What order did he issue? 290
49. Give an account of the movements of the *Army of the Potomac* toward Richmond. 290
50. What did Butler do? and for what purpose? 291
51. What did Grant accomplish? and what was the position of the two armies early in July, 1864? 291
52. Give an account of Sherman's movements in Georgia. . . 291
53. What had he accomplished at the close of July, 1864? . . 292
54. Give an account of the destruction of the Alabama. . . 292
55. Give an account of English-Confederate pirate ships, and the destruction of the *Alabama*. 292, 293
56. What can you tell about an invasion of Maryland by the Confederates, in July, 1864? 294
57. Give an account of the doings of the Confederates in Pennsylvania and the Shenandoah valley. 294
58. Give an account of the doings of Grant near Petersburg, and the seizure of the Weldon road. 295
59. What can you tell about events in the Carolinas, Georgia and Tennessee? 296, 298, 299
60. What can you tell about events near Mobile? . . . 296
61. Give an account of events connected with the final breaking up of the Confederate armies, the death of the President, and the close of the war. . . . . 300, 301, 302.

THE CONSTITUTION.

1. Of what powers of the Government does Article I. treat? 299, 310
2. State the contents of the several sections. . . . 299, 310
3. Of what powers does Article II. treat? . . . 311, 314
4. State the contents of the several sections. . . . 311, 314
5. Of what powers does Article III. treat? . . . 315, 316
6. State the contents of the several sections. . . . 315, 316
7. Of what powers does Article IV. treat? . . . 317, 318
8. State the contents of the several sections. . . . 317, 318
9. Of what does Article V. treat? 319
10. Of what does Article VI. treat? 319
11. Of what does Article VII. treat? 320
12. How many amendments have been made to the Constitution? . 321
13. Of what do the several amendments treat? . . .

www.libtool.com.cn

SUPPLEMENT.

THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

1. The following preamble and specifications,[1] known as the Declaration of Independence,[2] accompanied the resolution of Richard Henry Lee,[3] which was adopted by Congress on the 2d day of July, 1776. This declaration was agreed to on the 4th, and the transaction is thus recorded in the Journal for that day:

2. "Agreeably to the order of the day, the Congress resolved itself into a Committee of the Whole, to take into their further consideration the Declaration; and, after some time, the President resumed the chair, and Mr. Harrison reported that the committee have agreed to a declaration, which they desired him to report. The Declaration, being read, was agreed to as follows:"

A DECLARATION OF THE REPRESENTATIVES OF THE UNITED STATES, IN CONGRESS ASSEMBLED.

When, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station, to which the laws of nature, and of nature's God, entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

3. We hold these truths to be self-evident—that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain inalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundations on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown, that mankind are more disposed to suf-

1. It must be remembered that these specific charges made against the king of Great Britain, include, in their denunciations, the government of which he was the head. Personally, George the Third was not a tyrant, but as the representative of a government, he was so.

2. Verse 10, page 143.

3. Verse 9, page 142.

fer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world.

4. He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.[1]

5. He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operations till his assent should be obtained; and, when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.[2]

6. He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the Legislature—a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.[3]

7. He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncom-

---

1. The colonial assemblies, from time to time, made enactments touching their commercial operations, the emission of a colonial currency, and concerning representatives in the Imperial Parliament, but the assent of the sovereign to these laws was withheld. After the Stamp Act excitements (verse 7, page 118), Secretary Conway informed the Americans that the tumults should be overlooked, provided the Assemblies would make provision for full compensation for all public property which had been destroyed. In complying with this demand, the Assembly of Massachusetts thought it would be "wholesome and necessary for the public good," to grant free pardon to all who had been engaged in the disturbances, and passed an act accordingly. It would have produced quiet and good feeling, but the royal assent was refused.

2. In 1764, the Assembly of New York took measures to conciliate the SIX NATIONS, and other Indian tribes. The motives of the assembly were misconstrued, representations having been made to the king that the colonies wished to make allies of the Indians, so as to increase their physical power and proportionate independence of the British crown. The monarch sent instructions to all his governors to desist from such alliances, or to suspend their operations until his assent should be given. He then "utterly neglected to attend to them." The Massachusetts Assembly passed a law in 1770 for taxing officers of the British Government in that colony. The governor was ordered to withhold his assent to such tax-bill. This was in violation of the colonial charter, and the people justly complained. The Assembly was prorogued from time to time, and laws of great importance were "utterly neglected."

3. A law was passed by Parliament in the spring of 1774, by which the popular representative system in the province of Quebec (Canada) was annulled, and officers appointed by the crown had all power as legislators, except that of levying taxes. The Canadians being Roman Catholics, were easily pacified under the new order of things, by having their religious system declared the established religion of the province. But "large districts of people" bordering on Nova Scotia felt this deprivation to be a great grievance. Their humble petitions concerning commercial regulations were unheeded, because they remonstrated against the new order of things, and Governor Carleton (verse 19, p. 136) plainly told them that they must cease their clamor about representatives, before they should have any new commercial laws. A bill for "better regulating the government in the province of Massachusetts Bay," passed that year, provided for the abridgment of the privileges of popular elections, to take the government out of the hands of the people, and to vest the nomination of judges, magistrates, and even sheriffs, in the crown. When thus deprived of "free representation in the Legislature," and the governor refused to issue warrants for the election of members of the Assembly, they called a convention of the freemen, and asked for the passage of "laws for the accommodation of large districts of people." These requests were disregarded, and they were told that no laws should be passed until they should quietly "relinquish the right of representation in the Legislature—a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only."

fortable, and distant from the repository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.[1]

8. He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.[2]

9. He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected, whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the State remaining, in the mean time, exposed to all the dangers of invasions from without, and convulsions within.[3]

10. He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose obstructing the laws for the naturalization of foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.[4]

11. He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.[5]

---

1. In consequence of the destruction of tea in Boston harbor (verse 24, p. 125) in 1778, the inhabitants of that town became the special objects of royal displeasure. The Boston Port Bill (verse 25, p. 126) was passed as a punishment. The custom house, courts, and other public operations were removed to Salem, while the public records were kept in Boston, and so well guarded by two regiments of soldiers, that the patriotic members of the colonial assembly could not have referred to them. Although compelled to meet at a place (note 3, p. 126) "distant from the repository of the public records," and in a place extremely "uncomfortable," they were *not* fatigued into compliance, but, in spite of the efforts of the governor, they elected delegates to a general congress (verse 28, p. 127), and adopted other measures for the public good.

2. When the British Government became informed of the fact that the Assembly of Massachusetts, in 1768, had issued a circular (verse 12, page 120) to other assemblies, inviting their coöperation in asserting the principle that Great Britain had no right to tax the colonists without their consent, Lord Hillsborough, the secretary for Foreign Affairs, was directed to order the governor of Massachusetts to require the Assembly of that province to rescind its obnoxious resolutions expressed in the circular. In case of their refusal to do so, the governor was ordered to dissolve them immediately. Other assemblies were warned not to imitate that of Massachusetts, and when they refused to accede to the wishes of the king, as expressed by the several royal governors, they were repeatedly dissolved. The assemblies of Virginia and North Carolina were dissolved for denying the right of the king to tax the colonies, or to remove offenders out of the country, for trial. In 1774, when the several assemblies entertained the proposition to elect delegates to a general congress (verse 28, page 127), nearly all of them were dissolved.

3. When the Assembly of New York, in 1766, refused to comply with the provisions of the Mutiny Act (verse 10, page 120), its legislative functions were suspended by royal authority (verse 11, page 120), and for several months the State remained "exposed to all the dangers of invasion from without, and convulsions within." The Assembly of Massachusetts, after its dissolution in July, 1768, was not permitted to meet again until the last Wednesday of May, 1769, and then they found the place of meeting surrounded by a military guard, with cannons pointed directly at their place of meeting. They refused to act under such tyrannical restraint, and their legislative powers "returned to the people."

4. Secret agents were sent to America soon after the accession of George the Third to the throne of England (verse 3, page 116), to spy out the condition of the colonists. A large influx of liberty-loving German emigrants was observed, and the king was advised to discourage these immigrations. Obstacles in the way of procuring lands, and otherwise, were put in the way of all emigrants, except from England, and the tendency of French Roman Catholics to settle in Maryland, was also discouraged. The British Government was jealous of the increasing power of the colonies, and the danger of having that power controlled by democratic ideas, caused the employment of restrictive measures. The easy conditions upon which actual settlers might obtain lands on the Western frontier, after the peace of 1763 (verse 43, page 111), were so changed, that toward the dawning of the Revolution, the vast solitudes west of the Alleghanies were seldom penetrated by any but the hunter from the seaboard provinces. When the War for Independence broke out, immigration had almost ceased. The king conjectured wisely, for almost the entire German population in the colonies were on the side of the patriots.

5. By an act of Parliament in 1774, the judiciary was taken from the people of Massachusetts. The judges were appointed by the king, were dependent on him for their salaries, and were subject to his will. Their salaries were paid from moneys drawn from the people by the commissioners of customs (verse 11, page 120), in the form of duties. The same act deprived them, in most cases, of the benefit of trial by jury, and the "administration of justice" was effectually obstructed. The rights for which Englishmen so manfully contended

12. He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.[1]

13. He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people and eat out their substance.[2]

14. He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our Legislatures.[3]

15. He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.[4]

16. He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitutions, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation:[5]

17. For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us;[6]

---

in 1688 (verse 16, page 55), were trampled under foot. Similar grievances concerning the courts of law existed in other colonies, and throughout the Anglo-American domain there was but a semblance of justice left. The people met in conventions, when assemblies were dissolved, and endeavored to establish "judiciary powers," but in vain, and were finally driven to rebellion.

1. As we have observed in note 5, page 345, judges were made independent of the people. Royal governors were placed in the same position. Instead of checking their tendency to petty tyranny, by having them depend upon the colonial assemblies for their salaries, these were paid out of the national treasury. Independent of the people, they had no sympathies with the people, and thus became fit instruments of oppression, and ready at all times to do the bidding of the king and his ministers. The colonial assemblies protested against the measure, and out of the excitement which it produced, grew that power of the Revolution, the committees of correspondence (verse 27, page 127). When, in 1774, Chief-Justice Oliver, of Massachusetts, declared it to be his intention to receive his salary from the crown, the assembly proceeded to impeach him, and petitioned the governor for his removal. The governor refused compliance, and great irritation ensued.

2. After the passage of the Stamp Act, stamp distributors were appointed in every considerable town. In 1766 and 1767, acts for the collection of duties created "swarms of officers," all of whom received high salaries; and when, in 1768, admiralty and vice-admiralty courts were established on a new basis, an increase in the number of officers was made. The high salaries and extensive perquisites of all of these were paid with the people's money, and thus "swarms of officers" "eat out their substance."

3. After the treaty of peace with France, in 1763 (verse 43, page 111), Great Britain left quite a large number of troops in America, and required the colonists to contribute to their support. There was no use for this standing army, except to repress the growing spirit of democracy among the colonists, and to enforce compliance with taxation laws. The presence of troops was always a cause of complaint, and when, finally, the colonists boldly opposed the unjust measures of the British Government, armies were sent hither, to awe the people into submission. It was one of those "standing armies" kept here "without the consent of the Legislature," against which the patriots at Lexington and Concord (verses 4 and 5, page 130, and Bunker Hill (verse 13, page 132), so manfully battled in 1775.

4. General Gage, commander-in-chief of the British forces in America, was appointed governor of Massachusetts, in 1774, and to put the measures of the Boston Port Bill (verse 26, page 126) into execution, he encamped several regiments of soldiers upon Boston Common. The military there, and also in New York, was made independent of, and superior to, the civil power, and this, too, in a time of peace, before the minute men (verse 1, page 128) were organized.

5. The establishment of a board of trade, to act independent of colonial legislation through its creatures (resident commissioners of customs) in the enforcement of revenue laws, was altogether foreign to the constitution of any of the colonies, and produced great indignation. The establishment of this power, and the remodeling of the admiralty courts, so as to exclude trial by jury therein, in most cases, rendered the Government fully obnoxious to the charge in the text. The people felt their degradation under such petty tyranny, and resolved to spurn it. It was effectually done in Boston, as we have seen (verse 15, page 121), and the Government, after all its bluster, was obliged to recede. In 1774, the members of the council of Massachusetts (answering to our Senate), were, by a parliamentary enactment, chosen by the king, to hold the office during his pleasure. Almost unlimited power was also given to the governor, and the people were indeed subjected to "a jurisdiction foreign to their constitution," by these creatures of royalty.

6. In 1774 seven hundred troops were landed in Boston, under cover of the cannons of British armed ships in the harbor; and early the following year, Parliament voted ten thousand men for the American service, for it saw the wave of rebellion rising high under the gale of indignation which unrighteous acts had spread over the land. The tragedies at Lexington and Concord soon followed, and at Bunker Hill the War for Independence was opened in earnest.

18. For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States;[1]

19. For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world;[2]

20. For imposing taxes on us without our consent;[3]

21. For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury;[4]

22. For transporting us beyond seas, to be tried for pretended offenses;[5]

23. For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies;[6]

24. For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the forms of our governments;[7]

---

1. In 1768, two citizens of Annapolis, in Maryland, were murdered by some marines belonging to a British armed ship. The trial was a mockery of justice, and, in the face of clear evidence against them, they were acquitted. In the difficulties with the Regulators (verse 21, page 124) in North Carolina, in 1771, some of the soldiers who had shot down citizens when standing up in defense of their rights, were tried for murder and acquitted, while Governor Tryon mercilessly hung six prisoners, who were certainly entitled to the benefits of the laws of war, if his own soldiers were.

2. The navigation laws were always oppressive in character; and in 1764, the British naval commanders, having been clothed with the authority of custom-house officers, completely broke up a profitable trade which the colonists had long enjoyed with the Spanish and French West Indies, notwithstanding it was in violation of the old navigation act of 1660, which had been almost ineffectual. Finally, Lord North concluded to punish the refractory colonists of New England, by crippling their commerce with Great Britain, Ireland, and the West Indies. Fishing on the banks of Newfoundland was also prohibited, and thus, as far as parliamentary enactments could accomplish it, their "trade with all parts of the world" was cut off.

3. In addition to the revenue taxes imposed from time to time, and attempted to be collected by means of writs of assistance (verse 4, page 116) the Stamp Act (verse 6, page 117) was passed, and duties upon paper, painters' colors, glass, tea, &c., were levied. This was the great bone of contention between the colonists and the Imperial Government. It was contention, on the one hand, for the great political truth that *taxation and representation are inseparable*, and a lust for power, and the means for replenishing an exhausted treasury, on the other. The climax of the contention was the Revolution.

4. This was especially the case, when commissioners of customs were concerned in the suit. After these functionaries were driven from Boston in 1768 (verse 15, page 121), an act was passed which placed violations of the revenue laws under the jurisdiction of the admiralty courts, where the offenders were tried by a creature of the crown, and were deprived "of the benefits of trial by jury."

5. A law of 1774 provided that any person in the province of Massachusetts, who should be accused of riot, resistance of magistrates or the officers of customs, murder, "or any other capital offense," might, at the option of the governor, be taken for trial to another colony, or transported to Great Britain for the purpose. The minister pretended that impartial justice could not be administered in Massachusetts, but the facts of Captain Preston's case (verse 19, page 123) refuted his arguments in that direction. The bill was violently opposed in Parliament, yet it became a law. It was decreed that Americans might be "transported beyond the seas, to be tried for pretended offenses," or real crimes.

6. This charge is embodied in an earlier one (verse 6, page 344) considered in note 3, page 344. The British ministry thought it prudent to take early steps to secure a footing in America, so near the scene of inevitable rebellion, as to allow them to breast, successfully, the gathering storm. The investing of a legislative council in Canada, with all the powers except levying of taxes, was a great stride toward that absolute military rule which bore sway there within eighteen months afterward. Giving up their political rights for doubtful religious privileges, made them willing slaves, and Canada remained a part of the British empire, when its sister colonies rejoiced in freedom.

7. This is a reiteration of the charge considered in note 5, page 345, and refers to the alteration of the Massachusetts charter, so as to make judges and other officers independent of the people, and subservient to the crown. The governor was empowered to remove and appoint all inferior judges, the attorney-general, provosts, marshals, and justices of the peace, and to appoint sheriffs independent of the council. As the sheriffs chose jurors, trial by jury might easily be made a mere mockery. The people had hitherto been allowed, by their charter, to select jurors; now the whole matter was placed in the hands of the creatures of Government.

25. For suspending our own Legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever;[1]

26. He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.[2]

27. He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burned our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.[3]

28. He is at this time transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries, to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny already begun, with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.[4]

29. He has constrained our fellow citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.[5]

30. He has excited domestic insurrection among us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers, the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.[6]

31. In every stage of these oppressions we have petitioned for redress in the most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.[7]

---

1. This, too, is another phase of the charge just considered. We have noticed the suppression of the Legislature of New York (verse 11, page 120), and in several cases the governors, after dissolving colonial assemblies, assumed the right to make proclamations stand in the place of statute law. Lord Dunmore assumed this right in 1775, and so did Sir James Wright, of Georgia, and Lord William Campbell, of South Carolina. They were driven from the country in consequence.

2. In his message to Parliament early in 1775, the king declared the colonists to be in a state of open rebellion, and by sending armies hither to make war upon them, he really "abdicated government," by thus declaring them "out of his protection." He sanctioned the acts of governors in employing the Indians against his subjects, and himself bargained for the employment of German hirelings. And when, yielding to the pressure of popular will, his representatives (the royal governors) fled before the indignant people, he certainly "abdicated government."

3. When naval commanders were clothed with the powers of custom-house officers, they seized many American vessels; and after the affair at Lexington and Bunker Hill, British ships of war "plundered our seas" whenever an American vessel could be found. They also "ravaged our coasts and burnt our towns." Charlestown (verse 13, page 132), Falmouth (now Portland, in Maine), and Norfolk were burnt, and Dunmore and others (verse 23, page 138) "ravaged our coasts," and "destroyed the lives of our people." And at the very time when this Declaration was being read to the assembled congress, the shattered fleet of Sir Peter Parker was sailing northward (verse 8, page 142), after an attack upon Charleston, South Carolina.

4. This charge refers to the infamous employment of German troops, known here as Hessians. See note 2, page 140.

5. An act of Parliament passed toward the close of December, 1775, authorized the capture of all American vessels, and also directed the treatment of the crews of armed vessels to be as slaves, and not as prisoners of war. They were to be enrolled for "the service of his majesty," and were thus compelled to fight for the crown, even against their own friends and countrymen. This act was loudly condemned on the floor of Parliament, as unworthy of a Christian people, and "a refinement of cruelty unknown among savage nations."

6. This was done in several instances. Governort Dunmore was charged with a design to employ the Indians against the Virginians, as early as 1774; and while ravaging the Virginia coast in 1775 and 1776, he endeavored to excite the slaves against their masters. He was also concerned with Governor Gage and others, under instructions from the British ministry, in exciting the *Shawnoese*, and other savages of the Ohio country, against the white people. Emissaries were also sent among the *Cherokees* and *Crekes* for the same purpose, and all of the tribes of the *Six Nations*, except the *Oneidas*, were found in arms with the British when war began. Thus excited, dreadful massacres occurred on the borders of the several colonies.

7. For ten long years the colonies petitioned for redress of grievances, "in the most hum-

32. Nor have we been wanting in our attentions to our British brethren.[1] We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and of consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them as we hold the rest of mankind —enemies in war—in peace, friends.

33. We, therefore, the representatives of the United States of America, in general Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare that these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as free and independent States, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and do all other acts and things which independent States may of right do. And for the support of this Declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

Such was the form and substance of the Declaration of Independence made by the representatives of the thirteen Anglo-American colonies, in 1776. They did more than declare that people independent of the British crown. They proclaimed, in justification of their act, the great birth-right to natural equality belonging to every human creature, and the inalienable rights of man as a free agent, responsible only to his Maker, from whom he received them. The doctrine put forth in that Declaration was not applied to any particular nation, people, or race, but to all mankind. They also declared the sovereignty of the people, by claiming for them the right of revolt against government whenever it becomes destructive of those natural and inalienable rights; and then proceeded to show, by accusations against the head of their own Government, as its representative, the lawfulness of their own revolt. How truthful were their accusations, and how perfectly they were justified, let the preceding pages of this little volume testify.

---

ble terms," and loyal manner. It was done by the Colonial Congress of 1765 (verse 8, page 119), and also by the Continental Congresses of 1774 (verse 29, page 127) and 1775 (verse 16, page 134). But their petitions were almost always "answered only by repeated injuries."

1. From the beginning, the colonists appealed, in the most affectionate terms, to "their British brethren." The first address, put forth by the Congress of 1774, was "To the People of Great Britain;" and the Congress of 1775 sent an affectionate appeal "To the People of Ireland."

SIGNERS OF THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

The following is a list of the members of the Continental Congress, who signed the Declaration of Independence, with the places and dates of their birth, and the time of their respective deaths.

www.libtool.com.cn

NAMES OF THE SIGNERS.	BORN AT	DELEGATE FROM	DIED.
Adams, John	Braintree, Mass., 19th Oct. 1735	Massachusetts,	4th July, 1826
Adams, Samuel	Boston, " 22d Sept. 1722	Massachusetts,	2d Oct., 1803
Bartlett, Josiah	Amesbury, " in Nov. 1729	New Hampshire,	19th May, 1795
Braxton, Carter	Newington, Va., 10th Sept. 1736	Virginia,	10th Oct., 1797
Carroll Cha's of Car'lton	Annapolis, Md., 20th Sept. 1737	Maryland,	14th Nov., 1832
Chase, Samuel	Somerset co., Md., 17th April 1741	Maryland,	19th June, 1811
Clark, Abraham	Elizabeth't'n, N.J. 15th Feb. 1726	New Jersey,	—— June, 1794
Clymer, George	Philadelphia, Penn., in 1739	Pennsylvania,	24th Jan., 1813
Ellery, William	Newport, R. I., 22d Dec. 1727	R. I. & Prov. Pl.,	15th Feb., 1820
Floyd, William	Suffolk co., N. Y., 17th Dec. 1734	New York,	4th Aug., 1821
Franklin, Benjamin	Boston, Mass., 17th Jan. 1706	Pennsylvania,	17th April, 1790
Gerry, Elbridge	Marblehead, Mass., 17th Jul. 1744	Massachusetts,	23d Nov., 1814
Gwinnet, Button	England, in 1732	Georgia,	27th May, 1777
Hall, Lyman	Connecticut, in 1731	Georgia,	—— Feb., 1790
Hancock, John	Braintree, Mass., in 1737	Massachusetts,	8th Oct., 1793
Harrison, Benjamin	Berkely, Virginia, ——	Virginia,	—— April, 1791
Hart, John	Hopewell, N. J., about 1715	New Jersey,	—— ——, 1780
Heyward, Thomas, jr.	St. Luke's, S C., in 1746	South Carolina,	—— Mar., 1809
Hewes, Joseph	Kingston, N. J., in 1730	North Carolina,	10th Nov., 1779
Hooper, William	Boston, Mass., 17th June 1742	North Carolina,	—— Oct., 1790
Hopkins, Stephen	Scituate, " 7th Mar. 1707	R. I. & Prov. Pl.,	19th July, 1785
Hopkinson, Francis	Philadelphia, Penn., in 1737	New Jersey,	9th May, 1790
Huntington, Samuel	Windham, Conn., 3d July 1732	Connecticut,	5th Jan., 1796
Jefferson, Thomas	Shadwell, Va., 13th April 1743	Virginia,	4th July, 1826
Lee, Francis Lightfoot	Stratford, " 14th Oct. 1734	Virginia,	—— April, 1797
Lee, Richard Henry	Stratford, " 20th Jan. 1732	Virginia,	19th June, 1794
Lewis, Francis	Landaff, Wales, in March 1713	New York,	30th Dec., 1803
Livingston, Philip	Albany, N. Y., 15th Jan. 1716	New York,	12th June, 1778
Lynch, Thomas, jr.	St. George's, S. C., 5th Aug. 1749	South Carolina,	lost at sea, 1779
M'Kean, Thomas	Chester co., Pa., 19th Mar. 1734	Delaware,	24th June, 1817
Middleton, Arthur	Middleton Place, S. C., in 1743	South Carolina,	1st Jan., 1787
Morris, Lewis	Morrisania, N. Y., in 1726	New York,	22d Jan., 1798
Morris, Robert	Lancashire, England, Jan. 1733	Pennsylvania,	8th May, 1806
Morton, John	Ridley, Penn., in 1724	Pennsylvania,	—— April, 1777
Nelson, Thomas, jr.	York, Virginia, 26th Dec. 1738	Virginia,	4th Jan., 1789
Paca, William	Wye-Hill, Md., 31st Oct. 1740	Maryland,	—— ——, 1799
Paine, Robert Treat	Boston, Mass., in 1731	Massachusetts,	11th May, 1814
Penn, John	Caroline co., Va., 17th May 1741	North Carolina,	—— Sept., 1788
Read, George	Cecil co., Md., in 1734	Delaware,	—— ——, 1798
Rodney, Cæsar	Dover, Delaware, in 1730	Delaware,	—— ——, 1783
Ross, George	New Castle, Del., in 1730	Pennsylvania,	—— July, 1779
Rush, Benjamin, M.D.	Byberry, Penn., 24th Dec. 1745	Pennsylvania,	19th April, 1813
Rutledge, Edward	Charleston S. C., in Nov. 1749	South Carolina,	23d Jan., 1800
Sherman, Roger	Newton, Mass., 19th April 1721	Connecticut,	23d July, 1793
Smith, James	Ireland, ——	Pennsylvania,	11th July, 1806
Stockton, Richard	Princeton, N. J., 1st Oct. 1730	New Jersey,	28th Feb., 1781
Stone, Thomas	Charles co., Md., in 1742	Maryland,	5th Oct., 1787
Taylor, George	Ireland, in 1716	Pennsylvania,	23d Feb., 1781
Thornton, Matthew	Ireland, in 1714	New Hampshire,	24th June, 1803
Walton, George	Frederick co., Va., in 1740	Georgia,	2d Feb., 1804
Whipple, William	Kittery, Maine, in 1730	New Hampshire,	28th Nov., 1785
Williams, William	Lebanon, Conn., 8th April 1731	Connecticut,	2d Aug., 1811
Wilson, James	Scotland, about 1742	Pennsylvania,	28th Aug., 1798
Witherspoon, John	Yester, Scotland, 5th Feb. 1722	New Jersey,	15th Nov., 1794
Wolcott, Oliver	Windsor, Conn., 26th Nov. 1726	Connecticut,	1st Dec., 1797
Wythe, George	Elizabeth city co., Va., 1726	Virginia,	8th June, 1806

Among the signers of the Declaration of Independence, were men engaged in almost every vocation. There were twenty-four *lawyers;* fourteen *farmers,* or men devoted chiefly to agriculture; nine *merchants;* four *physicians;* one gospel *minister,* and three who were educated for that profession, but chose other avocations; and one *manufacturer.* A large portion of them lived to the age of three score and ten years. Three of them were over 90 years of age when they died; ten over 80; eleven over 70; fourteen over 60; eleven over 50; and six over 44. Mr. Lynch (lost at sea) was only 30. The aggregate years of life of the fifty-six patriots, were 3,687 years.

www.libtool.com.cn

THE PRESIDENTS OF THE REPUBLIC.

THE presidents of the Continental Congress during the Revolutionary period, and under the Articles of Confederation, held the same political relations to the Government and the people (though with far less power) as Washington and his successors did under the National Constitution. They may therefore properly be termed Presidents of the Republic, and, as such, they are introduced here in the company of those known as the Presidents of the United States.

PEYTON RANDOLPH.

When the First Continental Congress met in Philadelphia, in 1774,[1] they chose Peyton Randolph, of Virginia, to preside over them. He was descended from one of the oldest families of that commonwealth. The law was his profession, and, in 1750, he was attorney-general of that colony. He was chosen president of the Second Continental Congress in May, 1775,[2] but was compelled to leave his chair and go home, on account of illness. He returned, and took his seat as a delegate, and died of apoplexy at Philadelphia, on the 22d of October, 1775. Ill health had compelled him to leave the First Congress before the close of its session, when his place was temporarily filled by

HENRY MIDDLETON,

An elderly gentleman, and delegate from South Carolina. He was a son of the first royal governor of South Carolina, and father of Arthur Middleton, one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence. He was a man of great wealth, but did not engage much in public affairs. He remained a member of Congress until 1776, when he retired to private life.

JOHN HANCOCK.

Succeeded Peyton Randolph as president of Congress, in May, 1775. He was the son of a Massachusetts clergyman, and was born in that province in 1737. He was educated at Harvard College, trained to mercantile business, and became a leading merchant of Boston.[3] He was chosen to the seat of a representative in the Assembly of Massachusetts, in 1766, and became one of the popular leaders at the beginning of the Revolution. He was a delegate in the First Continental Congress, and remained

1. Verse 29, page 127. 2. Verse 16, page 134. 3. Verse 15, page 121.

a member of that body until November, 1777, when ill health compelled him to leave it. He was president of Congress from May, 1775, until that time, and, as such, was the first to sign the Declaration of Independence.[1] He was the first governor of Massachusetts, when it became a State. Mr. Hancock died on the 8th of October, 1793.

www.libtool.com.cn

HENRY LAURENS.

When Hancock left the Congress, in November, 1777, he was succeeded, as president, by Henry Laurens, a delegate from South Carolina. He was an active patriot, and had been prominent in public affairs in his province and State for some time. He occupied the presidential chair for little more than a year. In 1780, he was sent to negotiate a treaty with Holland. He was captured on the sea, taken to England, and imprisoned until the close of 1781. He was one of the signers of the preliminaries of peace, in 1782.[2] Mr. Laurens died at Charleston, S. C., on the 8th of December, 1793, at the age of sixty-nine years.

JOHN JAY.

Mr. Jay, the successor of Mr. Laurens, was a native of New York. His family were Huguenot refugees.[3] He was born in December, 1745, educated at King's (now Columbia) College, and at an early age became distinguished as a lawyer. He was a member of the First Continental Congress, and was author of one of the able state papers put forth by that body. In succeeding Congresses, his pen was ever busy. He succeeded Mr. Laurens as president on the 10th of December, 1778. At that time he was chief-justice of the State of New York. He was sent as minister to Spain in 1779, and was one of the commissioners for negotiating peace with Great Britain. In 1784 he was appointed Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs; and, three years later, assisted in the formation of the National Constitution. Washington appointed him chief-justice of the United States.[4] He became governor of New York, after returning from an embassy to England in 1795. He withdrew from public life in 1801, and died in May, 1829, at the age of eighty-four years.

SAMUEL HUNTINGTON.

Mr. Jay's successor was Mr. Huntington, of Connecticut, who was born in that colony in 1732. He was a lawyer by profession, represented his district in the colonial legislature in 1764, and became the king's attorney the following year. He was chosen a delegate to the Second Continental Congress in 1775, and he remained a member of that body until 1781. He succeeded Mr. Jay as president on the 28th of September, 1779. In 1784, he was appointed chief-justice of Connecticut, and, two years later, was elected governor of that State. He continued in that office until his death, in January, 1796, when he was sixty-three years of age.

---

1. Verse 10, page 143.
2. Verse 3, page 191.
3. Verse 7, page 17.
4. Verse 2, page 196.

CALIFORNIA.

THOMAS McKEAN.

The little State of Delaware was represented in the Continental Congress by Mr. McKean, who became president of its successor on the retirement of Mr. Huntington. He was born in March, 1734, and was educated for the practice of the law. He represented the New Castle district in the Legislature of Delaware, in 1762; and in 1765 he was a delegate in the Stamp Act Congress in New York.[1] He entered the Continental Congress, as delegate, in 1774, and served in that capacity until 1783, holding, much of that time, the office of chief-justice of Delaware. He was elected governor of Delaware in 1799, and held that office until 1808, when he retired from public life. Mr. McKean died in June, 1817, in the eighty-third year of his age.

JOHN HANSON.

This gentleman does not appear conspicuously in public records, until his election to the Continental Congress, in 1781, as a representative of Maryland. He entered that body in the summer, became an active and able member, and, on the retirement of Mr. McKean, was chosen his successor as president, on the 5th of November, 1781. He held that office precisely one year, when he left Congress. Mr. Hanson died in Prince George's county, Md., in November, 1783.

ELIAS BOUDINOT.

Another descendant of the Huguenots, Elias Boudinot, was called to preside over the Congress. He was a native of New Jersey, and a lawyer by profession. He took an active part as a patriot in the Revolution. In 1777, the Congress appointed him commissary-general of prisoners, and he was elected to a seat in that body the same year, where he remained until 1783. He succeeded Mr. Hanson as president on the 4th of November, 1782, and in that capacity he signed the definitive treaty of peace. He was for six years [1789–1795] a representative of New Jersey in the Congress of the United States, and was appointed chief director of the Mint in 1796. He was one of the founders of the American Bible Society, in 1816, and was ever usefully employed. Mr. Boudinot died in October, 1821, aged eighty-one years

THOMAS MIFFLIN.

Two soldiers of the Revolution occupied the presidential chair under the Confederation. These were Generals Mifflin and St. Clair. General Mifflin succeeded Mr. Boudinot on the 3d of November, 1783. He was a native of Pennsylvania, where he was born, of Quaker parents, in 1744. He was an active patriot, and entered the Continental army at the close of the First Congress, of which he was a member. He arose to the rank of general, and served his country well during the war. As the president of Congress, he received Washington's commission, when he resigned it

1. Verse 8, page 119.

in December, 1783.[1] General Mifflin assisted in the construction of the National Constitution. In 1790 he was chosen governor of Pennsylvania, and held the office nine years. He died in January, 1800, at the age of fifty-six years.

www.libtool.com.cn

RICHARD HENRY LEE.

Few patriots were more active, during the Revolutionary struggle, than Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia. He was born a month earlier than Washington, in 1732. He first appeared conspicuously in public life during the Stamp Act excitement.[2] In the First Continental Congress he was an active member; and, in 1776, he submitted the immortal resolution which declared the colonies to be "free and independent States."[3] He withdrew from Congress in 1778, but was reëlected in 1784. On the 30th of November of that year, he was chosen president of that body as successor to General Mifflin. He was the first representative of Virginia in the Senate of the United States under the National Constitution. He died in June, 1794, at the age of sixty-two years.

NATHANIEL GORHAM.

Mr. Gorham succeeded Mr. Lee on the 6th of June, 1786. He was born in Massachusetts in 1738, and was often a member of the legislature of that commonwealth. During the Revolution he was an active but not very prominent patriot. He was elected to Congress in 1784; and, after he left that body, he became a judge, and was a delegate in the convention that framed the National Constitution. He died in June, 1796, at the age of fifty-eight years.

ARTHUR ST. CLAIR.

This soldier of the Revolution, who was born in Edinburgh, Scotland, in 1734, came to America with Admiral Boscawen, in 1755. He served under Wolfe, in Canada,[4] and, after the peace of 1763, was appointed to the command of a fort in Pennsylvania. He entered the Continental army as colonel, in 1776, and in August of that year he was appointed a brigadier-general. He was a faithful officer, with the rank of major-general, throughout the war. He was elected to represent a district of Pennsylvania, in Congress, in 1786, and on the 2d of February, 1787, he was chosen to preside over that body. In 1788 he was appointed governor of the North-western Territory,[5] and held that office until 1802. He died in August, 1818, at the age of eighty-four years.

CYRUS GRIFFIN.

The last of the presidents of Congress was Cyrus Griffin, a native of England, but, for many years previous to the Revolution, a resident of Virginia. He was a firm patriot during that struggle. In 1778 he was

1. Verse 5, page 192.
2. Verse 8, page 119.
3. Verse 9, page 142.
4. Verse 36, page 109.
5. Note 6, page 197.

elected a delegate to the Continental Congress; and nine years afterward he was again honored with a seat in that body. On the 22d of January, 1788, he was chosen president; and, under the provisions of the National Constitution, he was appointed a judge of the United States district court in Virginia.[1] Mr. Griffin died at Yorktown, Va., in December, 1810, at the age of sixty-two years.

www.libtool.com.cn

The Continental Congress ceased to exist in the spring of 1789, when the National Government, under the new Constitution, commenced its career.[2] The first President of the Republic, under the new order of things, and the first chief magistrate elected by the people, was

GEORGE WASHINGTON.

The great leader of the armies of the Revolution was born in February, 1732, in the colony of Virginia, and was educated chiefly by his mother, who was left a widow when George was little more than ten years of age. He became a surveyor, and was early inured to hardships, and filled with a knowledge of the forests, and of the Indian character, which became of much service to him. He was employed in the military service of Virginia during the French and Indian War,[3] and was for some time a member of the Virginia House of Burgesses.[4] He espoused the cause of the patriots, and was a delegate in the first Continental Congress. In June, the following year, he was chosen commander-in-chief of the armies of the Revolution,[5] and with signal ability he led them to the achievement of the independence of the colonies. He assisted in the construction of the National Constitution, was president of the Convention, and was chosen the first chief magistrate of the Republic under its provisions. He held that office eight years [1789–1797], when he retired to private life. He died in December, 1799, when almost sixty-eight years of age.

JOHN ADAMS.

The first successor of Washington was John Adams, who was inaugurated in March, 1797, and held the office four years. He was a native of Massachusetts, and was born in October, 1735. He was a prominent lawyer before the Revolution, and was one of the most active of the patriots of that struggle, from its inception to its close.[6] He was a member of the First Continental Congress; and, in the Second, he proposed the appointment of Washington to the position of commander-in-chief of the armies. Mr. Adams was a faithful worker in Congress, until sent on a diplomatic mission to Europe. He served his country in that capacity for many years, and at one time was intrusted with no less than six missions. He assisted in negotiating the treaty of peace; and was the first United States minister sent to England after the Revolution. He was chosen Vice-President under Washington, and, after serving as his successor, he retired from public life in 1801. He died in the summer of 1826, in the ninety-second year of his age.[7]

1. Verse 2, page 196.
2. Verse 9, page 194.
3. Page 95.
4. Note 4, page 51.
5. Verse 16, page 134.
6. Verse 19, page 123.
7. Verse 3, page 235.

THOMAS JEFFERSON,

The writer of the Declaration of Independence, was the third President of the United States. He was born in Virginia, in April, 1743. He was educated at William and Mary College, became a lawyer, and took an active part in the public affairs of the colony immediately after the Stamp Act excitement. He was elected to a seat in Congress in 1775, and was active in the work of securing the independence of the colonies. He drew up the Declaration of Independence after its substance was agreed upon in committee; and, not long after its adoption, he left Congress, and engaged in the civil affairs of his State. He was elected governor in 1779. He was sent as minister to France in 1784, and remained there until 1789, when he returned, and became secretary of state. He was chosen Vice-President in 1796, and became President in 1809. After serving eight years, he retired to private life, and died in the summer of 1826, at the age of eighty-three years.

JAMES MADISON,

The fourth President of the United States, was also born in Virginia. That event occurred in March, 1751. He was educated at Princeton, N. J. He studied law, and took an active part in the opening scenes of the Revolution. He was a member of the convention of Virginia that formed its first State constitution, in 1776, and was elected to the legislature. He was chosen to represent his State in Congress in 1779, and he served three years in that body. He was active in the business of procuring a convention to reform the General Government, and was one of the ablest of the framers and defenders of the National Constitution. He was one of the first representatives of Virginia in the National Congress, and was highly esteemed by Washington as an able and trusty friend. He was chosen to be secretary of state in 1801, and in 1808 he was elected President of the United States. He retired from that office to private life in the spring of 1817. He died in June, 1836, at the age of eighty-five years.

JAMES MONROE,

The fifth President of the United States, was also a native of Virginia. He was born in April, 1759. He was educated at William and Mary College, and at the age of nearly eighteen he entered the Continental army as a soldier, under the immediate eye of Washington. He left the army not long after the battle of Monmouth,[1] and was active in public affairs in Virginia. He became a member of the Virginia legislature in 1782, and, at the age of twenty-five years, was promoted to a seat in Congress. He was one of the originators of the convention that framed the National Constitution, but was one of the most zealous opposers of the ratification of that instrument. He was a member of the first Senate of the United States; and in 1794 he went to France as minister. He was chosen governor of Virginia in 1796, but soon afterward went to France as minister. He was again governor in 1811; and, in 1813, President Madison

1. Verse 4, page 162.

called him to his cabinet as secretary of state. He was elected President in 1816, and retired from that office in the spring of 1825. He died in the city of New York, in July, 1831, in the seventy-second year of his age.

JOHN QUINCY ADAMS,

www.hbtool.com.cn

The accomplished son of John Adams, became President of the United States in March, 1825. He was born in Massachusetts, in 1767. He went abroad with his father, at the age of eleven years, and from that time until his death he was more or less connected with public life. He was the private secretary to Mr. Dana, American ambassador to the Russian court, at the age of fourteen years. His education was completed at Harvard University, in 1787, when he studied law. In 1794 he was appointed resident minister in the Netherlands. He served as minister at other courts, as well as lawmaker in the Senate of the United States. He assisted in negotiating the treaty of peace in 1814,[1] and then became minister at the British court. He was secretary of state during Monroe's Administration, and was elected President in 1824. After he left that office, in 1828, he was called to a seat in Congress, and was a member thenceforward until the day of his death. That event occurred in the room of the speaker of the House of Representatives, on the 22d of February, 1847, when he was almost eighty-one years of age.

ANDREW JACKSON.

The seventh President of the United States was Andrew Jackson, who was born in North Carolina, in March, 1767. His mother educated him for the Christian ministry. He became a young soldier in the Revolution, and was a prisoner to the British at Charleston, in 1781. He commenced the practice of law in 1786, and soon afterward he began a career in that profession, in the wild regions of Tennessee, that was full of romantic incident. In 1790 he made his residence at Nashville. He was then active in public matters, and in 1797 took his seat as a member of the United States Senate. He was afterward appointed judge of the supreme court of Tennessee, and in 1806 he became somewhat involved, innocently, in the scheme of Aaron Burr, which led to that man's trial for treason.[2] During the war of 1812, and afterward, Jackson was an active military leader in the region of the gulf of Mexico, and acquired glory by his victory over the British at New Orleans, in 1815. He was made governor of Florida in 1821,[3] and was elected United States senator the next year. He was elected President in 1828, and held the office eight years. He retired from public life in 1837, and in June, 1845, he died, near Nashville, at the age of seventy-eight years.

MARTIN VAN BUREN,

The eighth President of the United States, was born in the State of New York, in December, 1782. His origin was very humble, and his early school education was extremely limited. He became a lawyer in 1803,

1. Verse 15, page 228. 2. Verse 4, page 205. 3. Verse 3, page 232.

and in 1815 was appointed attorney-general of his State. He was elected governor in 1828. He had already served a full term in the Senate of the United States, and had been reëlected. He became secretary of state under Jackson, in 1829, by whom he was sent as minister to England in 1831. He was elected Vice-President in 1832, and President in 1836. He retired to private life in 1841. Mr. Van Buren died at the place of his birth (Kinderhook, N. Y.), in July, 1862, at the age of eighty years.

WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON,

The ninth President of the United States, was born in Virginia, in February, 1773. He commenced the study of medicine, but entered the army as an ensign in 1791. He was with Wayne in his war with the Indians in the North-west,[1] and in 1799 was elected the first delegate to Congress from the North-western Territory. He was appointed the first governor of Indiana, and was one of the earliest officers in the field when the war of 1812 broke out. He served with distinction in that war, as a major-general. In 1824 he was elected to a seat in the Senate of the United States, and in 1828 he was appointed minister to the Republic of Colombia. In 1840 he was elected President of the United States, and died in April, 1841—just one month after he took his seat[2]—at the age of sixty-eight years.

JOHN TYLER.

The Vice-President under Harrison was John Tyler, of Virginia. On the death of his superior, he became President.[3] He was born in March, 1790, and was educated at William and Mary College. He became a lawyer at the age of nineteen, and a member of the Virginia legislature when he was twenty-one years old. In 1816 he was elected to Congress, and served nearly two terms. In 1825 he was elected governor of Virginia, and in 1827 he took a seat in the United States Senate. He served in that body several years. He was President of the United States for four years, and then retired to private life. He died early in 1864, at the age of seventy-four years.

JAMES KNOX POLK,

The eleventh President of the United States, was born in North Carolina, in November, 1795. While he was a child, his father removed, with his family, to Tennessee. At the age of seventeen years James became a merchant's clerk, but left that business for the profession of law. He was educated at the University of North Carolina, and entered upon his profession at the close of 1820, in Tennessee. Three years afterward he was elected a member of the legislature of that State, and in 1825 he was chosen a member of Congress, where he became conspicuous. He was elected speaker of that body (of which he was a member about fourteen years) in 1835. In 1839 he was chosen governor of Tennessee, and in 1844 he was elected President of the United States. He retired to private life in March, 1849, and died at Nashville, on the 15th of June following, at the age of fifty-four years.

1. Verse 6, page 198. 2. Verse 1, page 248. 3. Verse 2, page 243.

ZACHARY TAYLOR,

The twelfth President of the United States, was born in Virginia, in September, 1784. He was a soldier by profession, having entered the army at the age of twenty-four years, and remained in it until his death. He was a useful officer in the West during the war of 1812; and was active in the suppression of the "Black Hawk War,"[1] when he bore the commission of a colonel. He was a trusted leader in the war against the Seminoles in Florida.[2] In the war with Mexico[3] he was a successful commander, and on that account he was elected President of the United States in 1848. He died in July, 1850, at the age of sixty-five years, and was succeeded in office by the Vice-President.[4]

MILLARD FILLMORE,

General Taylor's successor, was born in the State of New York, in January, 1800. His early opportunities for education were very limited. He was apprenticed to learn the trade of a fuller, but afterward studied law, and taught school. He practiced his profession in the interior of New York, and at Buffalo, until 1847, when he was appointed comptroller of his State. He had been in the State legislature as early as 1828, where he served three successive terms. He was sent to Congress in 1832, where he served for several years. He was elected Vice-President in 1848, and became President on the death of Taylor, in July, 1850.[5] He retired from public life in 1853, and has since then, until now [1864], resided in Buffalo.

FRANKLIN PIERCE,

The fourteenth President of the United States, was born in New Hampshire, in November, 1804. He was educated at Bowdoin College, and commenced the practice of the law in 1827. In 1829 he was elected a member of the New Hampshire legislature, and in 1833 was sent as a representative to Congress. He was elected to the United States Senate in 1837, which he left in 1842. He served as a brigadier-general in the war with Mexico, and in 1852 was elected President of the United States. He retired from office in 1857, and has since, until now [1864], resided at Concord, in his native State.

JAMES BUCHANAN,

The fifteenth President of the United States, was born in Pennsylvania, in April, 1791. He was educated at Dickinson College, where he was graduated in 1809. He studied law, and commenced its practice in 1812. He was elected to the Pennsylvania legislature in 1814. He entered Congress in 1820, wherein he served, in both branches, many years. Mr. Buchanan was appointed minister to St. Petersburg in 1831, and, on his return, was elected to the United States Senate. He became secretary of state under Mr. Polk, in 1845, and was sent as minister to England by Mr. Pierce, in

1. Verse 4, page 238. 2. Verse 6, page 238. 3. Verse 3, page 246.
4. Verse 8, page 255. 5. Verse 8, page 255.

1853. He returned in 1856, and in the autumn of that year he was elected President of the United States. He retired to private life in 1861, and now [1864] resides near Lancaster, Pa.

www.hstook.com.cn

ABRAHAM LINCOLN,

The sixteenth President of the United States, was born in Kentucky, in February, 1809. His early life was passed in hard labor on a farm in Indiana. In 1819 he made a trip to New Orleans on a flat-boat, as a hired hand. In 1830 he settled, with his father, in Illinois, and made another trip to New Orleans. He led a company of militia in the "Black Hawk War."[1] He was elected to the Illinois legislature in 1834, and served in that body eight years. Meanwhile he studied law, and was admitted to practice in 1837, at Springfield. He arose rapidly to distinction in his profession. He was elected to Congress in 1836, and again in 1846. In 1860 he was elected President of the United States. He was reëlected in 1864, and inaugurated a second time on the 4th of March, 1865. On the evening of the 14th of April following, he was shot by an assassin, and died early the next morning.[2] On the day of his death he was succeeded in office by the Vice President,

ANDREW JOHNSON,

Who was born at Raleigh, in North Carolina, on the 29th of December, 1808. Johnson never attended school, but obtained a good common education by self-culture. In early life he was engaged in the business of a tailor. He moved to Greenville, Tennessee; and he commenced his public career, in 1830, as Mayor of that place. He was elected to the Tennessee Legislature in 1835; to the State Senate in 1841, and to the National Congress in 1843, in which he served ten years. In 1853 he was elected Governor of Tennessee, served four years, and reëntered Congress as a member in 1857. He was appointed Military Governor of Tennessee in 1862, and in the autumn of 1864 was elected Vice-President of the United States. On the death of Mr. Lincoln, he became President, and was inaugurated on the 15th of April, 1865.[3] The oath of office was administered to him by Chief-Justice Chase.

1. Verse 4, page 238. 2. Verse 87, page 301. 3. Verse 87, page 301.

A CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE

OF THE

MOST IMPORTANT EVENTS MENTIONED IN THIS BOOK.

DISCOVERIES.

1002. America said to have been visited by Northmen.
1492. West India islands discovered by Columbus, October 11.
1497. Cabot discovers the American continent at Labrador, June 24.
1498. Columbus discovers the coast of South America, August.
1499. Amerigo Vespucci discovers the coast of South America.
1510. Balboa discovers the Pacific ocean.
1512. John Ponce de Leon discovers Florida.
1517. Cordova discovers Mexico.
1521. Cortez conquers Mexico.
1523. Verrazzani explores the coast from Cape Fear to Newfoundland.
1534. Cartier discovers the St. Lawrence, June.
1535. Cartier explores the St. Lawrence to Montreal.
1539. De Soto discovers the Mississippi river.
1562. Arrival of Huguenots in America.
1565. St. Augustine founded, and Huguenots massacred, September.
1583. New England coast explored by Sir H. Gilbert.
1585. Settlement attempted on Roanoke Island.
1587. Another settlement attempted on Roanoke Island.
1602. Cape Cod discovered and named by Bartholomew Gounold, May 14.
1603. Coast of Maine discovered by Martin Pring, June.
1604. Annapolis, Nova Scotia, settled by the French.
1608. Quebec founded by Captain Champlain.
1609. Lake Champlain discovered by Champlain.
" Hudson river discovered by Henry Hudson, September 21.

SETTLEMENTS.

1606. London and Plymouth Companies chartered, April 20.
1607. English land in Virginia, and found Jamestown, May 23.
1608. Another company of emigrants land in Virginia, September.
1609. New charter given to the London Company.
1610. "Starving time" in Virginia.
" Dutch trading vessels on the Hudson.
1613. Marriage of Rolfe and Pocahontas, April.
1614. New England coast explored by Captain Smith.
" Connecticut river discovered by Adrian Block.

1619. Meeting of the first representative assembly in Virginia, June 28.
1620. New charter granted to the Plymouth Company, November 3.
" Negro slaves introduced into America, August.
" Pilgrims land on the coast of Massachusetts, December 22.
1621. Dutch West India Company founded.
" Schools for Indians established in Virginia.
1622. Maryland charter granted, June.
1623. Albany, on the Hudson, founded.
" Fort Nassau built on the Delaware river, in New Jersey.
" First settlement in New Netherland.
1629. First settlement in New Hampshire.
1633. First settlement in Connecticut.
" Dutch Church found a school in New Amsterdam.
1634. First settlement in Maryland, March.
1635. Meeting of first legislative assembly in Maryland, March 8.
" Roger Williams banished from Massachusetts.
1636. Providence, R. I., founded.
" Hartford, Conn., founded, July 4.
1637. War against the Pequod Indians declared.
" Pequods vanquished, June.
" Harvard College founded.
1638. New Haven founded.
" First settlement in Delaware, April.
1639. Connecticut settlers adopt a written constitution, January.
" Newport founded.
1644. Rhode Island obtains a charter.
1655. Swedes on the Delaware subjugated by the Dutch.
1663. First settlement in North Carolina..
1664. First permanent settlement in New Jersey.
1665. Representative government established in New Jersey.
1670. First settlement in South Carolina.
1673. George Fox, founder of the Quakers, visits America.
1675. Quakers settle West Jersey.
1681. First legislative assembly of Quakers.
" Pennsylvania charter granted, March 14.
1682. Penn visits America.
" Charleston, S. C., founded.
1688. First legislative assembly in South Carolina.
1692. William and Mary College, in Virginia, founded.
1701. Yale College, in Connecticut, founded.
1732. Georgia charter granted, June.
1733. Savannah, Ga., founded, February.
" Oglethorpe and Indians in council.
1738. College of New Jersey founded.

COLONIES.

1619. Virginia colony founded.
1620. First European women in Virginia.
1621. Indians welcome the English to Massachusetts, March 26.
" Virginia receives a written constitution.
1623. Virginia made a royal province.

1626. York, or Manhattan Island, bought of the Indians.
1627. Partnership of London merchants and American settlers dissolved.
1628. Salem, Mass., founded by Endicot.
" Charter for Massachusetts Bay province granted, March 14.
1629. Massachusetts charter surrendered to the settlers.
1630. Boston founded.
1633. Van Twiller governor of New Netherland.
1634. Representative government established in Massachusetts.
1638. Kieft governor of New Netherland.
1641. Beginning of representative government in New Netherland.
1642–1645. Indian war in Maryland.
1643. New England confederacy formed.
1644–1645. Rebellion in Maryland, and war with the Indians in Virginia.
1647. Stuyvesant governor of New Netherland.
1649. Maryland Toleration Act passed.
1653. Popular assembly in New Amsterdam.
1656. Quakers persecuted in Boston.
1660. Supreme authority of the people declared in Maryland.
1662. Connecticut colony obtain a royal charter.
1663. New charter granted to Rhode Island.
1664. New Netherland surrendered to the English.
1665. Union of Connecticut and New Haven colonies.
1674. First legislative assembly in South Carolina meet.
1675. King Philip's war breaks out.
1676. New Jersey divided into East and West.
" Bacon's rebellion in Virginia, and Jamestown destroyed.
1682. East Jersey bought by Quakers.
1683. Charter of Liberties granted to New York.
1687. Connecticut charter saved.
1688. Revolution in England, and King James driven away.
1689. Governor Andros expelled from New England, and King William's War breaks out.
1690. Schenectady destroyed by the French and Indians, and an expedition against Quebec.
1691. Acadié seized and plundered.
" Maryland made a royal province.
1692. Massachusetts made a royal province, and Pennsylvania taken from William Penn.
1694. Penn's rights in Pennsylvania restored.
1697. Witchcraft in Salem.
1701. New frame of government given to Pennsylvania.
1702. War between the South Carolinians and Spaniards in Florida.
" The Jerseys united in a royal province.
" Queen Anne's War begins.
1710. Nova Scotia made a British province.
1711. Indian war in North Carolina.
1713. Peace with the French and Indians.
1729. North and South Carolina separated.
1740. Georgians at war with the Spaniards in Florida.
1744. King George's War.
1745. Capture of Louisburg by the British.

1746. French fleet under D'Anville destroyed.
1752. Georgia becomes a royal province.

FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

1749. The Ohio Company chartered.
1754. Washington returns from his mission to the French commander.
" March of colonial troops for the Ohio country, April 22.
" Washington in command of the troops, May 30.
" Colonial Congress meets at Albany, N. Y., June 19.
" Surrender of Fort Necessity, July 4.
1755. Capture of Forts Beausejour (June 16) and Gaspereau (June 17).
" Battle on the Monongahela, and defeat of Braddock, July 9.
" Americans defeated by the French near Lake George, N. Y., September 8.
" French defeated at Lake George by the Americans, September 8.
1756. England declares war against France, May 17.
" Oswego, N. Y., captured by the French, August 14.
1757. Fort William Henry (Lake George) surrendered to the French, August 9.
1758. Lord Howe killed near Ticonderoga, N. Y., July 6.
" The English repulsed at Ticonderoga, July 8.
" Louisburg, Cape Breton, taken by the English, July 26.
" Fort Frontenac, Canada, surrendered to the English, August 27.
" Grant defeated near Fort du Quesne, Pa., September 21.
1759. Ticonderoga (July 26) and Crown Point (August 1) abandoned by the French.
" Fort Niagara, N. Y., surrendered to the English, July 25.
" Battle of Montmorenci, near Quebec, July 31.
" Battle on the Plains of Abraham, Quebec, September 13.
" Quebec surrendered to the English, September 18.
1760. Attempt to recover Quebec—Battle at Sillery, April 28.
" Montreal, Canada, surrendered to the English, and French dominion in America ended, September 8.
1761. George III. ascends the throne.
1763. Peace concluded at Paris, February 10.
" Florida ceded to Great Britain, February 10.
" Pontiac's War.

THE REVOLUTION.

1765. Stamp Act passed by the British Parliament, March 8.
" Colonial Congress meet in New York, October 7.
1766. Stamp Act repealed, March 18.
1767. Duties levied on glass, paper, &c., June 29.
1768. Arrival of British troops in Boston, Mass., September 27.
1770. The "Boston Massacre," March 5.
1771. Battle with the "Regulators" in North Carolina, May 16.
1772. The *Gaspé* schooner burned in Narraganset bay, R. I., June 9.
1773. Destruction of tea in Boston harbor, December 16.
1774. Boston "Port Bill" passed by Parliament, March 7.
" Port of Boston closed, June 1.

1774. First Continental Congress meet in Philadelphia, September 5.
1775. Skirmishes at Lexington and Concord, Mass., April 19.
" Ticonderoga captured by Allen and Arnold, May 10.
" Crown Point captured by Seth Warner, May 12.
" Washington chosen commander-in-chief, June 15.
" Battle of Bunker Hill, near Boston, June 17.
" Washington takes command of the army near Boston, July 3.
" Surrender of St. Johns, Canada, November 3.
" Arnold before Quebec, November 13.
" Montreal surrenders to Montgomery, November 13.
" Assault on Quebec, December 31.
1776. Norfolk, Va., destroyed by Governor Dunmore, January 1.
" Boston evacuated by the British, March 1.
" Repulse of the British at Charleston, S. C., June 28.
" Declaration of Independence, July 4.
" Battle on Long Island, N. Y., August 27.
" Battle on Harlem Plains, N. Y., September 16.
" Battle at White Plains, N. Y., October 28.
" Capture of Fort Washington, N. Y., by the British, November 16.
" Capture of Fort Lee, N. J., by the British, November 18.
" Battle at Trenton, N. J., December 26.
1777. Battle at Princeton, N. J., January 3.
" Diplomatic agent sent to Europe, March.
" Destruction of stores at Peekskill, N. Y., March 23.
" Tryon's marauding expedition in Connecticut, April 26, 27.
" Meigs's expedition against Sag Harbor, L. I., May 23.
" Burgoyne invades New York, June.
" The Americans abandon Ticonderoga, July 5.
" Battle at Hubbardton, Vt., July 7.
" Capture of General Prescott by Americans, R. I., July 10.
" Battle at Oriskany, Mohawk Valley, N. Y., August 6.
" Sortie at Fort Schuyler (now Rome), N. Y., August 6.
" Battle near Bennington, Vt., August 16.
" Battle on the Brandywine, Pa., September 11.
" Battle on Bemis's Heights, N. Y., September 19.
" Massacre at Paoli, Pa., September 20.
" British take Philadelphia, September 26.
" Battle at Germantown, near Philadelphia, October 4.
" Capture of Forts Clinton and Montgomery, on the Hudson, October 6.
" Battle at Saratoga, N. Y., October 7.
" Surrender of Burgoyne to Gates, October 17.
" British fleet pass Forts Mifflin and Mercer, on the Delaware, November 18.
" Washington marches to the Valley Forge, Pa., December 11.
1778. A treaty between the United States and France, and acknowledgment of the independence of the former, February 6.
" Philadelphia evacuated by the British, June 18.
" Battle at Monmouth, N. J, June 28.
" Battle and massacre in the Wyoming Valley, Pa., July 4, 5.
" Arrival of a French fleet under D'Estaing, July 8.
" Battle at Quaker Hill, R. I., August 29.

1778. Massacre by Indians and Tories at Cherry Valley, N. Y., November 11.
" Capture of Savannah, Ga., by the British, December 29.
1779. Capture of Sunbury, Ga., by the British, January 9.
" Battle of Kettle Creek, Ga., February 14.
" Battle at Brier Creek, Ga., March 3.
" Capture of Stoney Point, N. Y., by the British, May 31.
" Capture of Verplanck's Point, N. Y., by the British, June 1.
" Tryon's raid in Connecticut, July 5 to 12.
" Recapture of Stoney Point by the Americans, July 15.
" Capture of the British garrison at Paulus's Hook, N. J., July 19.
" Castine, Me., captured by the British, August 13.
" Sullivan's chastisement of the Indians in Western New York, August and September.
" Siege of Savannah, Ga., by the Americans and French, September.
" Paul Jones's victory off the coast of Great Britain, September 23.
" Assault on Savannah, and abandonment of siege, October 9.
1780. Charleston, S. C., besieged by the British, April and May.
" Skirmish at Monk's Corner, S. C., April 14.
" Surrender of Charleston to the British, May 12.
" Skirmish on the Waxhaw, S. C., May 29.
" Battle at Springfield, N. J., June 23.
" Arrival of a French fleet and army at Newport, R. I., July 10.
" Battle at Rocky Mount, S. C., July 30.
" Battle at Hanging Rock, S. C., August 6.
" Battle at Sander's Creek, S. C., August 16.
" Defeat of Sumter at Fishing Creek, S. C., August 18.
" Meeting of Arnold and André at Haverstraw, N. Y., to arrange the business of treason, September 22.
" Execution of André at Tappan, N. Y., October 2.
" Battle on King's Mountain, S. C., October 7.
" Battle at Fish Dam Fort, S. C., November 12.
" Battle at Blackstock's, S. C., November 20.
1781. Mutiny of Pennsylvania troops, January 1.
" Battle at the Cowpens, S. C., January 17.
" General Greene's retreat, N. C., January and February.
" Mutiny of New Jersey troops, January 18.
" Battle near Guilford Court House, N. C., March 15.
" Battle at Hobkirk's Hill, S. C., April 25.
" Capture of Augusta, June 5.
" Siege of Ninety-Six, S. C., June 18, 19.
" Arnold destroys New London, Conn., September 6.
" Massacre at Fort Griswold, Conn., September 6.
" Battle at Eutaw Springs, S. C., September 8.
" Siege of Yorktown, Va., commenced, October 9.
" Surrender of Cornwallis, at Yorktown, October 19.
1782. British Parliament resolve to end the war, March 4.
" Savannah, Ga., evacuated by the British, July 11.
" Preliminary treaty of peace signed at Paris, November 30.
" Charleston, S. C., evacuated by the British, December 14.
1783. Cessation of hostilities proclaimed in America, April 19.
" Formation of the Cincinnati Society, June 10.

1783. Definitive treaty of peace signed at Paris, September 3.
" American army disbanded by order of Congress, November 3.
" New York evacuated by the British, November 25.
" Washington parts with his officers at New York, December 4.
" Washington resigns his commission to Congress, at Annapolis, Md., December 23.
www.libtool.com.cn
1787. National Constitution adopted in convention, at Philadelphia, September 17.

THE NATION.

1787. The first Congress under the National Constitution assembles at New York, March 4.
" Inauguration of Washington as the first President, at New York, April 30.
1790. Harmar defeated by the Indians on the Maumee, in Indiana, October 17, 22.
1791. Vermont admitted to the Union, March 4.
" St. Clair defeated by the Indians in Ohio, November 4.
1792. Kentucky admitted into the Union, June 1.
1794. Wayne defeats the Indians on the Maumee, in Ohio, August 20.
" "Whisky Insurrection" in Pennsylvania.
1795. Jay's Treaty with Great Britain ratified, June 24.
" Treaty with the Indians at Greeneville, Ohio, August.
1796. Tennessee admitted into the Union, June 1.
" Washington's Farewell Address issued, September.
1797. John Adams inaugurated second President, at New York, March 4.
1798. A provisional army to fight the French, authorized, May.
1799. Death of Washington at Mount Vernon, December 14.
1800. Seat of the National Government removed to Washington city.
1801. Jefferson inaugurated third President, March 4.
" War with Tripoli commenced, June 10.
1802. Ohio admitted into the Union, November 29.
1803. Louisiana purchased from France, April 30.
1804. The frigate *President* destroyed at Tripoli by Decatur, February 4.
" Hamilton murdered in a duel by Burr, at Weehawken, N. J., July 12.
1805. Peace concluded with Tripoli, June 3.
1806. British "Orders in Council," May.
" Bonaparte's "Berlin Decree," November 21.
1807. Affair between the *Chesapeake* and *Leopard*, June 22.
" British armed vessels ordered from American waters by the President of the United States, July.
" Burr tried for treason at Richmond, Va., and acquitted, September.
" Embargo on commerce declared by Congress, December 22.
1809. Madison inaugurated the fourth President, March 4.
1811. Battle between the *President* and *Little Belt*, May 16.
" Battle of Tippecanoe, Ind., November 7.
1812. Louisiana admitted into the Union, April 8.
" Declaration of war against Great Britain, June 19.

SECOND WAR FOR INDEPENDENCE.

1812. Hull invades Canada, July 12.
" Surrender of Mackinaw, Mich., July 17.

1812. Van Horne defeated, August 5.
" Miller defeated, August 8.
" Hull surrenders Detroit, August 16.
" The *Essex* captures the *Alert* at Valparaiso, August 13.
" The *Constitution* captures the *Guerrierre*, August 19.
" Battle on Queenstown Heights, Canada, October 13.
" The *Frolic* captures the *Wasp*, October 18.
" The *United States* captures the *Macedonian*, October 25.
" The *Constitution* captures the *Java*, December 29.
1813. Massacre at Frenchtown, Mich., January 22.
" The *Hornet* captures the *Peacock*, February 24.
" Madison inaugurated President a second time, March 4.
" Capture of York, or Toronto, Canada, April 27.
" First siege of Fort Meigs, Ohio, May 1, 5.
" Fort George, Canada, captured by the Americans, May 27.
" Battle at Sackett's Harbor, N. Y., May 29.
" The *Shannon* captures the *Chesapeake*, June 1.
" Battle at Stoney Creek, Canada, June 6.
" British repulsed at Craney Island, June 22.
" Defense of Fort Stephenson, Ohio, August 2.
" The *Pelican* captures the *Argus*, August 14.
" Massacre at Fort Mimms, Ala., August 30.
" The *Enterprise* captures the *Boxer*, September 5.
" Capture of a British fleet on Lake Erie, by Perry, September 10.
" Battle on the Thames, in Canada, October 5.
" Battle at Williamsburg, Canada, November 11.
" Burning of Newark, Canada, December 12.
" Capture of Fort Niagara, N. Y., by the British, December 29.
" Desolation of the Niagara frontier by the British, December 30.
1814. Battle of the Horse Shoe (Creek War), Ala., March 27.
" Capture of the *Essex* at Valparaiso, March 28.
" The *Peacock* captures the *Epervier*, April 29.
" Capture of Oswego, May 5.
" The *Reindeer* captured by the *Wasp*, June 28.
" Fort Erie, Canada, taken by the Americans, July 3.
" Battle at Chippewa, Canada, July 5.
" Battle at Niagara Falls, Canada, July 25.
" Attack on Stonington, Conn., April 9–14.
" Battle at Fort Erie, August 15.
" Battle at Bladensburg, Md., August 24.
" Washington city captured and partly burned, August 24.
" The *Wasp* captures the *Avon*, September 1.
" Battles on land and water at Plattsburg, N. Y., September 11.
" Battle near North Point, Md., September 12.
" Bombardment of Fort McHenry, Baltimore, September 13, 14.
" Attack on Fort Bower (now Morgan), Ala., September 5.
" Sortie at Fort Erie, September 17.
" British expelled from Pensacola, Fla., by Jackson, November 7.
" Battle on Lake Borgne, La., December 14.
" Battle below New Orleans, La., December 23.
" Treaty of peace between the United States and Great Britain, December 24.

1815. Battle near New Orleans, January 8.
" The *President* captured by a British squadron, January 15.
" Peace proclaimed, February 18.
" The *Constitution* captures the *Cyane* and *Levant*, February 20.
" The *Hornet* captures the *Penguin*, March 23.
" War with Algiers, March.
" Decatur sent against Algiers, May.
" Algerine frigate captured, June 17.
1816. Indiana admitted into the Union, December 11.
1817. Monroe inaugurated President, March 4.
" Mississippi admitted into the Union, December 10.
1818. Jackson expels the Spaniards from Florida, April.
" Jackson seizes Pensacola, Fla., May 24.
" Illinois admitted into the Union, December 3.
1819. Alabama admitted into the Union, December 14.
1820. Maine admitted into the Union, March 15.
" Florida ceded to the United States by Spain, October.
1821. Missouri admitted into the Union, August 21.
1824. Lafayette visits the United States, August.
1825. John Quincy Adams inaugurated President, March 4.
1826. Death of Jefferson and Adams, July 4.
1828. Tariff law obnoxious to cotton planters passed, May 15.
1829. Andrew Jackson inaugurated President, March 4.
1832. Black Hawk War, on the Mississippi.
" Rebellion in South Carolina, November.
" Jackson's proclamation against the rebels, December 10.
1833. Compromise act, proposed by Henry Clay, passed, March 3.
" Removal of the public money from the United States Bank, October.
1835. War with the Seminole Indians, Florida, commenced, December.
" General Thompson and companions murdered in Florida, December 28.
" Major Dade and his command massacred in Florida, December 28.
1836. Arkansas admitted into the Union, June 15.
" Governor Call, of Georgia, invades the Seminole country, October.
" He fights them at Wahoo Swamp, November 21.
1837. Michigan admitted into the Union, January 25.
" Van Buren inaugurated President, March 4.
" Commencement of the Canadian "Rebellion.'
1841. General Harrison inaugurated President, March 4.
" Harrison dies, April 4.
" Tyler (Vice-President) inaugurated President, April 6.
1842. End of the Seminole War.
" Threatened civil war in Rhode Island.
1845. Resolutions for the admission of Texas signed by Tyler, March 1.
" Florida admitted into the Union, March 3.
" Polk inaugurated President, March 4.
" Texas admitted into the Union, July 4.

WAR WITH MEXICO.

1846. Army of Observation in Texas.
" First blood shed in the war with Mexico, April 26.

1846. Battle at Palo Alto, Texas, May 8.
" Battle at Resaca de la Palma, Texas, May 9.
" Congress declares war with Mexico, May 11.
" General Taylor captures Matamoros, Mexico, May 18.
" Monterey, Mexico, surrendered to Taylor, September 24.
" Battle at Braceto, Mexico, December 25.
" Iowa admitted into the Union, December 28.
1847. Battle at Buena Vista, Mexico, February 23.
" Battle at Sacramento, Mexico, February 28.
" Vera Cruz surrenders to General Scott, March 27.
" Battle at Sierra Gordo, Mexico, April 18.
" Battle at Contreras and Churubusco, Mexico, August 20.
" Battle at Molino del Rey, Mexico, September 8.
" Battle at Chapultepec, Mexico, September 13.
" Scott enters the city of Mexico a conqueror, September 14.
" Battle at Huamantla, Mexico, October 9
1848. Treaty of peace signed at Guadalupe Hidalgo, February 2.
" Wisconsin admitted into the Union, May 29.
1849. Zachary Taylor inaugurated President, March 5.
1850. Death of President Taylor, July 9.
" Fillmore (Vice-President) inaugurated President, July 10.
" California admitted into the Union, September 9.
" Fugitive Slave Bill passed, September 9.
1853. Pierce inaugurated President, March 4.
1854. " Missouri Compromise " virtually repealed, June.
1857. Buchanan inaugurated President, March 4.
" Dred Scott decision, March 6.
1858. Minnesota admitted into the Union, May 11.
1859. Oregon admitted into the Union, February 14.
" John Brown's raid into Virginia, October 16.
1860. Secession of South Carolina from the Union declared, December 20.
1861. Secession of Mississippi declared, January 8.
" United States steamship *Star of the West* fired on, January 9.
" Secession of Florida declared, January 10.
" Secession of Alabama declared, January 11.
" Secession of Georgia declared, January 19.
" Kansas admitted into the Union, January 29.
" A " Southern Confederacy " formed at Montgomery, Ala., February 4.
" Jefferson Davis chosen President, February 9.
" Lincoln inaugurated President, March 4.

THE GREAT CIVIL WAR.

1861. Fort Sumter attacked by the insurgents, April 11.
" Fort Sumter evacuated, April 12.
" President Lincoln calls for 75,000 troops, April 15.
" Volunteer troops attacked in Baltimore, April 19.
" More than 64,000 more troops called for, May 4.
" Virginia invaded by National forces at Alexandria, May 24.
" Battle at Big Bethel, Va., June 10.
" Battle at Romney, Va., June 11.

1861. Congress meet in extraordinary session, July 4.
" Battle near Carthage, Mo. July, 5.
" Battle at Rich Mountain, Va., July 11.
" Battle near Centreville, Va., July 18.
" Richmond becomes the headquarters of the Confederates, July 20.
" Battle at Bull Run, Va., July 21.
" Battle at Wilson's Creek, Mo., August 10.
" Capture of forts at Hatteras Inlet, N. C., August 20.
" Battle at Carnifex Ferry, Va., September.
" Battle at Ball's Bluff, Va.., October 30.
" Battle at Belmont, Mo., November 7.
" Capture of Port Royal Entrance, S. C., November 7.
1862. Battle at Mill Spring, Ky., January 8.
" Capture of Roanoke Island, N. C., February 8.
" Capture of Fort Donelson, Tenn., February 16.
" Battle at Pea Ridge, Ark., March 5, 8.
" The *Congress* and *Cumberland* sunk by the *Merrimac*, March 8.
" First appearance of a *Monitor*, March 9.
" Newbern, N. C., captured, March 14.
" Battle at Shiloh, Tenn., April 6, 7.
" Capture of Island No. 10, Mississippi river, April 7.
" Capture of Fort Pulaski, Ga., April 11.
" Capture of New Orleans, April 24.
" Norfolk, Va., captured by the Nationals, May 9.
" Natchez, on the Mississippi, captured, May 12.
" Confederates driven from Corinth, Miss., May 26.
" Battle at Fair Oaks, Va., May 31, June 1.
" Memphis, Tenn., surrendered to the Nationals, June 6.
" Seven days' battles on the Virginia peninsula commence, June 25.
" The President calls for 300,000 more troops, July 1.
" Battles between Manassas and Washington city, August 23 to 30.
" Battle at South Mountain, Md., September 14.
" Surrender of Harper's Ferry to the Confederates, September 15.
" Battle at Antietam creek, Md., September 17.
" Battle at Iuka, Miss., September 19.
" Battle at Fredericksburg, Va., December 13.
" Battle near Murfreesboro', Tenn., December 29, January 4.
1863. The President's Emancipation Proclamation issued, January 1.
" Capture of Arkansas Post, Ark., January 11.
" Passage of a conscription act, March 3.
" Battle of Chancellorsville, May 2, 3.
" Grant's six battles in Mississippi, May 1 to 17.
" Lee invades Maryland, June.
" Capture of Confederate "ram" *Atlanta*, June 17.
" West Virginia admitted into the Union, June 20.
" Battle at Gettysburg, Pa., July 1, 3.
" Surrender of Vicksburg, Miss., July 4.
" Capture of Port Hudson by National troops, July 8.
" Great riot in New York city, July 13–16.
" Morgan's guerilla band broken up in Ohio, July 26.
" Fort Smith, Ark., captured by National troops, September 1.

1863. Little Rock, Ark., captured by National troops, September 10.
" Battle of Chickamauga, Ga., September 19.
" Battle of Chattanooga, Ga., September 23.
" Knoxville, Tenn., besieged, November 29.
1864. President orders a draft for 300,000 more men, February 1.
" Grant created a lieutenant-general, March.
" General Sherman's invasion of Mississippi, February 3, 21.
" Battle of Olustee, Fla., February 20.
" Capture of Fort De Russey, La., March 13.
" Battle of Cane river, La., March 26.
" Massacre at Fort Pillow, Tenn., by Forrest's forces, April 12.
" Grant orders a general forward movement, May 3.
" Battles in the Wilderness, Va., May 5, 6, 7.
" Battle near Pleasant Hill, La., May 8, 9.
" Passage of the Red river rapids by Porter's fleet, May 11.
" Lee falls back to Richmond early in June.
" The Potomac Army on the south side of James river in June.
" Destruction of the *Alabama*, June 15.
" Third invasion of Maryland and Pennsylvania, July.
" Chambersburg, Pa., destroyed by the Confederates, September 30.
" Petersburg and Richmond besieged, July, August, and September.
" The Weldon railway seized by the National troops, August 18.
" Capture of forts and dispersion of the Confederate fleet near Mobile, August.
" Capture of Atlanta, Ga., September 3.
" The President, by proclamation, recommends public thanksgivings for victories.
" Nevada admitted into the Union, October 31.
" Slavery abolished in Maryland, November 1.
" Sherman leaves Atlanta for Savannah, November 14.
" Hood invades Tennessee, November.
" Milledgeville, the capital of Georgia, captured, November 20.
" Battle at Franklin, November 30.
" Sherman enters Savannah, December 21.
1865. Slavery abolished in Missouri, January.
" Capture of Fort Fisher, January 15.
" Act to amend the Constitution so as to abolish slavery throughout the Union, passed both Houses of Congress, January 31.
" Slavery abolished in Tennessee, February.
" Capture of Columbia, the capital of South Carolina, February 17.
" National troops enter Charleston, February 18.
" Capture of Wilmington, North Carolina, February 21.
" Flight of the Confederates from Richmond, April 2.
" President Lincoln enters Richmond, April 4.
" Surrender of Lee's army, April 9.
" Assassination of the President, April 14.
" Andrew Johnson inaugurated President, April 15.
" Surrender of Johnston's Army, April 26.
" Capture of Jefferson Davis, May 10.
" Close of the Civil War, May.

www.libtool.com.cn

www.libtool.com.cn

www.libtool.com.cn

www.libtool.com.cn

www.libtool.com.cn

RETURN TO the circulation desk of any
University of California Library
or to the
NORTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY
Bldg. 400, Richmond Field Station
University of California
Richmond, CA 94804-4698

ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS
2-month loans may be renewed by calling
(415) 642-6233
1-year loans may be recharged by bringing books
to NRLF
Renewals and recharges may be made 4 days
prior to due date

DUE AS STAMPED BELOW

MAY 16 1989
JAN 23 1999
APR 27 1991
RECEIVED
MAY 1 0 1991
DEC 14 2000
CIRCULATION DEPT.
DEC 17 1992
JAN 25 1993
Returned by
FEB 03 1993
Santa Cruz Jitney

www.libtool.com.cn

U.C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES
C031832171

www.libtool.com.cn

www.libtool.com.cn